

CAMBRIDGE

The world's best-selling
grammar series

Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book
for elementary learners of English

Fourth Edition

with answers

Raymond Murphy

Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book
for elementary learners of English

Fourth Edition

with answers

Raymond Murphy



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/essentialgrammarinuse

Fourth Edition © Cambridge University Press 2015

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

Essential Grammar in Use first published 1990

Fourth edition 2015

Printed in Dubai by Oriental Press

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-107-48055-1 Edition with answers

ISBN 978-1-107-48053-7 Edition with answers and Interactive eBook

ISBN 978-1-107-48056-8 Edition without answers

ISBN 978-1-107-48061-2 Edition with Supplementary Exercises

ISBN 978-1-107-48060-5 Interactive eBook

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

S 300/31 g

Contents

Acknowledgements vii

To the student viii

To the teacher x

Present

- 1 **am/is/are**
- 2 **am/is/are** (questions)
- 3 **I am doing** (present continuous)
- 4 **are you doing?** (present continuous questions)
- 5 **I do/work/like** etc. (present simple)
- 6 **I don't ...** (present simple negative)
- 7 **Do you ... ?** (present simple questions)
- 8 **I am doing** (present continuous) and **I do** (present simple)
- 9 **I have ...** and **I've got ...**

Past

- 10 **was/were**
- 11 **worked/got/went** etc. (past simple)
- 12 **I didn't ... Did you ... ?** (past simple negative and questions)
- 13 **I was doing** (past continuous)
- 14 **I was doing** (past continuous) and **I did** (past simple)

Present perfect

- 15 **I have done** (present perfect 1)
- 16 **I've just ... I've already ... I haven't ... yet** (present perfect 2)
- 17 **Have you ever ... ?** (present perfect 3)
- 18 **How long have you ... ?** (present perfect 4)
- 19 **for since ago**
- 20 **I have done** (present perfect) and **I did** (past)

Passive

- 21 **is done was done** (passive 1)
- 22 **is being done has been done** (passive 2)

Verb forms

- 23 **be/have/do** in present and past tenses
- 24 Regular and irregular verbs

Future

- 25 **What are you doing tomorrow?**
- 26 **I'm going to ...**
- 27 **will/shall 1**
- 28 **will/shall 2**

Modals, imperative etc.

- 29 **might**
- 30 **can** and **could**
- 31 **must mustn't don't need to**
- 32 **should**
- 33 **I have to ...**
- 34 **Would you like ... ? I'd like ...**
- 35 **Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!**
- 36 **I used to ...**

There and it

- 37 **there is there are**
- 38 **there was/were there has/have been there will be**
- 39 **It ...**

Auxiliary verbs

- 40 **I am, I don't** etc.
- 41 **Have you? Are you? Don't you?** etc.
- 42 **too/either so am I / neither do I** etc.
- 43 **isn't, haven't, don't** etc. (negatives)

Questions

- 44 **is it ... ? have you ... ? do they ... ?** etc. (questions 1)
- 45 **Who saw you? Who did you see?** (questions 2)
- 46 **Who is she talking to? What is it like?** (questions 3)
- 47 **What ... ? Which ... ? How ... ?** (questions 4)
- 48 **How long does it take ... ?**
- 49 **Do you know where ... ? I don't know what ...** etc.

Reported speech

- 50 **She said that ... He told me that ...**

-ing and to ...

- 51 **work/working go/going do/doing**
- 52 **to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)**
- 53 **I want you to ... I told you to ...**
- 54 **I went to the shop to ...**

Go, get, do, make and have

- 55 **go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing**
- 56 **get**
- 57 **do and make**
- 58 **have**

Pronouns and possessives

- 59 **I/me he/him they/them** etc.
- 60 **my/his/their** etc.
- 61 **Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers** etc.
- 62 **I/me/my/mine**
- 63 **myself/yourself/themselves** etc.
- 64 **-s (Kate's camera / my brother's car** etc.)

A and the

- 65 **a/an ...**
- 66 **train(s) bus(es)** (singular and plural)
- 67 **a bottle / some water** (countable/uncountable 1)
- 68 **a cake / some cake / some cakes** (countable/uncountable 2)
- 69 **a/an and the**
- 70 **the ...**
- 71 **go to work go home go to the cinema**
- 72 I like **music** I hate **exams**
- 73 **the ...** (names of places)

Determiners and pronouns

- 74 **this/that/these/those**
- 75 **one/ones**
- 76 **some and any**
- 77 **not + any no none**
- 78 **not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing**
- 79 **somebody/anything/nowhere** etc.
- 80 **every and all**
- 81 **all most some any no/none**
- 82 **both either neither**
- 83 **a lot much many**
- 84 **(a) little (a) few**

Adjectives and adverbs

- 85 **old/nice/interesting** etc. (adjectives)
- 86 **quickly/badly/suddenly** etc. (adverbs)
- 87 **old/older expensive / more expensive**
- 88 **older than ... more expensive than ...**
- 89 **not as ... as**
- 90 **the oldest the most expensive**
- 91 **enough**
- 92 **too**

Word order

- 93 He **speaks English** very well. (word order 1)
- 94 **always/usually/often** etc. (word order 2)
- 95 **still yet already**
- 96 **Give me that book! Give it to me!**

Conjunctions and clauses

- 97 **and but or so because**
- 98 **When ...**
- 99 **If we go ... If you see ...** etc.
- 100 **If I had ... If we went ...** etc.
- 101 a person **who ...** a thing **that/which ...** (relative clauses 1)
- 102 the people **we met** the hotel **you stayed at** (relative clauses 2)

Prepositions

- 103 **at 8 o'clock on Monday in April**
104 **from ... to until since for**
105 **before after during while**
106 **in at on** (places 1)
107 **in at on** (places 2)
108 **to in at** (places 3)
109 **under, behind, opposite** etc.
110 **up, over, through** etc.
111 **on at by with about**
112 **afraid of ... , good at ...** etc. **of/at/for** etc. (prepositions) + **-ing**
113 **listen to ... , look at ...** etc. (verb + preposition)

Phrasal verbs

- 114 **go in, fall off, run away** etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
115 **put on** your shoes **put** your shoes **on** (phrasal verbs 2)

Appendices

- Appendix 1 Active and passive 243
Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 244
Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 245
Appendix 4 Short forms (**he's / I'd / don't** etc.) 246
Appendix 5 Spelling 248
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (**take off / give up** etc.) 250
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (**put out** a fire / **give up** your job etc.) 251

Additional exercises 252

Study guide 271

Key to Exercises 283

Key to Additional exercises 310

Key to Study guide 313

Index 315

To the student (working without a teacher)

This is a grammar book for elementary students of English. There are 115 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (*Contents*).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you need to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (*I have been, he has done* etc.), study Units 15–20.

Use the *Contents* or the *Index* (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) that you need.

Contents

ebook vii
To the student viii
To the teacher x

Present

- 1 am/is/are
- 2 am/is/are (questions)
- 3 I am doing (present continuous)
- 4 are you doing? (present continuous questions)
- 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)
- 6 I don't... (present simple negative)
- 7 Do you...? (present simple questions)
- 8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)
- 9 I have... and I've got...

Past

- 10 was/were
- 11 worked/got/went etc. (past simple)
- 12 didn't... Did you...? T (past simple negative and questions)

Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers)

about 111f
above 109f
active and passive Appendix 7
across 110
adjectives 85
adjectives and adverbs (quickly) 90
comparatives (older / more expensive) 87-89
superlatives (the oldest / the most expensive) 90
get + adjective (got lost etc.) 50f
possessive adjectives (my/your/their etc.) 60, 62
something/anybody etc. + adjective 79C
adverbs + preposition (afraid of) 113A
adverbs 96
word order (always/usually/often etc.) 94
advice (advice somebody to...) 53B
afraid (of) 113A
after 88, 105
ago 198
all
all and every etc. 80
all (of) 81
word order 94
along 110
already 97C
anybody/anyone/anything 76C, 78-79
anywhere 79
apostrophe (m, it's etc.) Appendix 4
apostrophe's (my brother's car) 64
are see am/is/are
around 110, 114-115, Appendix 7
arrive 108C
articles (a/an/the) 65-73
also 65, 67-68
also and the 69
the 70-73
as (as as... as) 89
ask
ask somebody to... 52B
ask somebody for... 115A
at
at the bus stop / at night etc. 103
at the bus stop / at work etc. 106-107
at and to 108
at the age of... 111B
away
away verbs 11, 40-42
run away / throw away etc. (physical verbs) 114-115, Appendix 7
back
come back / give back etc. (physical verbs) 114-115, Appendix 7
be (involitive of am/is/are)
am/is/are 1-2
am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) 3-4, 23A, 25, 51C
will/were 10
was/were + -ing (past continuous) 61-62A, 51C
beside 109A
best 108f
better 87D
between 109A
bit (a bit older/faster etc.) 88D
burn 21C
both 82
word order 94
but 91
by after the passive (I was bitten by a dog) 21D
by myself / by yourself etc. 43C
by (= beside) 109C
can/can't 90
comparative (older / more expensive etc.) 87-89
conditional (if...)
if do... 99
if (not)... 100
conjunctions 97-100
and/but/so/because 97
when/while/after/until 98
if 99-100
continue (continue to... or continue etc.) 52C
contractions (short forms - for, it's, you're etc.) Appendix 4
could/couldn't 30C, D
countable and uncountable nouns 67-68
deduced (on) 113C
did
didn't in negatives 12, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A
did in questions 12, 23D, 40C, 44B

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the *Study guide* at the back of the book.

Study guide

Study guide

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY UNIT

134 Please be quiet.
A I'm writing B I work C I'm washing D I'm work

135 Sam
A has B having C is having D have

136 What _____ at weekends?
A do you usually B are you usually doing C can you usually do D do you usually do

137 Sarah isn't feeling well.
A The fever B The hunger C The gas D Her eye

138 They _____ any children.
A don't have B doesn't have C has have D haven't got

Phase

139 The weather _____ last week.
A is good B was good C went good D had good

140 Who _____ the message?
A you was B did you C was you D were you

141 Terry _____ you leave from 2001 to 2011.
A went B working C works D worked

142 Caroline _____ to the cinema three times last week.
A go B went C goes D got

143 I _____ TV yesterday.
A didn't watch B didn't watched C wasn't watched D didn't watch

144 How _____?
A happened the accident B did happen the accident C does the accident happen D did the accident happen

145 What _____ at 11.30 yesterday?
A were you doing B was you doing C you were doing D were you do

146 Jack was reading a book when the phone _____.
A ringing B rang C rang D was ringing

147 I saw Lucy and Jane this morning. They _____ as the bus stop.
A waiting B waited C were waiting D was waiting

Present perfect

148 "Where's Rebecca?"
A She is gone B She has gone C She goes D She have gone

149 How many times _____?
A do I visit you B have already arrived C haven't already arrived D haven't arrived yet

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY UNIT

150 My sister _____ by plane.
A has never travel B has never travelled C is never travelled D has never been travelled

151 _____ their summer holiday, but I can't remember where.
A last B last B last C the last D the last

152 You're long _____ married? Since 2007.
A you are B you have been C you have been D are you have been

153 "Do you know what?" "Yes."
A know B the know C know D I am knowing

154 Richard has been in Canada _____ since 2007.
A for ten months B since ten months C so months ago D in ten months

155 "When did Tim go out?"
A For ten minutes B Since ten minutes C Ten minutes ago D In ten minutes

156 We _____ a holiday last year.
A don't have B haven't had C hasn't had D didn't have

157 What _____ on Sunday afternoon? I couldn't find you.
A you were B you have been C were you D have you been

Phase

158 The house _____ 50 years ago.
A is built B building C was building D was built

159 We _____ in the party last week.
A didn't come B didn't come C weren't invited D wasn't invited

160 Where _____ home? In Cairo.
A you are B you were C was you D are you

161 My car is at the garage. It _____.
A is being repaired B is repairing C has been repaired D repaired

162 I read that my kayak _____.
A they're been stolen B they are stolen C they're stolen D they're been stolen

Verb forms

163 I _____ we didn't need an umbrella.
A wasn't worried B wasn't rain C didn't raining D wasn't raining

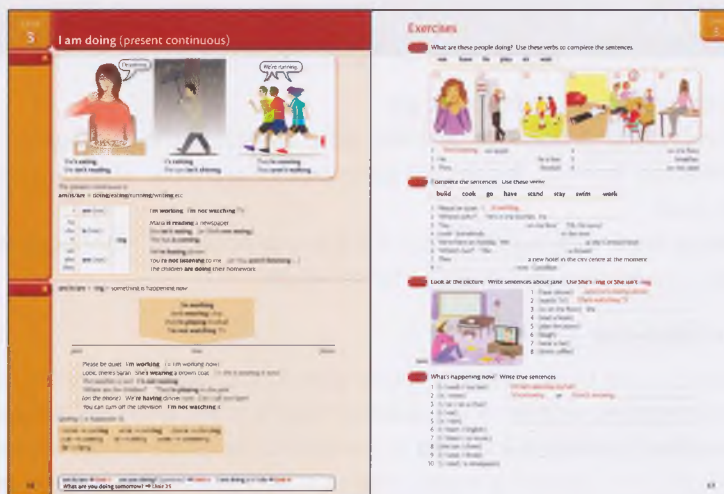
164 Somewhere _____ the window.
A has broken B has broken C has broken D has broken

272

273

Each unit is two pages.
The information is on
the left-hand page and
the exercises are on the
right:

Information



Exercises

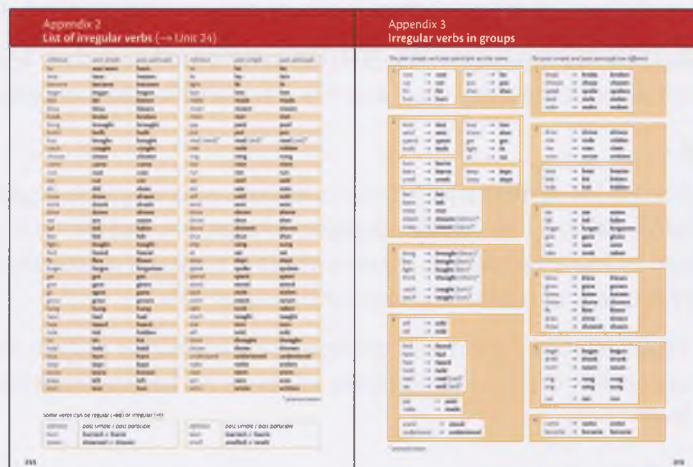
Study the left-hand page (information), and then
do the exercises on the right-hand page.

Use the Key to check your answers. The Key is on
pages 283–309.

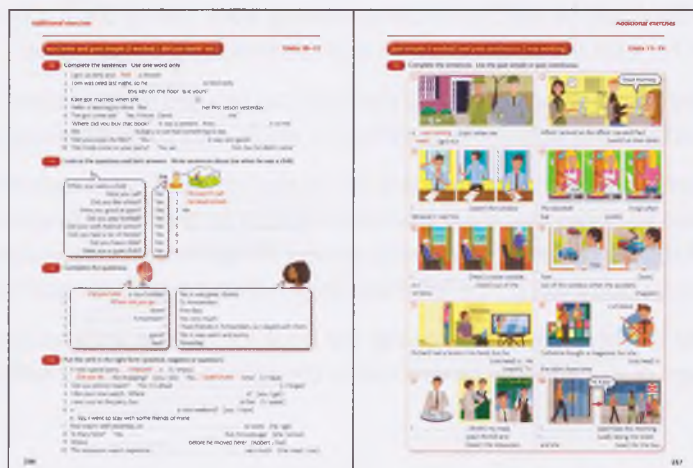
Study the left-hand page again if necessary.



Don't forget the seven *Appendices* at
the back of the book (pages 243–251).
These will give you information about
active and passive forms, irregular
verbs, short forms, spelling and
phrasal verbs.



There are also *Additional
exercises* at the back of the book
(pages 252–270).
There is a list of these exercises
on page 252.



To the teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- ☐ It is a grammar book. It does not deal with other aspects of the language.
- ☐ It is for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- ☐ It is a reference book with exercises. It is not a course book and is not organised progressively.
- ☐ It is addressed to learners and intended for self-study.

Organisation of the book

There are 115 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions and articles. Units are *not* ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should *not* be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the *Contents* and there is a comprehensive *Index* at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven *Appendices* (pages 243–251) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

At the back of the book there is a set of *Additional exercises* (pages 252–270). These exercises provide 'mixed' practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (especially those concerning verb forms). There are 35 exercises in this section and there is a full list on page 252.

Also at the back of the book there is a *Study guide* to help students decide which units to study – see page 271.

Finally, there is a *Key* (pages 283–309) for students to check their answers to all the exercises in the book. An edition without the *Study guide* and *Key* is available for teachers who would prefer it for their students.

Level

The book is for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but not for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the early stages of a beginners' course. It could also be used by low-intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of basic grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see *To the student*) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.

In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for teachers to present the grammar point in their preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

am/is/are

A

My name **is** Lisa.

I'm 22.

My favourite colour **is** blue.

I'm American. I'm from Chicago.

My favourite sports **are** football and swimming.

I'm a student.

I'm interested in art.

My father **is** a doctor and my mother **is** a journalist.

I'm **not** interested in politics.

LISA

B

positive

negative

I	am	(I'm)	I	am not	(I'm not)
he		(he's)	he		(he's not or he isn't)
she	is	(she's)	she	is not	(she's not or she isn't)
it		(it's)	it		(it's not or it isn't)
we		(we're)	we		(we're not or we aren't)
you	are	(you're)	you	are not	(you're not or you aren't)
they		(they're)	they		(they're not or they aren't)

short form

short forms

☐ I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?

☐ I'm 32 years old. My sister **is** 29.

☐ Steve **is** ill. He's in bed.

☒ My brother **is** scared of dogs.

☐ It's ten o'clock. You're late again.

☐ Ann and I **are** good friends.

☐ Your keys **are** on the table.

☐ I'm tired, but I'm not hungry.

☒ Lisa **isn't** interested in politics. She's interested in art.

☐ James **isn't** a teacher. He's a student.

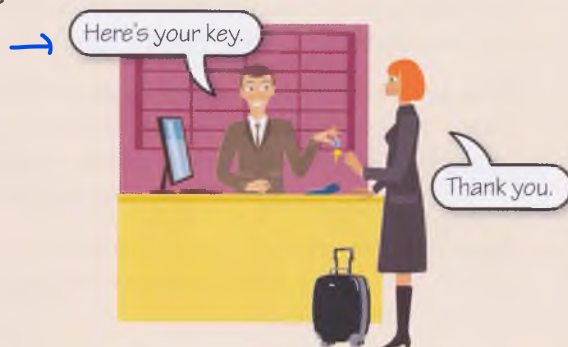
☐ Those people **aren't** English. They're Australian.

☐ It's sunny today, but it **isn't** warm.


C

that's = that **is** there's = there **is** here's = here **is**
☐ Thank you. That's very kind of you.

☐ Look! There's Chris.

☐ 'Here's your key.' 'Thank you.'


Exercises

1.1 Write the short form (she's / we aren't etc.).

- 1 she is she's 3 it is not isn't 5 I am not am not
 2 they are are 4 that is is 6 you are not aren't

1.2 Write am, is or are.

- 1 The weather is nice today. 5 Look! There is Helen.
 2 I am not rich. 6 My brother and I are good tennis players.
 3 This bag is heavy. 7 Emily is at home. Her children are at school.
 4 These bags are heavy. 8 I am a taxi driver. My sister is a nurse.

1.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Steve is ill. He's in bed.
 2 I'm not hungry, but I am thirsty. SUSVZ
 3 Mr Thomas is a very old man. He is 98.
 4 These chairs aren't beautiful, but they are comfortable.
 5 The weather is nice today. It is warm and sunny.
 6 '..... late.' 'No, I'm not. I'm early!'
 7 Catherine isn't at home. She is at work.
 8 '..... your coat.' 'Oh, thank you very much.'

1.4 Look at Lisa's sentences in 1A. Now write sentences about yourself.

- 1 (name?) My 5 (favourite colour or colours?)
 2 (age?) I My
 3 (from?) I 6 (interested in ... ?)
 4 (job?) I I

1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:

angry cold hot hungry scared ~~thirsty~~

- 1 She's thirsty. 3 He 5
 2 They 4 6

1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use is/isn't or are/aren't.

- 1 (it / hot today) It isn't hot today. or It's hot today.
 2 (it / windy today) It
 3 (my hands / cold) My
 4 (Brazil / a very big country)
 5 (diamonds / cheap)
 6 (Toronto / in the US)

Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use I'm / I'm not.

- 7 (tired) I'm tired. or I'm not tired.
 8 (hungry) I
 9 (a good swimmer)
 10 (interested in football)

am/is/are (questions)

A

positive

question

I	am
he she it	is
we you they	are

am	I?
is	he? she? it?
are	we? you? they?



What's your name?

Are you married?

How old are you?

Are you a student?

David.

No, I'm not.

25.

Yes, I am.



- ☐ 'Am I late?' 'No, **you're** on time.'
- ☐ 'Is **your mother** at home?' 'No, **she's** out.'
- ☐ 'Are **your parents** at home?' 'No, **they're** out.'
- ☐ 'Is **it** cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- ☐ **Your shoes** are nice. **Are they** new?

We say:

- ☐ **Is she** at home? / **Is your mother** at home? (not Is at home your mother?)
- ☐ **Are they** new? / **Are your shoes** new? (not Are new your shoes?)

B

Where ... ? / What ... ? / Who ... ? / How ... ? / Why ... ?

- ☐ **Where is** your mother? Is she at home?
- ☐ 'Where **are** you from?' 'Canada.'
- ☐ 'What colour **is** your car?' 'It's red.'
- ☐ 'How old **is** Joe?' 'He's 24.'
- ☐ **How are** your parents? Are they well?
- ☐ These shoes are nice. **How much are** they?
- ☐ This hotel isn't very good. **Why is** it so expensive?

what's = what is who's = who is how's = how is where's = where is

- ☐ **What's** the time?
- ☐ **Who's** that man?
- ☐ **Where's** Lucy?
- ☐ **How's** your father?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I	am.
	he she it	is.
	we you they	are.

No,	I'm	not.
	he's she's it's	
	we're you're they're	

or

No,	he she it	isn't.
	we you they	aren't.

- ☐ 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.'
- ☐ 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I'm not, but I'm thirsty.'
- ☐ 'Is your friend English?' 'Yes, he is.'
- ☐ 'Are these **your keys**?' 'Yes, they are.'
- ☐ 'That's my seat.' 'No, it isn't.'



2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

- 1 Where's the camera?
- 2 Is your car blue?
- 3 Is Kate from London?
- 4 Am I late?
- 5 Where's Amy from?
- 6 What colour is your bag?
- 7 Are you hungry?
- 8 How is George?
- 9 Who's that woman?

- A London.
- B No, I'm not.
- C Yes, you are.
- D My sister.
- E Black.
- F No, it's black.
- G In your bag.
- H No, she's American.
- I Very well.

- 1 G
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

2.2 Make questions with these words.

- 1 (is / at home / your mother) Is your mother at home ?
- 2 (your parents / are / well) Are your parents well ?
- 3 (interesting / is / your job) ?
- 4 (the shops / are / open today) ?
- 5 (from / where / you / are) ?
- 6 (interested in sport / you / are) ?
- 7 (is / near here / the station) ?
- 8 (at school / are / your children) ?
- 9 (you / are / late / why) ?

2.3 Complete the questions. Use **What ... / Who ... / Where ... / How ...** .

- 1 How are your parents?
- 2 the bus stop?
- 3 your children?
- 4 these oranges?
- 5 your favourite sport?
- 6 the man in this photo?
- 7 your new shoes?

They're very well.
At the end of the street.
Five, six and ten.
£1.50 a kilo.
Skiing.
That's my father.
Black.

2.4 Write the questions.

- 1 (name?) What's your name?
- 2 (American?)
- 3 (how old?)
- 4 (a teacher?)
- 5 (married?)
- 6 (wife a lawyer?)
- 7 (from?)
- 8 (her name?)
- 9 (how old?)

Paul.
No, I'm Australian.
I'm 30.
No, I'm a lawyer.
Yes, I am.
No, she's a designer.
She's Italian.
Anna.
She's 27.

2.5 Write short answers (**Yes, I am.** / **No, he isn't.** etc.).

- 1 Are you married? No, I'm not.
- 2 Are you thirsty?
- 3 Is it cold today?
- 4 Are your hands cold?
- 5 Is it dark now?
- 6 Are you a teacher?

I am doing (present continuous)

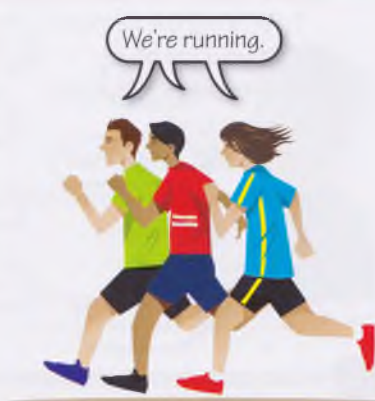
A



She's **eating**.
She **isn't** reading.



It's **raining**.
The sun **isn't** shining.



They're **running**.
They **aren't** walking.

The present continuous is:

am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing etc.

I	am (not)	-ing
he she it	is (not)	
we you they	are (not)	

- ☐ I'm **working**. I'm **not** watching TV.
- ☐ Maria **is** **reading** a newspaper.
- ☐ She **isn't** **eating**. (or She's **not** eating.)
- ☐ The bus **is** **coming**.
- ☐ We're **having** dinner.
- ☐ You're **not** **listening** to me. (or You **aren't** listening ...)
- ☐ The children **are** **doing** their homework.

B

am/is/are + -ing = something is happening **now**:

I'm **working**
she's **wearing** a hat
they're **playing** football
I'm **not** watching TV

past

now

future

- ☐ Please be quiet. I'm **working**. (= I'm working now)
- ☐ Look, there's Sarah. She's **wearing** a brown coat. (= she is wearing it now)
- ☐ The weather is nice. It's **not** **raining**.
- ☐ 'Where are the children?' 'They're **playing** in the park.'
- ☐ (on the phone) We're **having** dinner now. Can I call you later?
- ☐ You can turn off the television. I'm **not** **watching** it.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

come → **coming** write → **writing** dance → **dancing**
run → **running** sit → **sitting** swim → **swimming**
lie → **lying**

Exercises

3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

-eat- have lie play sit wait



- 1 She's eating an apple.
- 2 He for a bus.
- 3 They football.
- 4 on the floor.
- 5 breakfast.
- 6 on the table.

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

build cook go have stand stay swim -work

- 1 Please be quiet. I 'm working.
- 2 'Where's John?' 'He's in the kitchen. He
- 3 'You on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
- 4 Look! Somebody in the river.
- 5 We're here on holiday. We at the Central Hotel.
- 6 'Where's Sue?' 'She a shower.'
- 7 They a new hotel in the city centre at the moment.
- 8 I now. Goodbye.

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use **She's -ing** or **She isn't -ing**.



Jane

- 1 (have dinner) Jane isn't having dinner.
- 2 (watch TV) She's watching TV.
- 3 (sit on the floor) She
- 4 (read a book)
- 5 (play the piano)
- 6 (laugh)
- 7 (wear a hat)
- 8 (drink coffee)

3.4 What's happening now? Write true sentences.

- 1 (I / wash / my hair) I'm not washing my hair.
- 2 (it / snow) It's snowing. or It isn't snowing.
- 3 (I / sit / on a chair)
- 4 (I / eat)
- 5 (it / rain)
- 6 (I / learn / English)
- 7 (I / listen / to music)
- 8 (the sun / shine)
- 9 (I / wear / shoes)
- 10 (I / read / a newspaper)

are you doing?
(present continuous questions)

A

positive question

I	am	doing working going staying etc.
he	is	
she		
it		
we	are	
you		
they		

am	I	doing working going staying etc.
is	he	
	she	
	it	
are	we	
	you	
	they	



- ☐ 'Are you **feeling** OK?' 'Yes, I'm fine, thanks.'
- ☐ 'Is it **raining**?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- ☐ Why **are** you **wearing** a coat? It's not cold.
- ☐ 'What's Paul **doing**?' 'He's **studying** for his exams.'
- ☐ 'What **are** the children **doing**?' 'They're **watching** TV.'
- ☐ Look, there's Emily! Where's she **going**?
- ☐ Who **are** you **waiting** for? **Are** you **waiting** for Sue?

B

Study the word order:

is/are + subject + -ing

	Is	he	working today?
Where	Is	Ben	working today? (not Is working Ben today?)
	are	they	going ?
Where	are	those people	going ? (not Where are going those people?)

C

Short answers

Yes,	I	am.
	he	is.
	she	
	it	
	we	are.
	you	
	they	

No,	I'm	not.
	he's	
	she's	
	it's	
	we're	
	you're	
	they're	

or

No,	he	isn't.
	she	
	it	
	we	aren't.
	you	
	they	

- ☐ 'Are you **going** now?' 'Yes, I am.'
- ☐ 'Is Ben **working** today?' 'Yes, he is.'
- ☐ 'Is it **raining**?' 'No, it isn't.'
- ☐ 'Are your friends **staying** at a hotel?' 'No, they aren't. They're staying with me.'

Exercises

4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.

1 (you / watch / it?) <u>Are you watching it?</u> No, you can turn it off.	2 (you / go / now?) Yes, see you tomorrow.	3 (it / rain?) No, not at the moment.
4 (you / enjoy / the film?) Yes, it's very funny.	5 (that clock / work?) No, it's broken.	6 (you / wait / for a bus?) No, for a taxi.

4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use:

cry eat go laugh look at ~~read~~

1 What <u>are you reading</u> ?	2 Where she ?	3 What ?
4 Why ?	5 What ?	6 Why ?

4.3 Make questions from these words. Put the words in the right order.

- (is / working / Ben / today) Is Ben working today ?
- (what / the children / are / doing) What are the children doing ?
- (you / are / listening / to me) ?
- (where / your friends / are / going) ?
- (are / watching / your parents / TV) ?
- (what / Jessica / is / cooking) ?
- (why / you / are / looking / at me) ?
- (is / coming / the bus) ?

4.4 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't. etc.).

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1 Are you watching TV? <u>No, I'm not.</u> | 4 Is it raining? |
| 2 Are you wearing a watch? | 5 Are you sitting on the floor? |
| 3 Are you eating something? | 6 Are you feeling well? |

I do/work/like etc. (present simple)

A



They have a lot of books.
They **read** a lot.



He's eating an ice cream.
He **likes** ice cream.

They **read** / he **likes** / I **work** etc. = the *present simple*:

I/we/you/they	read	like	work	live	watch	do	have
he/she/it	reads	likes	works	lives	watches	does	has

Remember:

he works / **she lives** / **it rains** etc.

- ☐ I **work** in a shop. **My brother works** in a bank. (*not* My brother work)
- ☐ **Lucy lives** in London. **Her parents live** in Scotland.
- ☐ **It rains** a lot in winter.

I **have** → he/she/it **has**:

- ☐ **Joe has** a shower every day.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

-es after -s / -sh / -ch :	pass → passes	finish → finishes	watch → watches
-y → -ies :	study → studies	try → tries	
<i>also</i> :	do → does	go → goes	

B

We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:

- ☐ I **like** big cities.
- ☐ Your English is good. You **speak** very well.
- ☐ Tom **works** very hard. He **starts** at 7.30 and **finishes** at 8 o'clock in the evening.
- ☐ The earth **goes** round the sun.
- ☐ We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.
- ☐ It **costs** a lot of money to build a hospital.

C

always/never/often/usually/sometimes + present simple

- ☐ Sue **always gets** to work early. (*not* Sue gets always)
- ☐ I **never eat** breakfast. (*not* I eat never)
- ☐ We **often go** away at weekends.
- ☐ Mark **usually plays** football on Sundays.
- ☐ I **sometimes walk** to work, but not very often.

5.1 Write these verbs with -s or -es.

- 1 (read) she reads 3 (fly) it 5 (have) she
2 (think) he 4 (dance) he 6 (finish) it

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use:

eat go live ~~play~~ play sleep



- 1 He plays the piano. 4 tennis.
2 They in a very big house. 5 to the cinema a lot.
3 a lot of fruit. 6 seven hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use:

boil close cost cost like like meet open ~~speaks~~ teach wash

- 1 Maria speaks four languages.
2 The shops in the city centre usually at 9 o'clock in the morning.
3 The City Museum at 5 o'clock in the evening.
4 Tina is a teacher. She mathematics to young children.
5 My job is very interesting. I a lot of people.
6 Peter's car is always dirty. He never it.
7 Food is expensive. It a lot of money.
8 Shoes are expensive. They a lot of money.
9 Water at 100 degrees Celsius.
10 Laura and I are good friends. I her and she me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Use the right form of the verb (arrive or arrives etc.).

- 1 (always / early / Sue / arrive) Sue always arrives early.
2 (to the cinema / never / I / go) I
3 (work / Martina / hard / always)
4 (like / chocolate / children / usually)
5 (Jackie / parties / enjoy / always)
6 (often / people's names / I / forget)
7 (TV / Sam / watch / never)
8 (usually / dinner / we / have / at 7.30)
9 (Kate / always / nice clothes / wear)

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/usually/sometimes.

- 1 (watch TV in the evening) I usually watch TV in the evening.
2 (read in bed) I
3 (get up before 7 o'clock)
4 (go to work/school by bus)
5 (drink coffee in the morning)

I don't ... (present simple negative)

A

The present simple negative is **don't/doesn't** + verb:She **doesn't** drink coffee.He **doesn't** like his job.

positive

negative

I	work	I	don't	work like do have
we	like	we	(do not)	
you	do	you		
they	have	they		
he	works	he	doesn't	work like do have
she	likes	she	(does not)	
it	does	it		
	has			

- ☐ I **drink** coffee, but I **don't drink** tea.
- ☐ Sue **drinks** tea, but she **doesn't drink** coffee.
- ☐ You **don't work** very hard.
- ☐ We **don't watch** TV very often.
- ☐ The weather is usually nice. It **doesn't rain** very often.
- ☐ Sam and Chris **don't know** many people.

B

Remember:

I/we/you/they **don't** ...
he/she/it **doesn't** ...

- ☐ I **don't** like football.
- ☐ He **doesn't** like football.

- ☐ I **don't** like Fred and **Fred doesn't** like me. (not Fred don't like)
- ☐ **My car doesn't** use much petrol. (not My car don't use)
- ☐ Sometimes he is late, but **it doesn't** happen very often.

C

We use **don't/doesn't** + infinitive (don't **like** / doesn't **speak** / doesn't **do** etc.):

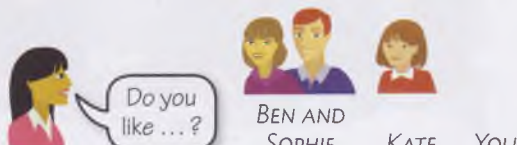
- ☐ I **don't like** washing the car. I **don't do** it very often.
- ☐ Sarah **speaks** Spanish, but she **doesn't speak** Italian. (not doesn't speaks)
- ☐ David **doesn't do** his job very well. (not David doesn't his job)
- ☐ Paula **doesn't** usually **have** breakfast. (not doesn't ... has)

Exercises

6.1 Write the negative.

- I play the piano very well. *I don't play the piano very well.*
- Anna plays the piano very well. Anna
- They know my phone number. They
- We work very hard.
- He has a bath every day.
- You do the same thing every day.

6.2 Study the information and write sentences with like.



1 classical music?	yes	no	?
2 boxing?	no	yes	
3 horror movies?	yes	no	

- Ben and Sophie like classical music.*
Kate
I classical music.
- Ben and Sophie
Kate
I
-
.....
.....

6.3 Write about yourself. Use:

I never ... or I often ... or I don't ... very often.

- (watch TV) *I don't watch TV very often.* or *I never watch TV.* or *I often watch TV.*
- (go to the theatre)
- (ride a bike)
- (eat in restaurants)
- (travel by train)

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use **don't/doesn't** + these verbs:

cost go know ~~rain~~ see use wear

- The weather here is usually nice. It *doesn't rain* much.
- Paul has a car, but he it very often.
- Paul and his friends like films, but they to the cinema very often.
- Amanda is married, but she a ring.
- I much about politics. I'm not interested in it.
- The Regent Hotel isn't expensive. It much to stay there.
- Ed lives very near us, but we him very often.

6.5 Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

- Margaret *speaks* four languages – English, French, German and Spanish. (speak)
- I *don't like* my job. It's very boring. (like)
- 'Where's Steve?' 'I'm sorry. I'. (know)
- Sue is a very quiet person. She very much. (talk)
- Andy a lot of tea. It's his favourite drink. (drink)
- It's not true! I it! (believe)
- That's a very beautiful picture. I it very much. (like)
- Mark is a vegetarian. He meat. (eat)

Do you ... ? (present simple questions)

A

We use **do/does** in present simple questions:

positive

I	work
we	like
you	do
they	have
he	works
she	likes
it	does
	has

question

do	I	work?
	we	like?
	you	do?
	they	have?
does	he	
	she	
	it	



B

Study the word order:

do/does + *subject* + *infinitive*

	Do	you	play	the guitar?
	Do	your friends	live	near here?
	Does	Chris	work	on Sundays?
	Does	it	rain	a lot here?
Where	do	your parents	live?	
How often	do	you	wash	your hair?
What	does	this word	mean?	
How much	does	it	cost	to fly to Rome?

Questions with **always** and **usually**:

	Does	Chris	always	work	on Sundays?
What	do	you	usually	do	at weekends?

What do you do? = What's your job?☐ **'What do you do?'** 'I work in a bank.'

C

Remember:

do I/we/you/they ...**does** he/she/it ...☐ **Do they** like music?☐ **Does he** like music?

D

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they do .
	he/she/it does .
No,	I/we/you/they don't .
	he/she/it doesn't .

- ☐ **'Do you** play the guitar?' **'No, I don't.'**
- ☐ **'Do your** parents speak English?' **'Yes, they do.'**
- ☐ **'Does James** work hard?' **'Yes, he does.'**
- ☐ **'Does your** sister live in London?' **'No, she doesn't.'**

Exercises

7.1 Write questions with **Do ... ?** and **Does ... ?**

- 1 I like chocolate. How about you? Do you like chocolate ?
- 2 I play tennis. How about you? you ?
- 3 You live near here. How about Lucy? Lucy ?
- 4 Tom plays tennis. How about his friends? ?
- 5 You speak English. How about your brother? ?
- 6 I do yoga every morning. How about you? ?
- 7 Sue goes away a lot. How about Paul? ?
- 8 I want to be famous. How about you? ?
- 9 You work hard. How about Anna? ?

7.2 Make questions from these words + **do/does**. Put the words in the right order.

- 1 (where / live / your parents) Where do your parents live ?
- 2 (you / early / always / get up) Do you always get up early ?
- 3 (how often / TV / you / watch) ?
- 4 (you / want / what / for dinner) ?
- 5 (like / you / football) ?
- 6 (your brother / like / football) ?
- 7 (what / you / do / in your free time) ?
- 8 (your sister / work / where) ?
- 9 (breakfast / always / you / have) ?
- 10 (what / mean / this word) ?
- 11 (in winter / snow / it / here) ?
- 12 (go / usually / to bed / what time / you) ?
- 13 (how much / to phone New York / it / cost) ?
- 14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what) ?

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs:

~~do~~ do enjoy go like start teach work

- 1 What do you do ?
- 2 it?
- 3 What time in the morning?
- 4 on Saturdays?
- 5 How to work?
- 6 And your husband. What ?
- 7 What ?
- 8 his job?

I work in a bookshop.
It's OK.
At 9 o'clock.
Sometimes.
Usually by bus.
He's a teacher.
Science.
Yes, he loves it.

7.4 Write short answers (**Yes, he does.** / **No, I don't.** etc.).

- 1 Do you watch TV a lot? No, I don't. or Yes, I do.
- 2 Do you live in a big city?
- 3 Do you often ride a bike?
- 4 Does it rain a lot where you live?
- 5 Do you play the piano?

I am doing (present continuous) and
I do (present simple)

A

Jack is watching television.
He is *not* playing the guitar.

But Jack has a guitar.
He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jack **plays** the guitar,
but he **is not playing** the guitar now.



Is he playing the guitar? **No, he isn't.** (present continuous)

Does he play the guitar? **Yes, he does.** (present simple)

B

Present continuous (**I am doing**) = now, at the time of speaking:

I'm doing

past

now

future

- ☐ Please be quiet. **I'm working.** (*not* I work)
- ☐ Tom **is having** a shower at the moment. (*not* Tom has)
- ☐ Take an umbrella with you. **It's raining.**
- ☐ You can turn off the television. **I'm not watching** it.
- ☐ Why are you under the table? What **are** you doing?

C

Present simple (**I do**) = in general, all the time or sometimes:

I do

past

now

future

- ☐ I **work** every day from 9 o'clock to 5.30.
- ☐ Tom **has** a shower every morning.
- ☐ It **rains** a lot in winter.
- ☐ I **don't watch** TV very often.
- ☐ What **do** you usually **do** at weekends?

D

We do *not* use these verbs in the present continuous (**I am -ing**):

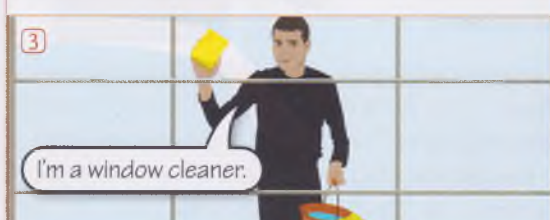
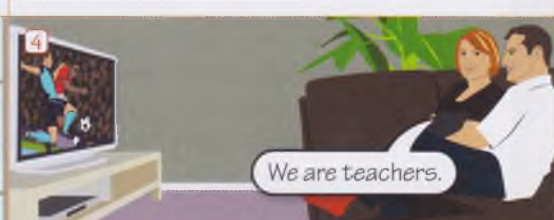
like	want	know	understand	remember
prefer	need	mean	believe	forget

Use only the present simple with these verbs (**I want / do you like?** etc.):

- ☐ I'm tired. I **want** to go home. (*not* I'm wanting)
- ☐ '**Do** you **know** that girl?' 'Yes, but I **don't remember** her name.'
- ☐ I **don't understand**. What **do** you **mean**?

Exercises

8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

1  Does he take photographs? <u>Yes, he does.</u> Is he taking a photograph? <u>No, he isn't.</u> What is he doing? <u>He's having a bath.</u>	2  Is she driving a bus? Does she drive a bus? What is she doing?
3  Does he clean windows? Is he cleaning a window? What is he doing?	4  Are they teaching? Do they teach? What do they do?

8.2 Complete the sentences with **am/is/are** or **do/don't/does/doesn't**.

- Excuse me, do you speak English?
- 'Where's Kate?' 'I know.'
- What's funny? Why you laughing?
- 'What your sister do?' 'She's a dentist.'
- It raining. I want to go out in the rain.
- 'Where you come from?' 'Canada.'
- How much it cost to stay at this hotel? Is it expensive?
- Steve is a good tennis player, but he play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (**I am doing**) or the present simple (**I do**).

- Excuse me, do you speak (you/speak) English?
- 'Where's Tom?' ' He's having (he/have) a shower.'
- I don't watch (I/not/watch) TV very often.
- Listen! Somebody (sing).
- Sarah is tired. (she/want) to go home now.
- How often (you/use) your car? Every day?
- 'Excuse me, but (you/sit) in my seat.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
- I'm sorry, (I/not/understand). Can you speak more slowly?
- It's late. (I/go) home now. (you/come) with me?
- What time (your father / finish) work every day?
- You can turn off the radio. (I/not/listen) to it.
- 'Where's Paul?' 'In the kitchen. (he/cook) something.'
- Mark (not/usually/drive) to work. He (usually/walk).
- Sue (not/like) coffee. (she/prefer) tea.

I have ... and I've got ...

A You can say **I have** or **I've got**, **he has** or **he's got**:

I			I		(I've got)
we	have	or	we	have got	(we've got)
you			you		(you've got)
they			they		(they've got)
he			he		(he's got)
she	has	or	she	has got	(she's got)
it			it		(it's got)

short form



- ☐ I **have** blue eyes. or I **ve got** blue eyes.
- ☐ Tom **has** two sisters. or Tom **has got** two sisters.
- ☐ Our car **has** four doors. or Our car **has got** four doors.
- ☐ Sarah isn't feeling well. She **has** a headache. or She **s got** a headache.
- ☐ They like animals. They **have** a horse, three dogs and six cats. or They **ve got** a horse ...

B I **don't have** / I **haven't got** etc. (negative)

You can say:

I/you	don't		I/you	haven't	
we/they		have	we/they		got
he/she	doesn't		he/she	hasn't	
it			it		

- ☐ I **don't have** a car. or I **haven't got** a car.
- ☐ They **don't have** any children. or They **haven't got** any children.
- ☐ It's a nice house, but it **doesn't have** a garden. or ... it **hasn't got** a garden.
- ☐ Amy **doesn't have** a job at the moment. or Amy **hasn't got** a job ...

C do you **have**? / **have** you **got**? etc. (questions)

You can say:

do	I/you		have	I/you	
	we/they	have		we/they	got
does	he/she		has	he/she	
	it			it	

- ☐ 'Do you **have** a camera?' 'No, I **don't**.' or 'Have you **got** a camera?' 'No, I **haven't**.'
- ☐ 'Does Helen **have** a car?' 'Yes, she **does**.' or 'Has Helen **got** a car?' 'Yes, she **has**.'
- ☐ What kind of car **does** she **have**? or ... **has** she **got**?
- ☐ How many children **do** they **have**? or ... **have** they **got**?

Exercises

9.1 Write these sentences with **got**. The meaning is the same.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 They have two children. | They've got two children. |
| 2 She doesn't have a key. | She hasn't got a key. |
| 3 He has a new job. | He |
| 4 Do you have an umbrella? | ..... |
| 5 We have a lot of work to do. | ..... |
| 6 I don't have your phone number. | ..... |
| 7 Does your father have a car? | ..... |
| 8 How much money do we have? | ..... |

9.2 Write these sentences with **do/does/don't/doesn't**. The meaning is the same.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 Have you got any money? | Do you have any money? |
| 2 I haven't got many clothes. | I |
| 3 Has Tom got a brother? | ..... |
| 4 How many children have they got? | ..... |
| 5 Have you got any questions? | ..... |
| 6 Sam hasn't got a job. | ..... |

9.3 Read the questions and answers. Then write sentences about Mark.

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 Have you got a car? | No. | 1 He hasn't got a car. |
| 2 Have you got a bike? | Yes. | 2 He |
| 3 Have you got a dog? | No. | 3 |
| 4 Have you got a mobile phone? | Yes. | 4 |
| 5 Have you got a watch? | No. | 5 |
| 6 Have you got any brothers or sisters? | Yes, two brothers and a sister. | 6 |

What about you? Write sentences with **I've got** or **I haven't got**.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------|
| 7 (a dog) | ..... |
| 8 (a bike) | ..... |
| 9 (brothers/sisters) | ..... |

9.4 Complete the sentences. Use **have, has, don't have** or **doesn't have**.

- Sarah doesn't have a car. She goes everywhere by bike.
- They like animals. They have three dogs and two cats.
- Charles isn't happy. He a lot of problems.
- They are always busy. They much free time.
- 'What's wrong?' 'I something in my eye.'
- 'Where's my pen?' 'I don't know. I it.'
- Amy wants to go to the concert, but she a ticket.

9.5 Complete the sentences. Use **have/has got** or **haven't/hasn't got** with:

six legs a key ~~a headache~~ a lot of friends a job much time

- I'm not feeling very well. I 've got a headache.
- Everybody likes Tom. He
- She can't open the door. She
- Quick! We
- An insect
- I'm unemployed. I

A

last night

now

Now Robert **is** at work.At midnight last night
he **wasn't** at work.He **was** in bed.He **was** asleep.

am/is (present) → was (past):

☐ I **am** tired. (now)I **was** tired **last night**.☐ Where **is** Kate? (now)Where **was** Kate **yesterday**?☐ The weather **is** good today.The weather **was** good **last week**.

are (present) → were (past):

☐ You **are** late. (now)You **were** late **yesterday**.☐ They **aren't** here. (now)They **weren't** here **last Sunday**.

B

positive

negative

question

I he she it	was
we you they	were

I he she it	was not (wasn't)
we you they	were not (weren't)

was	I? he? she? it?
were	we? you? they?

- ☐ Last year Rachel **was** 22, so she **is** 23 now.
- ☐ When I **was** a child, I **was** scared of dogs.
- ☐ We **were** hungry after the journey, but we **weren't** tired.
- ☐ The hotel **was** comfortable, but it **wasn't** expensive.
- ☐ **Was** the weather nice when you **were** on holiday?
- ☐ Your shoes are nice. **Were** they expensive?
- ☐ Why **were** you late this morning?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I/he/she/it was .
	we/you/they were .

No,	I/he/she/it wasn't .
	we/you/they weren't .

- ☐ 'Were you late?' 'No, I wasn't.'
- ☐ 'Was Tom at work yesterday?' 'Yes, he was.'
- ☐ 'Were Sue and Steve at the party?' 'No, they weren't.'

10.1 Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?



- 1 Joe was in bed.
- 2 Jack and Kate
- 3 Sue
- 4
- 5
- 6 And you? I

10.2 Write **am/is/are** (present) or **was/were** (past).

- 1 Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
- 2 Today the weather nice, but yesterday it very cold.
- 3 I hungry. Can I have something to eat?
- 4 I feel fine this morning, but I very tired last night.
- 5 Where you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
- 6 Don't buy those shoes. They very expensive.
- 7 I like your new jacket. it expensive?
- 8 This time last year I in Paris.
- 9 'Where Sam and Joe?' 'I don't know. They here a few minutes ago.'

10.3 Write **was/were** or **wasn't/weren't**.

- 1 We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room was very small and it wasn't clean.
- 2 Mark at work last week because he ill. He's better now.
- 3 Yesterday a public holiday, so the banks closed. They're open today.
- 4 '..... Kate and Ben at the party?' 'Kate there, but Ben
- 5 Where are my keys? They on the table, but they're not there now.
- 6 You at home last night. Where you?

10.4 Write questions from these words + **was/were**. Put the words in the right order.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 (late / you / this morning / why?)
<u>Why were you late this morning?</u> 2 (difficult / your exam?) 3 (last week / where / Sue and Chris?) 4 (your new camera / how much?) 5 (angry / you / yesterday / why?) 6 (nice / the weather / last week?) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> → The traffic was bad. → No, it was easy. → They were on holiday. → A hundred pounds. → Because you were late. → Yes, it was beautiful. |
|---|--|

worked/got/went etc. (past simple)

A

They **watch** TV every evening.
(present simple)

They **watched** TV yesterday evening.
(past simple)

watched is the past simple:

I/we/you/they	watched
he/she/it	



B

The past simple is often **-ed** (regular verbs). For example:

work → **worked** dance → **danced**
 clean → **cleaned** stay → **stayed**
 start → **started** need → **needed**

- ☐ I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I **cleaned** my teeth.
- ☐ Terry **worked** in a bank from 2005 to 2011.
- ☐ Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- ☐ We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people. The party **finished** at midnight.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

try → **tried** study → **studied** copy → **copied**
 stop → **stopped** plan → **planned**

C

Some verbs are *irregular* (= not regular). The past simple is *not -ed*. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 2–3):

begin → began	fall → fell	leave → left	sell → sold
break broke	find found	lose lost	sit sat
bring brought	fly flew	make made	sleep slept
build built	forget forgot	meet met	speak spoke
buy bought	get got	pay paid	stand stood
catch caught	give gave	put put	take took
come came	go went	read read (red)*	tell told
do did	have had	ring rang	think thought
drink drank	hear heard	say said	win won
eat ate	know knew	see saw	write wrote

* pronounced 'red'

- ☐ I usually get up early, but this morning I **got** up at 9 o'clock.
- ☐ We **did** a lot of work yesterday.
- ☐ Caroline **went** to the cinema three times last week.
- ☐ James **came** into the room, **took** off his coat and **sat** down.

11.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box.

~~clean~~ die enjoy finish happen open rain start stay want

- I cleaned my teeth three times yesterday.
- It was hot in the room, so I the window.
- The film was very long. It at 7.15 and at 10 o'clock.
- When I was a child, I to be a doctor.
- The accident last Sunday afternoon.
- The weather is nice today, but yesterday it all day.
- We our holiday last year. We at a very nice place.
- Anna's grandfather when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the past simple of these verbs.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 get <u>got</u> | 4 pay | 7 go | 10 know |
| 2 see | 5 visit | 8 think | 11 put |
| 3 play | 6 buy | 9 copy | 12 speak |

11.3 Read about Lisa's journey to Madrid. Put the verbs in the correct form.



Last Tuesday Lisa (1) flew from London to Madrid. She (2) up at 6 o'clock in the morning and (3) a cup of coffee. At 6.30 she (4) home and (5) to the airport. When she (6) there, she (7) the car, (8) to the airport building, and (9) in. Then she (10) breakfast at a cafe and (11) for her flight. The plane (12) on time and (13) in Madrid two hours later. Finally she (14) a taxi from the airport to her hotel in the centre of Madrid.

fly, get
have
leave, drive
get, park, walk
check, have
wait, depart
arrive, take

11.4 Write sentences about the past (**yesterday** / **last week** etc.).

- James always goes to work by car. Yesterday he went to work by car.
- Rachel often loses her keys. She last week.
- Kate meets her friends every evening. She yesterday evening.
- I buy a newspaper every day. Yesterday I
- We often go to the cinema at weekends. Last Sunday we
- I eat an orange every day. Yesterday I
- Tom always has a shower in the morning. This morning he
- Our friends often come to see us. They last Friday.

11.5 Write sentences about what **you** did yesterday.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------|
| 1 <u>I went to the theatre.</u> | 4 |
| 2 | 5 |
| 3 | 6 |

I didn't ... Did you ... ? (past simple negative and questions)

A

We use **did** in past simple negatives and questions:

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>positive</i>	<i>negative</i>	<i>question</i>
play start watch have see do go	I played we started you watched they had he saw she did it went	I we you they he she it did not (didn't)	play? start? watch? have? see? do? go?
			did I we you they he she it

B

do/does (present) → **did** (past):

- ☐ I **don't** watch TV very often.
I **didn't** watch TV **yesterday**.
- ☐ **Does** she often go away?
Did she go away **last week**?

C

We use **did/didn't** + *infinitive* (watch/play/go etc.):

I watched	but	I didn't watch	(not I didn't watched)
they went		did they go ?	(not did they went?)
he had		he didn't have	
you did		did you do ?	

- ☐ I **played** tennis yesterday, but I **didn't win**.
- ☐ '**Did** you **do** the shopping?' 'No, I **didn't have** time.'
- ☐ We **went** to the cinema, but we **didn't enjoy** the film.

D

Study the word order in questions:

did + *subject* + **infinitive**

What	Did	your sister	call	you?
How	did	you	do	last night?
Where	did	the accident	happen ?	
	did	your parents	go	for their holiday?

E

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	did.	No,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	didn't.
------	----------------------------	-------------	-----	----------------------------	----------------

- ☐ '**Did** you see Joe yesterday?' '**No, I didn't.**'
- ☐ '**Did** it rain on Sunday?' '**Yes, it did.**'
- ☐ '**Did** Helen come to the party?' '**No, she didn't.**'
- ☐ '**Did** your parents have a good holiday?' '**Yes, they did.**'

12.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

- I saw Barbara, but I didn't see Jane.
- They worked on Monday, but they on Tuesday.
- We went to the post office, but we to the bank.
- She had a pen, but she any paper.
- Jack did French at school, but he German.

12.2 Write questions with **Did ... ?**

- I watched TV last night. How about you? Did you watch TV last night ?
- I enjoyed the party. How about you?
- I had a good holiday. How about you?
- I finished work early. How about you?
- I slept well last night. How about you?

12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write positive or negative sentences.

- (watch TV) I watched TV. or I didn't watch TV.
- (get up before 7 o'clock) I
- (have a shower)
- (buy a magazine)
- (eat meat)
- (go to bed before 10.30)

12.4 Write B's questions. Use:

arrive cost go go to bed late happen have a nice time ~~stay~~ win

1 A: We went to New York last month. B: Where <u>did you stay</u> ? A: With some friends.	5 A: We came home by taxi. B: How much ? A: Ten pounds.
2 A: I was late for the meeting. B: What time ? A: Half past nine.	6 A: I'm tired this morning. B: ? A: No, but I didn't sleep very well.
3 A: I played tennis this afternoon. B: ? A: No, I lost.	7 A: We went to the beach yesterday. B: ? A: Yes, it was great.
4 A: I had a nice holiday. B: Good. Where ? A: To the mountains.	8 A: The window is broken. B: How ? A: I don't know.

12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative or question.

- We went to the cinema, but the film wasn't very good. We didn't enjoy it. (enjoy)
- Tom some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket and a pullover. (buy)
- '..... yesterday?' 'No, it was a nice day.' (rain)
- We were tired, so we long at the party. (stay)
- It was very warm in the room, so I a window. (open)
- 'Did you phone Chris this morning?' 'No, I time.' (have)
- 'I cut my hand this morning.' 'How that?' (do)
- 'Why weren't you at the meeting yesterday?' 'I about it.' (know)

I was doing (past continuous)

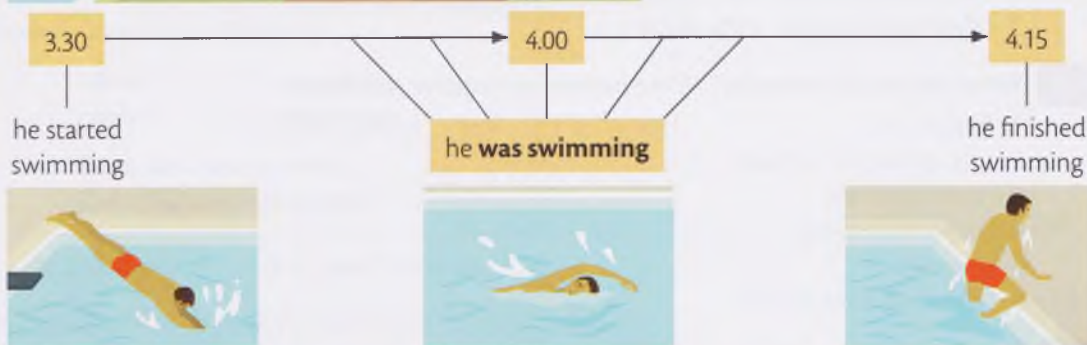
A



It is 6 o'clock now.
Paul **is** at home.
He **is watching** TV.

At 4 o'clock he **wasn't** at home.
He **was** at the sports club.

He **was swimming** in the pool.
He **wasn't watching** TV.



B

was/were + -ing is the *past continuous*:

positive

I he she it	was	doing watching playing swimming living etc.
we you they	were	

negative

I he she it	was not (wasn't)	doing watching playing swimming living etc.
we you they	were not (weren't)	

question

was	I he she it	doing? watching? playing? swimming? living? etc.
were	we you they	

- ☐ What **were** you **doing** at 11.30 yesterday? **Were** you **working**?
- ☐ 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I **wasn't listening**'
- ☐ It **was raining**, so we didn't go out.
- ☐ In 2009 we **were living** in Canada.
- ☐ Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she **was wearing** trousers.
- ☐ I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**.

Spelling (live → living / run → running / lie → lying etc.) → Appendix 5

C

am/is/are + -ing (*present*) → **was/were + -ing** (*past*):

present

- ☐ I'm **working** (now).
- ☐ It **isn't raining** (now).
- ☐ What **are** you **doing** (now)?

past

- ☐ I **was working** at 10.30 last night.
- ☐ It **wasn't raining** when we went out.
- ☐ What **were** you **doing** at 3 o'clock?

Exercises

- 13.1** Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.

				
RACHEL	JACK KATE	TOM	TRACEY	MR AND MRS HALL
at home watch TV	at the cinema watch a film	in his car drive	at the station wait for a train	in the park walk

- Rachel was at home. She was watching TV.
- Jack and Kate They
- Tom
-
-
- And you? I

- 13.2** Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

7.10 – 7.25  breakfast	7.30 – 8.10 	8.30 – 9.00 
9.20 – 10.00 	10.15 – 11.45 	12.00 – 12.45 

- At 8.45 she was washing her car.
- At 10.45 she
- At 8 o'clock
- At 12.10
- At 7.15
- At 9.30

- 13.3** Complete the questions. Use **was/were -ing**. Use **what/where/why** if necessary.

- (you/live) Where were you living in 2012?
- (you/do) at 2 o'clock?
- (it/rain) when you got up?
- (Sue/drive) so fast?
- (Tom/wear) a suit yesterday?

In London.
I was asleep.
No, it was sunny.
Because she was late.
No, a T-shirt and jeans.

- 13.4** Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.



- (wear / a jacket) He wasn't wearing a jacket.
- (carry / a bag)
- (go / to the dentist)
- (eat / an ice cream)
- (carry / an umbrella)
- (go / home)
- (wear / a hat)
- (ride / a bicycle)

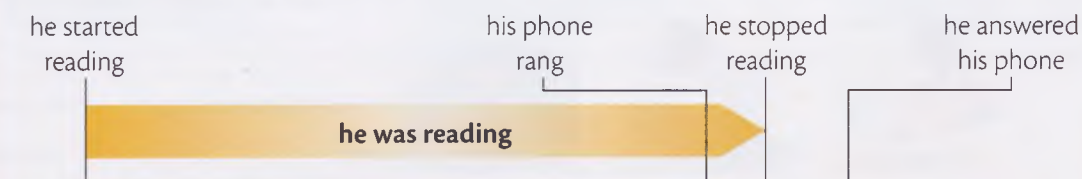
I was doing (past continuous) and
I did (past simple)

A

Jack was reading
a book.

His phone rang.

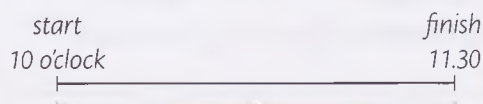
He stopped reading.

He answered his
phone.What **happened**? His phone **rang**. (*past simple*)What **was** Jack **doing** when his phone rang? } (*past continuous*)
He **was reading** a book.What **did** he **do** when his phone rang? } (*past simple*)
He **stopped** reading and **answered** his phone.Jack began reading *before* his phone rang.So *when* his phone rang, he **was reading**.

B

past simple

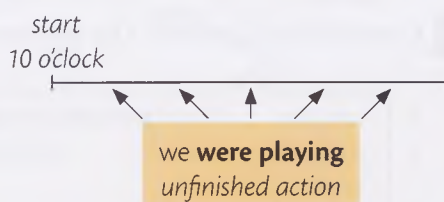
- ☐ A: What **did** you **do** yesterday morning?
B: We **played** tennis. (from 10 to 11.30)



- ☐ Jack **read** a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
☐ **Did** you **watch** the game on TV last night?
☐ It **didn't rain** while we were on holiday.

past continuous

- ☐ A: What **were** you **doing** at 10.30?
B: We **were playing** tennis.



- ☐ Jack **was reading** a book when his phone rang.
☐ **Were** you **watching** TV when I phoned you?
☐ It **wasn't raining** when I got up.

- ☐ I **started** work at 9 o'clock and **finished** at 4.30. At 2.30 I **was working**.
☐ It **was raining** when we **went** out. (= it started raining *before* we went out)
☐ I **saw** Lucy and Steve this morning. They **were waiting** at the bus stop.
☐ Kelly **fell** asleep while she **was reading**.

14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or past simple.



Lucy broke (break) her arm last week.
It (happen) when
she (paint) her
room. She (fall)
off the ladder.



The train (arrive)
at the station and Paula
(get) off. Two friends of hers, Jon and Rachel,
..... (wait) to
meet her.



Yesterday Sue (walk)
along the road when she (meet)
James. He (go)
to the station to catch a train and he
..... (carry) a bag.
They (stop) to
talk for a few minutes.

14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or past simple.

- 1 A: What was the weather like when you got (get) up this morning?
B: It was raining (rain).
- 2 A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?
B: Yes, she (study).
- 3 A: (Paul/call) you this morning?
B: Yes, he (call) while I (have) breakfast.
- 4 A: Was Tracey at work today?
B: No, she (not/go) to work. She was ill.
- 5 A: How fast (you/drive) when the police
..... (stop) you?
B: I'm not sure, but I (not/drive) very fast.
- 6 A: (your team / win) the football match yesterday?
B: The weather was very bad, so we (not/play).
- 7 A: How (you/break) the window?
B: We (play) football. I (kick) the ball and
it (hit) the window.
- 8 A: (you/see) Jessica last night?
B: Yes, she (wear) a very nice jacket.
- 9 A: What (you/do) at 2 o'clock this morning?
B: I was asleep.
- 10 A: I (lose) my key last night.
B: How (you/get) into your room?
A: I (climb) in through a window.

I have done (present perfect 1)

A



His shoes are dirty.



He is cleaning his shoes.

He **has cleaned** his shoes.
(= his shoes are clean *now*)

They are at home.



They are going out.

They **have gone** out.
(= they are not at home *now*)

B

has cleaned / have gone etc. is the *present perfect* (**have** + *past participle*):

I	have ('ve)	cleaned
we	have not (haven't)	finished
you		started
they		lost
he	has ('s)	done
she	has not (hasn't)	been
it		gone

↑
past participle

have	I	cleaned?
	we	finished?
	you	started?
	they	lost?
has	he	done?
	she	been?
	it	gone?

} *regular verbs*} *irregular verbs**Regular verbs* The past participle is **-ed** (the same as the past simple):clean → I have **cleaned** finish → we have **finished** start → she has **started***Irregular verbs* The past participle is not **-ed**.

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same:

buy → I **bought** / I have **bought** have → he **had** / he has **had**

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different:

break → I **broke** / I have **broken** see → you **saw** / you have **seen**
fall → it **fell** / it has **fallen** go → they **went** / they have **gone**

C

We use the present perfect for *an action in the past* with a result *now*:

- ☐ I've **lost** my passport. (= I can't find my passport *now*)
- ☐ 'Where's Rebecca?' 'She's **gone** to bed.' (= she is in bed *now*)
- ☐ We've **bought** a new car. (= we have a new car *now*)
- ☐ It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow and I **haven't bought** her a present. (= I don't have a present for her *now*)
- ☐ 'Bob is away on holiday.' 'Oh, where **has** he **gone**?' (= where is he *now*?)
- ☐ Can I take this newspaper? **Have** you **finished** with it? (= do you need it *now*?)

15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Choose from the box.

go to bed ~~clean his shoes~~ stop raining
close the door fall down have a shower

	before	→	now	
1		→		He has cleaned his shoes.
2		→		She
3		→		They
4		→		It
5		→		He
6		→		The

15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box.

break buy decide finish forget go go
invite ~~lose~~ see not/see take tell not/tell

- I 've lost my keys. I don't know where they are.
- I some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
- 'Where is Helen?' 'She's not here. She out.'
- I'm looking for Paula. you her?
- Look! Somebody that window.
- 'Does Lisa know that you're going away?' 'Yes, I her.'
- I can't find my umbrella. Somebody it.
- 'Where are my glasses?' 'I don't know. I them.'
- I'm looking for Sarah. Where she ?
- I know that woman, but I her name.
- Sue is having a party tonight. She a lot of people.
- What are you going to do? you ?
- A: Does Ben know about the meeting tomorrow?
B: I don't think so. I him.
- I with this magazine. Do you want it?

I've just ... I've already ...
I haven't ... yet (present perfect 2)

A I've just ...

just = a short time ago

- ☐ A: Are Laura and Paul here?
B: Yes, they've **just arrived**.
- ☐ A: Are you hungry?
B: No, I've **just had** dinner.
- ☐ A: Is Tom here?
B: No, I'm afraid he's **just gone**.
(= he **has** just gone)

They **have just arrived**.

B I've already ...

already = before you expected / before I expected

- ☐ A: What time are Laura and Paul coming?
B: They've **already arrived**.
(= before you expected)
- ☐ It's only 9 o'clock and Anna **has already gone** to bed. (= before I expected)
- ☐ A: Jon, this is Emma.
B: Yes, I know. We've **already met**.



C I haven't ... yet / Have you ... yet?

yet = until nowWe use **yet** in negative sentences and questions. **Yet** is usually at the end.**yet** in negative sentences (**I haven't ... yet**)

- ☐ A: Are Laura and Paul here?
B: No, they **haven't arrived yet**.
(but B expects Laura and Paul to arrive soon)
- ☐ A: Does James know that you're going away?
B: No, I **haven't told** him **yet**.
(but B is going to tell him soon)
- ☐ Silvia has bought a new dress, but she **hasn't worn** it **yet**.

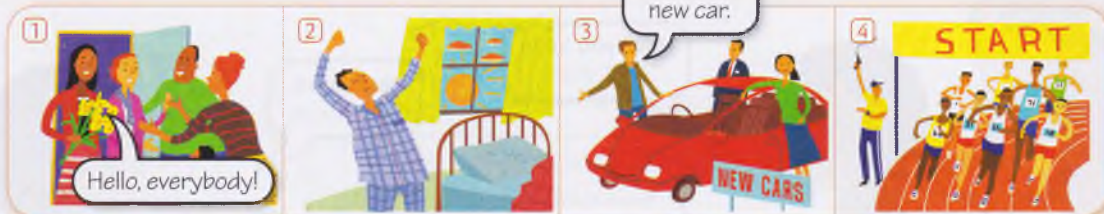
The film **hasn't started yet**.**yet** in questions (**Have you ... yet?**)

- ☐ A: **Have** Laura and Paul **arrived yet**?
B: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.
- ☐ A: **Has** Nicola **started** her new job **yet**?
B: No, she starts next week.
- ☐ A: This is my new dress.
B: Oh, it's nice. **Have** you **worn** it **yet**?



Exercises

16.1 Write a sentence with **just** for each picture.



- 1 They've just arrived. 3 They
2 He 4 The race

16.2 Complete the sentences. Use **already** + present perfect.

- 1 What time is Paul arriving?
2 Do your friends want to see the film?
3 Don't forget to phone Tom.
4 When is Mark going away?
5 Do you want to read the newspaper?
6 When does Sarah start her new job?

He's already arrived.

- No, they it.
I
He
I
She

16.3 Write a sentence with **just** (**They've just ...** / **She's just ...** etc.) or a negative sentence with **yet** (**They haven't ... yet** / **She hasn't ... yet** etc.).

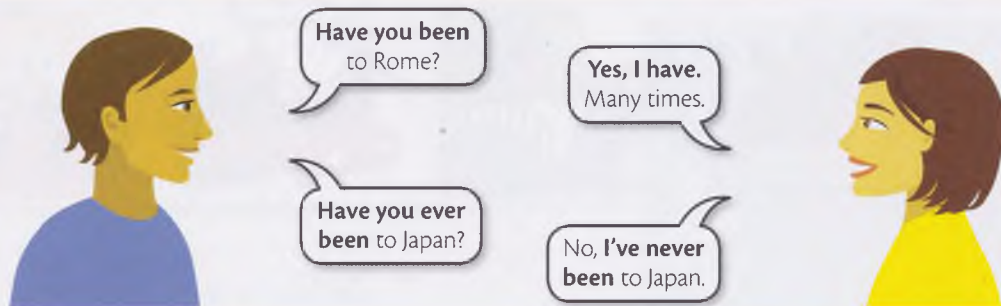
① a few minutes ago (she / go / out) <u>She hasn't gone out yet.</u>	② a few minutes ago (the bus / go) The bus	③ a few minutes ago (the train / leave)
④ a few minutes ago (he / open / it) 	⑤ a few minutes ago (they / finish / their dinner) 	⑥ a few minutes ago (it / stop / raining)

16.4 Write questions with **yet**.

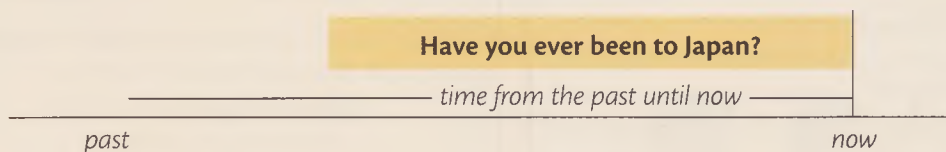
- 1 Your friend has a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her:
Have you started your new job yet?
2 Your friend has some new neighbours. Perhaps he has met them. You ask him:
..... you
3 Your friend has to pay her electricity bill. Perhaps she has paid it. You ask her:
.....
4 Tom was trying to sell his car. Perhaps he has sold it. You ask a friend about Tom:
.....

Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3)

A



We use the *present perfect* (**have been** / **have had** / **have played** etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, a person's life:



- ☐ 'Have you **been** to France?' 'No, I **haven't**.'
- ☐ I've **been** to Canada, but I **haven't been** to the United States.
- ☐ Mary is an interesting person. She **has had** many different jobs and **has lived** in many places.
- ☐ I've **seen** that woman before, but I can't remember where.
- ☐ How many times **has** Brazil **won** the World Cup?
- ☐ 'Have you **read** this book?' 'Yes, I've **read** it twice.' (**twice** = two times)

B

present perfect + **ever** (in questions) and **never**:

- ☐ 'Has Ann **ever been** to Australia?' 'Yes, once.' (**once** = one time)
- ☐ 'Have you **ever played** golf?' 'Yes, I play a lot.'
- ☐ My sister **has never travelled** by plane.
- ☐ I've **never ridden** a horse.
- ☐ 'Who is that man?' 'I don't know. I've **never seen** him before.'

C

gone and **been**



Ben **has gone** to Spain.
(= he is in Spain now)

Ben **has been** to Spain.
(= he went to Spain, but now he is back)

Compare:

- ☐ I can't find Susan. Where **has** she **gone**? (= where is she now?)
- ☐ Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where **have** you **been**?

17.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning **Have you ever ... ?** Write the questions.

Helen



- 1 (be / London?)
- 2 (play / golf?)
- 3 (be / Australia?)
- 4 (lose / your passport?)
- 5 (fly / in a helicopter?)
- 6 (win / a race?)
- 7 (be / New York?)
- 8 (drive / a bus?)
- 9 (break / your leg?)

Have you ever been to London?

Have you ever played golf?

Have

No, never.
Yes, many times.
Yes, once.
No, never.
Yes, a few times.
No, never.
Yes, twice.
No, never.
Yes, once.

17.2 Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 17.1.)

- 1 (be / New York) *She's been to New York twice.*
- 2 (be / Australia) She
- 3 (win / a race)
- 4 (fly / in a helicopter)

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

- 5 (be / New York) I
- 6 (play / tennis)
- 7 (drive / a lorry)
- 8 (be / late for work or school)

17.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?



Mary

~~have~~ be
~~do~~ write
~~travel~~ meet

~~all over the world~~
~~many different jobs~~
~~ten books~~

a lot of interesting things
a lot of interesting people
married three times

- 1 *She has had many different jobs.*
- 2 She
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

17.4 Write **gone** or **been**.

- 1 Ben is on holiday at the moment. He's *gone* to Spain.
- 2 'Have you ever to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
- 3 My parents aren't at home at the moment. They've out.
- 4 There's a new restaurant in town. Have you to it?
- 5 Rebecca loves Paris. She's there many times.
- 6 Helen was here earlier, but I think she's now.
- 7 'Where's Jessica?' 'She's not in the office. I think she's home.'
- 8 Hello, Sue. I was looking for you. Where have you ?

How long have you ... ? (present perfect 4)

A

Helen is on holiday in Ireland.
She is there now.

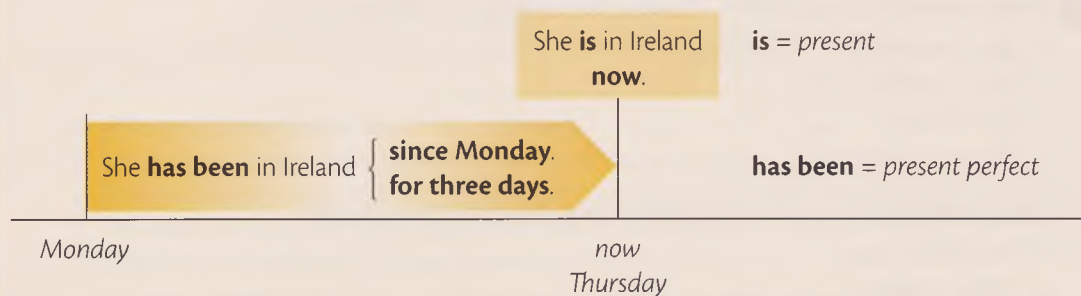
She arrived in Ireland on Monday.
Today is Thursday.

How long **has she been** in Ireland?

She **has been** in Ireland { **since Monday.**
for three days.



Compare **is** and **has been**:



B

Compare:

present simple

Dan and Kate **are** married.

Are you married?

Do you **know** Lisa?

I **know** Lisa.

Vicky **lives** in London.

I **have** a car.

present perfect simple (have been / have lived / have known etc.)

They **have been** married **for five years.**

(not They are married for five years.)

How long have you been married?

(not How long are you married?)

How long have you known her?

(not How long do you know her?)

I've known her **for a long time.**

(not I know her for ...)

How long has she lived in London?

She **has lived** there **all her life.**

How long have you had your car?

I've had it **since April.**

present continuous

I'm learning German.

David **is watching** TV.

It's raining.

present perfect continuous (have been + -ing)

How long have you been learning German?

(not How long are you learning German?)

I've been learning German **for two years.**

How long has he been watching TV?

He's been (= He **has been**) **watching** TV **since 5 o'clock.**

It's been (= It **has been**) **raining** all day.

18.1 Complete these sentences.

- Helen is in Ireland. She has been in Ireland since Monday.
- I know Lisa. I have known her for a long time.
- Sarah and Andy are married. They married since 2005.
- Ben is ill. He ill for the last few days.
- We live in Scott Road. We there for a long time.
- Catherine works in a bank. She there for five years.
- Alan has a headache. He a headache since he got up this morning.
- I'm learning English. I English for six months.

18.2 Make questions with **How long ... ?**

- Helen is on holiday.
- Steve and Nadia are in Brazil.
- I know Amy.
- Emily is learning Italian.
- My brother lives in Canada.
- I'm a teacher.
- It is raining.

How long has she been on holiday ?
 How long ?
 How long you ?
 ?
 ?
 ?
 ?

18.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

for ten minutes **all day** **all her life**
~~for ten years~~ **since he was 20** **since Sunday**



- They have been married for ten years.
- She
- They
- The sun
- She
- He

18.4 Which is right?

- Mark lives / has lived in Canada since April. (has lived is right)
- Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her very well.
- Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her for a long time.
- A: Sorry I'm late. How long are you waiting / have you been waiting?
 B: Not long. Only five minutes.
- Luke works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
- Ruth is reading a newspaper. She is reading / She has been reading it for two hours.
- 'How long do you live / have you lived in this house?' 'About ten years.'
- 'Is that a new coat?' 'No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time.'
- Tom is / has been in Spain at the moment. He is / He has been there for the last three days.

Exercises

19.1 Write **for** or **since**.

- Helen has been in Ireland since Monday.
- Helen has been in Ireland for three days.
- My aunt has lived in Australia 15 years.
- Tina is in her office. She has been there 7 o'clock.
- India has been an independent country 1947.
- The bus is late. We've been waiting 20 minutes.
- Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty many years.
- Michael has been ill a long time. He has been in hospital October.

19.2 Answer these questions. Use **ago**.

- When was your last meal? Three hours ago.
- When was the last time you were ill?
- When did you last go to the cinema?
- When was the last time you were in a car?
- When was the last time you went on holiday?

19.3 Complete the sentences. Use **for** or **ago** with these words.

- Helen arrived in Ireland three days ago. (three days)
- Helen has been in Ireland for three days. (three days)
- Lynn and Mark have been married (20 years)
- Lynn and Mark got married (20 years)
- Dan arrived (an hour)
- I bought these shoes (a few days)
- Silvia has been learning English (six months)
- Have you known Lisa ? (a long time)

19.4 Complete the sentences with **for** or **since**.

- (Helen is in Ireland – she arrived there three days ago)
Helen has been in Ireland for three days.
- (Jack is here – he arrived on Tuesday)
Jack has
- (It's raining – it started an hour ago)
It's been
- (I know Sue – I first met her in 2008)
I've
- (Claire and Matt are married – they got married six months ago)
Claire and Matt have
- (Laura is studying medicine at university – she started three years ago)
Laura has
- (David plays the piano – he started when he was seven years old)
David has

19.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin your sentences with:

I've lived ... I've been ... I've been learning ... I've known ... I've had ...

- I've lived in this town for three years.
-
-
-
-

I have done (present perfect) and I did (past)

A

With a *finished time* (**yesterday** / **last week** etc.), we use the past (**arrived/saw/was** etc.):

past + *finished time*

We arrived	yesterday. last week. at 3 o'clock. in 2002. six months ago.
-------------------	--



Do *not* use the present perfect (**have arrived** / **have done** / **have been** etc.) with a finished time:

- ☐ I **saw** Paula **yesterday**.
(*not* I have seen)
- ☐ Where **were** you **on Sunday afternoon**?
(*not* Where have you been)
- ☐ We **didn't have** a holiday **last year**.
(*not* We haven't had)
- ☐ 'What **did** you **do last night**?' 'I **stayed** at home.'
- ☐ William Shakespeare **lived from 1564 to 1616**. He **was** a writer. He **wrote** many plays and poems.

Use the past to ask **When ... ?** or **What time ... ?**:

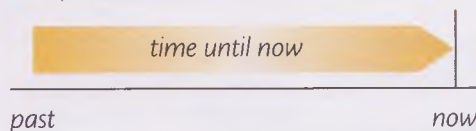
- ☐ **When did** you **buy** your computer? (*not* When have you bought)
- ☐ **What time did** Andy **go out**? (*not* What time has Andy gone out)

B

Compare:

present perfect

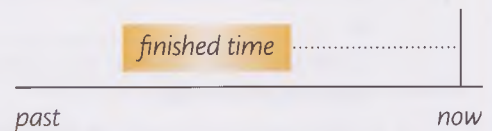
- ☐ I **have lost** my key.
(= I can't find it *now*)
- ☐ Ben **has gone** home.
(= he isn't here *now*)
- ☐ **Have** you **seen** Kate?
(= where is she *now*?)



- ☐ **Have** you **ever been** to Spain?
(= in your life, until *now*)
- ☐ My friend is a writer. He **has written** many books.
- ☐ Sam **hasn't phoned** me yet.
- ☐ We've **lived** in Singapore for six years.
(= we live there *now*)

past

- ☐ I **lost** my key **last week**.
- ☐ Ben **went** home **ten minutes ago**.
- ☐ **Did** you **see** Kate **on Saturday**?



- ☐ **Did** you **go** to Spain **last year**?
- ☐ Shakespeare **wrote** many plays and poems.
- ☐ Sam **didn't phone** me yesterday.
- ☐ We **lived** in Glasgow for six years, but now we live in Singapore.

Exercises

20.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

- 1 Have you seen Kate?
- 2 Have you started your new job?
- 3 Have your friends arrived?
- 4 Has Sarah gone away?
- 5 Have you worn your new suit?

Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.
 Yes, I last week.
 Yes, they at 5 o'clock.
 Yes, on Friday.
 Yes, yesterday.

20.2 Are these sentences OK? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (The verbs are underlined.)

- 1 I've lost my key. I can't find it.
- 2 Have you seen Kate yesterday?
- 3 I've finished my work at 2 o'clock.
- 4 I'm ready now. I've finished my work.
- 5 What time have you finished your work?
- 6 Sue isn't here. She's gone out.
- 7 Steve's grandmother has died two years ago.
- 8 Where have you been last night?

OK

Did you see

20.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

- 1 My friend is a writer. He has written (write) many books.
- 2 We didn't have (not/have) a holiday last year.
- 3 I (play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
- 4 What time (you/go) to bed last night?
- 5 (you ever meet) a famous person?
- 6 The weather (not/be) very good yesterday.
- 7 Kathy travels a lot. She (visit) many countries.
- 8 I (switch) off the light before going out this morning.
- 9 I live in New York now, but I (live) in Mexico for many years.
- 10 'What's Canada like? Is it beautiful?' 'I don't know. I (not/be) there.'

20.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

- 1 A: Have you ever been (you/ever/be) to Florida?
 B: Yes, we went (go) there on holiday two years ago.
 A: (you/have) a good time?
 B: Yes, it (be) great.
- 2 A: Where's Alan? (you/see) him?
 B: Yes, he (go) out a few minutes ago.
 A: And Rachel?
 B: I don't know. I (not/see) her.
- 3 Rose works in a factory. She (work) there for six months.
 Before that she (be) a waitress in a restaurant. She
 (work) there for two years, but she
 (not/enjoy) it very much.
- 4 A: Do you know Mark's sister?
 B: I (see) her a few times, but I
 (never/speak) to her. (you/ever/speak) to her?
 A: Yes. I (meet) her at a party last week. She's very nice.

is done was done (passive 1)

A



The office **is cleaned** every day.

The office **was cleaned** yesterday.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody **cleans** the office every day. (active)

The office **is cleaned** every day. (passive)

Somebody **cleaned** the office yesterday. (active)

The office **was cleaned** yesterday. (passive)

B

The passive is:

					<i>past participle</i>
present simple	am/is/are	(not)	+	cleaned	done
past simple	was/were			invented	built
				injured	taken etc.

The past participle of regular verbs is **-ed** (cleaned/damaged etc.).

For a list of irregular past participles (**done/built/taken** etc.), see Appendix 2–3.

- ☐ Butter **is made** from milk.
- ☐ Oranges **are imported** into Britain.
- ☐ How often **are** these rooms **cleaned**?
- ☐ I **am** never **invited** to parties.
- ☐ This house **was built** 100 years ago.
- ☐ These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- ☐ When **was** the telephone **invented**?
- ☐ We **weren't invited** to the party last week.
- ☐ 'Was anybody **injured** in the accident?' 'Yes, two people **were taken** to hospital.'

C

was/were born

- ☐ I **was born** in Berlin in 1993. (*not* I am born)
- ☐ 'Where **were** you **born**?' 'In Cairo.'

D

passive + by ...

- ☐ The telephone was invented **by Alexander Bell** in 1876. (= Alexander Bell invented it)
- ☐ I was bitten **by a dog** a few days ago.
- ☐ Do you like these paintings? They were painted **by a friend of mine**.

21.1 Write sentences from these words. Some of the sentences are questions.

Sentences 1–7 are present.

- 1 (the office / clean / every day)

The office is cleaned every day.
- 2 (how often / these rooms / clean?)

How often are these rooms cleaned?
- 3 (glass / make / from sand)

Glass
- 4 (the windows / clean / every two weeks)
- 5 (this room / not / use / very much)
- 6 (we / allow / to park here?)
- 7 (how / this word / pronounce?)

Sentences 8–15 are past.

- 8 (the office / clean / yesterday)

The office was cleaned yesterday.
- 9 (the house / paint / last month)

The house
- 10 (my phone / steal / a few days ago)
- 11 (three people / injure / in the accident)
- 12 (when / this bridge / build?)
- 13 (I / not / wake up / by the noise)
- 14 (how / these windows / break?)
- 15 (you / invite / to Jon's party last week?)

21.2 These sentences are not correct. Correct them.

- 1 This house built 100 years ago.

This house was built.
- 2 Football plays in most countries of the world.
- 3 Why did the letter send to the wrong address?
- 4 A film studio is a place where films make.
- 5 Where are you born?
- 6 How many languages are speaking in Switzerland?
- 7 Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen.
- 8 When was invented the bicycle?

21.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

~~clean~~ damage find give invite make make show steal ~~take~~

- 1 The room

is cleaned

every day.
- 2 I saw an accident yesterday. Two people

were taken

to hospital.
- 3 Paper

from wood.
- 4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms

.
- 5 'Where did you get this picture?' 'It

to me by a friend of mine.'
- 6 Many American programmes

on British TV.
- 7 'Did James and Sue go to the wedding?' 'No. They

, but they didn't go.'
- 8 'How old is this film?' 'It

in 1985.'
- 9 My car

last week, but the next day it

by the police.

21.4 Where were they born?

- 1 (Ian / Edinburgh)

Ian was born in Edinburgh.
- 2 (Sarah / Manchester)

Sarah
- 3 (her parents / Ireland)

Her
- 4 (you / ???)

I
- 5 (your mother / ???)

is being done has been done (passive 2)

A

is/are being ... (present continuous passive)

Somebody **is painting** the door. (active)The door **is being painted**. (passive)

- ☐ My car is at the garage. It **is being repaired**. (= somebody is repairing it)
- ☐ Some new houses **are being built** opposite the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the present continuous and present simple:

- ☐ The office **is being cleaned** at the moment. (*continuous*)
The office **is cleaned** every day. (*simple*)
- ☐ Football matches **are often played** at the weekend, but no matches **are being played** next weekend.

For the present continuous and present simple, see Units 8 and 25.

B

has/have been ... (present perfect passive)

before

now

Somebody **has painted** the door. (active)The door **has been painted**. (passive)

- ☐ My key **has been stolen**. (= somebody has stolen it)
- ☐ My keys **have been stolen**. (= somebody has stolen them)
- ☐ I'm not going to the party. I **haven't been invited**. (= nobody has invited me)
- ☐ **Has this shirt been washed?** (= has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and past simple:

- ☐ The room isn't dirty any more. It **has been cleaned**. (*present perfect*)
The room **was cleaned** yesterday. (*past simple*)
- ☐ I can't find my keys. I think they **'ve been stolen**. (*present perfect*)
My keys **were stolen** last week. (*past simple*)

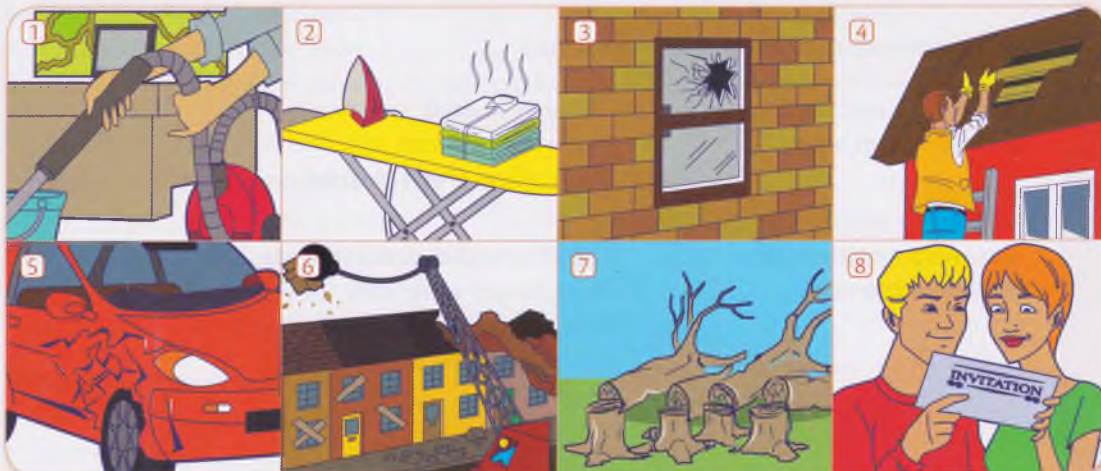
For the present perfect and past simple, see Unit 20.

22.1 What's happening?



- 1 The car is being repaired.
- 2 A bridge is being repaired.
- 3 The windows are being cleaned.
- 4 The grass is being cut.

22.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ...) or the present perfect (has/have been ...).



- 1 (the office / clean) The office is being cleaned.
- 2 (the shirts / iron) The shirts have been ironed.
- 3 (the window / break) The window has been broken.
- 4 (the roof / repair) The roof is being repaired.
- 5 (the car / damage) The car has been damaged.
- 6 (the houses / knock / down) The house has been knocked down.
- 7 (the trees / cut / down) The trees have been cut down.
- 8 (they / invite / to a party) They are inviting us to a party.

22.3 Complete the sentences. (Study Unit 21 before you do this exercise.)

- 1 I can't use my office at the moment. It is being painted (paint).
- 2 We didn't go to the party. We weren't invited (not/invite).
- 3 The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now. It has been repaired (repair).
- 4 The washing machine was repaired (repair) yesterday afternoon.
- 5 A factory is a place where things are made (make).
- 6 How old are these houses? When were they built (they/build)?
- 7 A: Is it being used (the photocopier / use) at the moment?
B: No, you can go ahead and use it.
- 8 I've never seen these flowers before. What were they called (they/call)?
- 9 My sunglasses were stolen (steal) at the beach yesterday.
- 10 The bridge is closed at the moment. It was damaged (damage) last week and it hasn't been repaired (not/repair) yet.

be/have/do in present and past tenses

A be (= am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working etc.)

am/is/are + -ing
(present continuous)
→ Units 3–4 and 25

- ☐ Please be quiet. I'm **working**.
- ☐ It **isn't raining** at the moment.
- ☐ What **are** you **doing** this evening?

was/were + -ing
(past continuous)
→ Unit 13

- ☐ I **was working** when she arrived.
- ☐ It **wasn't raining**, so we didn't need an umbrella.
- ☐ What **were** you **doing** at 3 o'clock?

B be + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten etc.)

am/is/are + past participle
(passive present simple)
→ Unit 21

- ☐ I'm never **invited** to parties.
- ☐ Butter **is made** from milk.
- ☐ These offices **aren't cleaned** every day.

was/were + past participle
(passive past simple)
→ Unit 21

- ☐ The office **was cleaned** yesterday.
- ☐ These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- ☐ How **was** the window **broken**?
- ☐ Where **were** you **born**?

C have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been etc.)

have/has + past participle
(present perfect)
→ Units 15–18

- ☐ I've **cleaned** my room.
- ☐ Tom **has lost** his passport.
- ☐ Kate **hasn't been** to Canada.
- ☐ Where **have** Paul and Emma **gone**?

D do/does/did + infinitive (clean/like/eat/go etc.)

do/does + infinitive
(present simple negative
and questions)
→ Units 6–7

- ☐ I like coffee, but I **don't like** tea.
- ☐ Chris **doesn't go** out very often.
- ☐ What **do** you usually **do** at weekends?
- ☐ **Does** Sam **live** alone?

did + infinitive
(past simple negative and
questions)
→ Unit 12

- ☐ I **didn't watch** TV yesterday.
- ☐ It **didn't rain** last week.
- ☐ What time **did** Paul and Emma **go** out?

23.1 Write **is/are** or **do/does**.

- 1 Do you work in the evenings?
- 2 Where are they going?
- 3 Why are you looking at me?
- 4 Does Ben live near you?
- 5 Do you like cooking?
- 6 Is the sun shining?
- 7 What time do the shops close?
- 8 Is Maria working today?
- 9 What does this word mean?
- 10 Are you feeling all right?

23.2 Write **am not/isn't/aren't** or **don't/doesn't**. All these sentences are negative.

- 1 Tom doesn't work at weekends.
- 2 I'm very tired. I don't want to go out this evening.
- 3 I'm very tired. I am not going out this evening.
- 4 Gary isn't working this week. He's on holiday.
- 5 My parents are usually at home. They aren't go out very often.
- 6 Nicola has travelled a lot, but she doesn't speak any foreign languages.
- 7 You can turn off the television. I am not watching it.
- 8 Lisa has invited us to her party next week, but we aren't going.

23.3 Write **was/were/did/have/has**.

- 1 Where were your shoes made?
- 2 Did you go out last night?
- 3 What were you doing at 10.30?
- 4 Where was your mother born?
- 5 Has Laura gone home?
- 6 What time did she go?
- 7 When were these houses built?
- 8 Did Steve arrive yet?
- 9 Why did you go home early?
- 10 How long have they been married?

23.4 Write **is/are/was/were/have/has**.

- 1 Joe has lost his passport.
- 2 This bridge was built ten years ago.
- 3 Did you finish your work yet?
- 4 This town is always clean. The streets are cleaned every day.
- 5 Where was you born?
- 6 I have just made some coffee. Would you like some?
- 7 Glass is made from sand.
- 8 This is a very old photograph. It was taken a long time ago.
- 9 David has bought a new car.

23.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

damage	rain	enjoy	go	pronounce	eat
listen	use	open	go	understand	

- 1 I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's raining.
- 2 Why are you so tired? Did you go to bed late last night?
- 3 Where are the chocolates? Have you eaten them all?
- 4 How is your new job? Are you enjoying it?
- 5 My car was badly damaged in the accident, but I was OK.
- 6 Kate has got a car, but she doesn't use it very often.
- 7 Lisa isn't at home. She has gone away for a few days.
- 8 I don't understand the problem. Can you explain it again?
- 9 Mark is in his room. He's listening to music.
- 10 I don't know how to say this word. How is it pronounced?
- 11 How do you open this window? Can you show me?

Regular and irregular verbs

A

Regular verbs

The *past simple* and *past participle* of regular verbs is **-ed**:

clean → **cleaned** live → **lived** paint → **painted** study → **studied**

Past simple (→ Unit 11)

- ☐ I **cleaned** my room yesterday.
- ☐ Chris **studied** engineering at university.

Past participle

have/has + *past participle* (present perfect → Units 15–18):

- ☐ I **have cleaned** my room.
- ☐ Tina **has lived** in London for ten years.

be (is/are/were/has been etc.) + *past participle* (passive → Units 21–22):

- ☐ These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
- ☐ My car **has been repaired**.

B

Irregular verbs

The *past simple* and *past participle* of irregular verbs do *not* end in **-ed**:

	make	break	cut
<i>past simple</i>	made	broke	cut
<i>past participle</i>	made	broken	cut

Sometimes the *past simple* and *past participle* are the same. For example:

	make	find	buy	cut
<i>past simple</i>	made	found	bought	cut
<i>past participle</i>	made	found	bought	cut

- ☐ I **made** a cake yesterday. (*past simple*)
- ☐ I **have made** some coffee. (*past participle* – *present perfect*)
- ☐ Butter **is made** from milk. (*past participle* – *passive present*)

Sometimes the *past simple* and *past participle* are different. For example:

	break	know	begin	go
<i>past simple</i>	broke	knew	began	went
<i>past participle</i>	broken	known	begun	gone

- ☐ Somebody **broke** this window last night. (*past simple*)
- ☐ Somebody **has broken** this window. (*past participle* – *present perfect*)
- ☐ This window **was broken** last night. (*past participle* – *passive past*)

24.1 Write the past simple / past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1 make <u>made</u> | 6 enjoy | 11 hear |
| 2 cut <u>cut</u> | 7 buy | 12 put |
| 3 get | 8 sit | 13 catch |
| 4 bring | 9 leave | 14 watch |
| 5 pay | 10 happen | 15 understand |

24.2 Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 break <u>broke</u> <u>broken</u> | 8 come |
| 2 begin | 9 know |
| 3 eat | 10 take |
| 4 drink | 11 go |
| 5 drive | 12 give |
| 6 speak | 13 throw |
| 7 write | 14 forget |

24.3 Put the verb in the right form.

- I washed my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
- Somebody has broken this window. (break)
- I feel good. I very well last night. (sleep)
- We a really good film yesterday. (see)
- It a lot while we were on holiday. (rain)
- I've my bag. Have you it? (lose / see)
- Rosa's bicycle was last week. (steal)
- I to bed early because I was tired. (go)
- Have you your work yet? (finish)
- The shopping centre was about 20 years ago. (build)
- Anna to drive when she was 18. (learn)
- I've never a horse. (ride)
- Jessica is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know)
- Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt)
- My brother in the London Marathon last year. Have you ever in a marathon? (run / run)

24.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

cost	drive	fly	make	meet	sell
speak	swim	tell	think	wake up	win

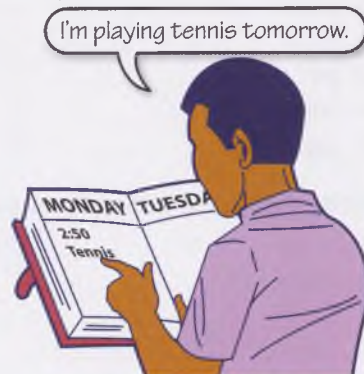
- I have made some coffee. Would you like some?
- Have you John about your new job?
- We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well, but we the game.
- I know Gary, but I've never his wife.
- We were by loud music in the middle of the night.
- Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side.
- 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.'
- Many different languages are in the Philippines.
- Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
- Have you ever a very fast car?
- All the tickets for the concert were very quickly.
- A bird in through the open window while we were having our dinner.

What are you doing tomorrow?

A

They **are playing** tennis (**now**).

today is Sunday

He **is playing** tennis **tomorrow**.We use **am/is/are + -ing** (*present continuous*) for something happening now:

- ☐ 'Where are Tina and Helen?' 'They're **playing** tennis in the park.'
- ☐ Please be quiet. **I'm working**.

We also use **am/is/are + -ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- ☐ Andrew **is playing** tennis tomorrow.
- ☐ I'm **not working** next week.

B

I **am doing something tomorrow** = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:

- ☐ Sophie **is going** to the dentist on Friday.
(= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- ☐ We're **having** a party next weekend.
- ☐ **Are** you **meeting** your friends tonight?
- ☐ What **are** you **doing** tomorrow evening?
- ☐ I'm **not going** out tonight. I'm **staying** at home.

You can also say 'I'm **going to** do something' (→ Unit 26).

C

We use the present continuous (**I'm staying** / **are you coming** etc.) to say what somebody has arranged to do:

- ☐ I'm **staying** at home this evening. (*not I stay*)
- ☐ **Are** you **going** out tonight? (*not Do you go*)
- ☐ Lisa **isn't coming** to the party next week. (*not Lisa doesn't come*)

But we use the present simple (**start**, **arrives** etc.) for timetables, programmes, trains, buses etc.:

- ☐ The train **arrives** at 7.30.
- ☐ What time **does** the film **finish**?

Compare:

present continuous (usually for people)

- ☐ I'm **going** to a concert tomorrow.
- ☐ What time **are** you **leaving**?

present simple (for timetables, programmes etc.)

- ☐ The concert **starts** at 7.30.
- ☐ What time **does** your train **leave**?

25.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?



- 1 Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.
- 2 Richard to the cinema.
- 3 Rachel
- 4 lunch with Will.
- 5

25.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

- 1 (you / go / out / tonight?) Are you going out tonight?
- 2 (you / work / next week?)
- 3 (what / you / do / tomorrow evening?)
- 4 (what time / your friends / come?)
- 5 (when / Lisa / go / on holiday?)

25.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

- 1 I'm staying at home tonight.
- 2 I'm going to the theatre on Monday.
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

25.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (**he is leaving** etc.) or present simple (**the train leaves** etc.).

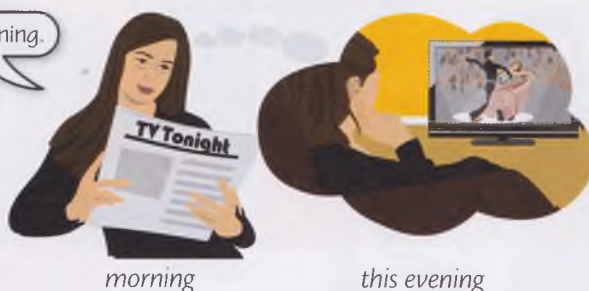
- 1 ' Are you going (you/go) out tonight?' 'No, I'm too tired.'
- 2 We're going (we/go) to a concert tonight. It starts (it/start) at 7.30.
- 3 Do you know about Sarah? (she/get) married next month!
- 4 A: My parents (go) on holiday next week.
B: Oh, that's nice. Where (they/go)?
- 5 Silvia is doing an English course at the moment. The course (finish) on Friday.
- 6 There's a party tomorrow night, but (I/not/go).
- 7 (I/go) out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come too? (we/meet) at the Royal Hotel at 8 o'clock.
- 8 A: How (you/get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi?
B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus (leave) at midnight.
- 9 A: (you/come) with us to the cinema tonight?
B: Yes, what time (the film / begin)?
- 10 A: What (you/do) tomorrow afternoon?
B: (I/work).

I'm going to ...

A

I'm going to do something

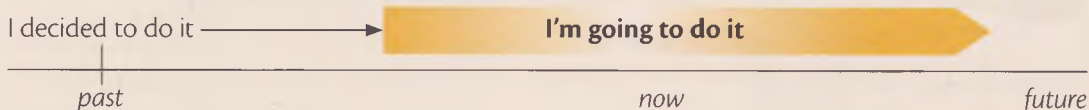
I'm going to watch TV this evening.

She **is going to watch** TV this evening.We use **am/is/are going to ...** for the future:

I	am		do ...
he/she/it	is	(not) going to	drink ...
we/you/they	are		watch ...

am	I		buy ... ?
is	he/she/it	going to	eat ... ?
are	we/you/they		wear ... ?

B

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:

- ☐ I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- ☐ Sarah **is going to sell** her car.
- ☐ I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- ☐ What **are** you **going to wear** to the wedding next week?
- ☐ 'Your hands are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them.'
- ☐ **Are** you **going to invite** Mark to your party?

We also use the present continuous (**I am doing**) for the future, usually for arrangements (→ Unit 25):

- ☐ I **am playing** tennis with Julia tomorrow.

C

Something **is going to happen**Something **is going to happen** = we can see *now* that it is sure to happen:

- ☐ Look at the sky! It's going to rain.
(black clouds *now* → rain)
- ☐ Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.
I'm going to be late.
(9 o'clock *now* and not ready → late)



26.1 What are these people saying?

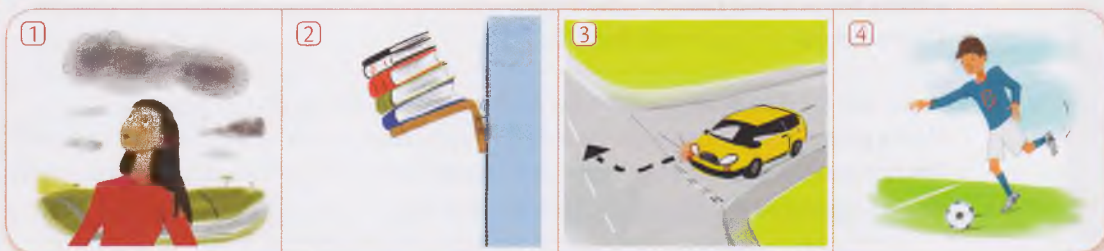


26.2 Complete the sentences. Use **going to** + these verbs:

do eat give lie down stay walk ~~wash~~ watch ~~wear~~

- My hands are dirty. I'm going to wash them.
- What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
- It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I
- Steve is going to London next week. He with some friends.
- I'm hungry. I this sandwich.
- It's Sarah's birthday next week. We her a present.
- Sue says she's feeling very tired. She for an hour.
- Your favourite programme is on TV tonight. you it?
- What Rachel when she leaves school?

26.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?



26.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

- I'm
-
-

A



SARAH

Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8.30 until 4.30.

It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah **is** at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she **was** at work.

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she **will be** at work.

will + infinitive (will be / will win / will come etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	will ('ll) will not (won't)	be win eat come etc.
----------------------------	--	---

will	I/we/you/they he/she/it	be? win? eat? come? etc.
-------------	----------------------------	---

'll = will: I'll (I will) / you'll / she'll etc.

won't = will not: I **won't** (= I will not) / you **won't** / she **won't** etc.

B

We use **will** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- ☐ Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she'll **be** in Rome. Next week she'll **be** in Tokyo.
- ☐ You can call me this evening. I'll **be** at home.
- ☐ Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds **will eat** it.
- ☐ We'll probably **go** out this evening.
- ☐ **Will** you **be** at home this evening?
- ☐ I **won't be** here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- ☐ Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You **won't sleep**.

We often say **I think ... will ...**:

- ☐ **I think** Kelly **will pass** the exam.
- ☐ **I don't think** it **will rain** this afternoon.
- ☐ **Do you think** the exam **will be** difficult?

C

We do *not* use **will** for things we have already arranged or decided to do (→ Units 25–26):

- ☐ We're **going** to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? (*not* We will go)
- ☐ I'm **not working** tomorrow. (*not* I won't work)
- ☐ **Are you going to do** the exam? (*not* Will you do)

D

shall

You can say **I shall** (= I will) and **we shall** (= we will):

- ☐ I **shall be** late tomorrow. or I **will (I'll) be** late tomorrow.
- ☐ I think **we shall win**. or I think **we will (we'll) win**.

But *do not* use **shall** with **you/they/he/she/it**:

- ☐ **Tom will** be late. (*not* Tom shall be)

27.1 Helen is travelling in Europe. Complete the sentences with **she was, she's** or **she'll be**.

- 1 Yesterday she was in Paris.
- 2 Tomorrow in Amsterdam.
- 3 Last week in Barcelona.
- 4 Next week in London.
- 5 At the moment in Brussels.
- 6 Three days ago in Munich.
- 7 At the end of her trip very tired.



Helen

27.2 Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use:

I'll be ... or I'll probably be ... or I don't know where I'll be.

- 1 (at 10 o'clock tomorrow) I'll probably be on the beach.
- 2 (one hour from now)
- 3 (at midnight tonight)
- 4 (at 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon)
- 5 (two years from now)

27.3 Put in **will ('ll)** or **won't**.

- 1 Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.
- 2 'Are you ready yet?' 'Not yet. I be ready in five minutes.'
- 3 I'm going away for a few days. I'm leaving tonight, so I be at home tomorrow.
- 4 It rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
- 5 A: I don't feel very well this evening.
B: Well, go to bed early and you feel better in the morning.
- 6 It's Ben's birthday next Monday. He be 25.
- 7 I'm sorry I was late this morning. It happen again.

27.4 Write sentences with **I think ...** or **I don't think ...**.

- 1 (Kelly will pass the exam) I think Kelly will pass the exam.
- 2 (Kelly won't pass the exam) I don't think Kelly will pass the exam.
- 3 (we'll win the game) I
- 4 (I won't be here tomorrow)
- 5 (Sue will like her present)
- 6 (they won't get married)
- 7 (you won't enjoy the film)

27.5 Which is right? (Study Unit 25 before you do this exercise.)

- 1 ~~We'll go~~ / We're going to the theatre tonight. We've got tickets. (We're going is right)
- 2 'What will you do / are you doing tomorrow evening?' 'Nothing. I'm free.'
- 3 They'll go / They're going away tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8.40.
- 4 I'm sure your aunt will lend / is lending us some money. She's very rich.
- 5 'Why are you putting on your coat?' 'I'll go / I'm going out.'
- 6 Do you think Clare will phone / is phoning us tonight?
- 7 Steve can't meet us on Saturday. He'll work / He's working.
- 8 Will you / Shall you be at home tomorrow evening?
- 9 A: What are your plans for the weekend?
B: Some friends will come / are coming to stay with us.

A



You can use **I'll ... (I will)** when you offer something or decide to do something:

- ☐ 'My bag is very heavy.' **'I'll carry it for you.'**
- ☐ **'I'll phone** you tomorrow, OK?' 'OK, bye.'

We often say **I think I'll ... / I don't think I'll ...** when we decide to do something:

- ☐ I'm tired. **I think I'll go** to bed early tonight.
- ☐ It's a nice day. **I think I'll sit** outside.
- ☐ It's raining. **I don't think I'll go** out.

Do *not* use the present simple (**I go / I phone** etc.) in sentences like these:

- ☐ **I'll phone** you tomorrow, OK? (*not I phone you*)
- ☐ I think **I'll go** to bed early. (*not I go to bed*)

B

Do *not* use **I'll ...** for something you decided before (→ Units 25–26):

- ☐ I'm **working** tomorrow. (*not I'll work*)
- ☐ I don't want my car any more. **I'm going to sell** it. (*not I'll sell*)
- ☐ What **are you doing** at the weekend? (*not What will you do*)

C

Shall I ... ? Shall we ... ?



Shall I / Shall we ... ? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- ☐ It's very warm in this room. **Shall I open** the window?
- ☐ **'Shall I phone** you this evening?' 'Yes, please.'
- ☐ I'm going to a party tonight. What **shall I wear**?
- ☐ It's a nice day. **Shall we go** for a walk?
- ☐ Where **shall we go** for our holidays this year?
- ☐ 'Let's go out this evening.' 'OK, what time **shall we meet**?'

Exercises

28.1 Complete the sentences. Use **I'll (I will)** + these verbs:

~~carry~~ do eat show sit stay

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 | My bag is very heavy. | I'll <u>carry</u> it for you. |
| 2 | I don't want this banana. | Well, I'm hungry. it. |
| 3 | Do you want a chair? | No, it's OK. on the floor. |
| 4 | Did you phone Sophie? | Oh no, I forgot. it now. |
| 5 | Are you coming with me? | No, I don't think so. here. |
| 6 | How do you use this camera? | Give it to me and you. |

28.2 Complete the sentences. Use **I think I'll ...** or **I don't think I'll ...** + these verbs:

buy buy ~~go~~ have play

- It's cold today. I don't think I'll go out.
- I'm hungry. I something to eat.
- I feel very tired. tennis.
- I like this hat. it.
- This camera is too expensive. it.

28.3 Which is right?

- ~~I phone~~ / I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? (I'll phone is right)
- I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
- I like sport. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sport on TV.
- I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.
- Carl is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
- 'This book belongs to Tina.' 'OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her.'
- A: Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?
B: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.
- I can't go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I'm working / I'll work.

28.4 Write sentences with **Shall I ... ?** Choose from the two boxes.

make turn off
~~open~~ turn on

some sandwiches the TV
the light ~~the window~~

- It's very warm in this room.
- This programme isn't very good.
- I'm hungry.
- It's dark in this room.

Shall I open the window?

28.5 Write sentences with **Shall we ... ?** Choose from the two boxes.

what where
~~what time~~ who

buy invite
go ~~meet~~

- Let's go out tonight.
- Let's have a holiday.
- Let's spend some money.
- Let's have a party.

OK, what time shall we meet?
OK,
OK,
OK,

A



He **might go** to New York.
(= it is possible that he will go to New York)



It **might rain**.
(= it is possible that it will rain)

might + infinitive (**might go** / **might be** / **might rain** etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	might (not)	be go play come etc.
----------------------------	--------------------	---

B

I might = it is possible that I will:

- ☐ I **might go** to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure. (= it is possible that I will go)
- ☐ A: When is Rebecca going to phone you?
B: I don't know. She **might phone** this afternoon.
- ☐ Take an umbrella with you. It **might rain**.
- ☐ Buy a lottery ticket. You **might be** lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
- ☐ A: Are you going out tonight?
B: **I might**. (= I might go out)

Study the difference:

- ☐ I'm **playing** tennis tomorrow. (*sure*)
I **might play** tennis tomorrow. (*possible*)
- ☐ Rebecca **is going to phone** later. (*sure*)
Rebecca **might phone** later. (*possible*)

C

I might not = it is possible that I will not:

- ☐ I **might not go** to work tomorrow.
(= it is possible that I will not go)
- ☐ Sue **might not come** to the party.
(= it is possible that she will not come)

D

may

You can use **may** in the same way. **I may = I might**:

- ☐ I **may go** to the cinema this evening. (= I might go)
- ☐ Sue **may not come** to the party. (= Sue might not come)

May I ... ? = Is it OK to ... ? / Can I ... ?:

- ☐ **May I** ask a question? (= is it OK to ask / can I ask?)
- ☐ '**May I** sit here?' 'Yes, of course.'

29.1 Write sentences with **might**.

- 1 (it's possible that I'll go to the cinema)
- 2 (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow)
- 3 (it's possible that Sarah will forget to phone)
- 4 (it's possible that it will snow today)
- 5 (it's possible that I'll be late tonight)

I might go to the cinema.

Write sentences with **might not**.

- 6 (it's possible that Mark will not be here next week)
- 7 (it's possible that I won't have time to go out)

29.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with **I might**.

fish go away ~~Italy~~ Monday a new car taxi

- 1 Where are you going for your holidays?
- 2 What are you doing at the weekend?
- 3 When will you see Kate again?
- 4 What are you going to have for dinner?
- 5 How are you going to get home tonight?
- 6 I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it?

I'm not sure. I might go to Italy.

I don't know. I

I'm not sure.

I don't know.

I'm not sure.

I haven't decided yet.

29.3 You ask Ben questions about his plans for tomorrow. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

- 1 Are you playing tennis tomorrow?
- 2 Are you going out tomorrow evening?
- 3 Are you going to get up early?
- 4 Are you working tomorrow?
- 5 Will you be at home tomorrow morning?
- 6 Are you going to watch TV?
- 7 Are you going out in the afternoon?
- 8 Are you going shopping?

*Yes, in the afternoon.
Possibly.
Perhaps.
No, I'm not.
Maybe.
I might.
Yes, I am.
Perhaps.*



Ben

Now write about Ben. Use **might** where necessary.

1 He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.

2 He might go out tomorrow evening.

3 He

4

5

6

7

8

29.4 Write three things that you **might** do tomorrow.

1

2

3

A



He **can play** the piano.



can + infinitive (can do / can play / can come etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	can can't (cannot)	do play see come etc.
----------------------------	-------------------------------------	--

can	I/we/you/they he/she/it	do? play? see? come? etc.
------------	----------------------------	--

B

I can do something = I know how to do it, or it is possible for me to do it:

- ☐ I **can play** the piano. My brother **can play** the piano too.
- ☐ Sarah **can speak** Italian, but she **can't speak** Spanish.
- ☐ A: **Can you swim?**
B: Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.
- ☐ A: **Can you change** twenty pounds?
B: I'm sorry, I **can't**.
- ☐ I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel **can't come**.

C

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use **could/couldn't**:

- ☐ When I was young, I **could run** very fast.
- ☐ Before Maria came to Britain, she **couldn't understand** much English. Now she **can understand** everything.
- ☐ I was tired last night, but I **couldn't sleep**.
- ☐ I had a party last week, but Paul and Rachel **couldn't come**.

D

Can you ... ? Could you ... ? Can I ... ? Could I ... ?

We use **Can you ... ?** or **Could you ... ?** when we ask people to do things:

- ☐ **Can you** open the door, please? or **Could you** open the door, please?
- ☐ **Can you** wait a moment, please? or **Could you** wait ... ?

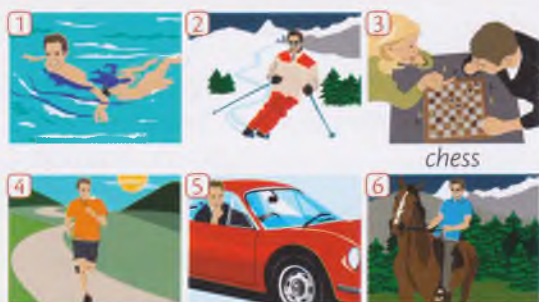
We use **Can I have ... ?** or **Can I get ... ?** to ask for something:

- ☐ **Can I have** a glass of water, please? or **Can I get** ... ?

Can I ... ? or **Could I ... ?** = is it OK to do something?:

- ☐ **Can I** sit here?
- ☐ Tom, **could I** borrow your umbrella?

30.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:



10 kilometres

You



Steve

1 Can you swim?

2
3
4
5
6

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use **I can** or **I can't**.

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 7 I | 10 |
| 8 | 11 |
| 9 | 12 |

30.2 Complete these sentences. Use **can** or **can't** + one of these verbs:

~~come~~ find hear see speak

- I'm sorry, but we **can't come** to your party next Saturday.
- I like this hotel room. You the mountains from the window.
- You are speaking very quietly. I you.
- Have you seen my bag? I it.
- Catherine got the job because she five languages.

30.3 Complete these sentences. Use **can't** or **couldn't** + one of these verbs:

decide eat find go go sleep

- I was tired, but I **couldn't sleep**
- I wasn't hungry yesterday. I my dinner.
- Kate doesn't know what to do. She
- I wanted to speak to Mark yesterday, but I him.
- James to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
- Paula to the meeting last week. She was ill.

30.4 What do you say in these situations? Use **can** or **could**.

① (open/door) Could you open the door, please?	② (pass/salt) 	③ (have/postcards)
④ (turn off /radio) 	⑤ (borrow/newspaper) 	⑥ (use/pen)

A

**must + infinitive (must do / must work etc.):**

I/we/you/they he/she/it	must	do go see eat etc.
----------------------------	-------------	---

B

I must (do something) = I need to do it:

- ☐ I'm very hungry. I **must eat** something.
- ☐ It's a fantastic film. You **must see** it.
- ☐ The windows are very dirty. We **must clean** them.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use **had to** ... (not must):

- ☐ I was very hungry. I **had to eat** something. (not I must eat)
- ☐ We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses. (not We must walk)

C

mustn't (= must not)**I mustn't** (do something) = it is necessary *not* to do it, it is the wrong thing to do:

- ☐ I **must go**. I **mustn't be** late.
- ☐ I **mustn't forget** to phone Chris.
(= I **must remember** to phone her)
- ☐ Be happy! You **mustn't be** sad. (= don't be sad)
- ☐ You **mustn't touch** the pictures.
(= don't touch the pictures)



D

don't need to**I don't need** (to do something) = it is not necessary:

- ☐ I **don't need to go** yet. I can stay a little longer.
- ☐ You **don't need to shout**. I can hear you OK.

You can also say **don't have to** ... :

- ☐ I **don't have to go** yet. I can stay a little longer.

Compare **don't need to** and **mustn't**:

- ☐ You **don't need to go**. You can stay here if you want.
- ☐ You **mustn't go**. You must stay here.

31.1 Complete the sentences. Use **must** + these verbs:

be ~~eat~~ go learn meet wash win

- I'm very hungry. I must eat something.
- Marilyn is a very interesting person. You her.
- My hands are dirty. I them.
- You to drive. It will be very useful.
- I shopping. I need to buy some food.
- The game tomorrow is very important for us. We
- You can't always have things immediately. You patient.

31.2 Write **I must** or **I had to**.

- I had to walk home last night. There were no buses.
- It's late. go now.
- I don't usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday work.
- get up early tomorrow. I have a lot to do.
- I came here by train. The train was full and stand all the way.
- I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. run to get there on time.
- I forgot to phone David yesterday. phone him later today.

31.3 Complete the sentences. Use **mustn't** or **don't need to** + these verbs:

forget ~~go~~ lose phone rush wait

- I don't need to go home yet. I can stay a little longer.
- We have a lot of time. We
- Keep these papers in a safe place. You them.
- I'm not ready yet, but you for me. You can go now and I'll come later.
- We to turn off the lights before we leave.
- I must contact David, but I him – I can send him an email.

31.4 Find the sentences with the same meaning.

- We can leave the meeting early.
- We must leave the meeting early.
- We mustn't leave the meeting early.
- We had to leave the meeting early.
- We don't need to leave the meeting early.

- We must stay until the end.
- We couldn't stay until the end.
- We can't stay until the end.
- We can stay until the end.
- We don't need to stay until the end.

- E
-
-
-
-

31.5 Write **must** / **mustn't** / **had to** / **don't need to**.

- You don't need to go. You can stay here if you want.
- It's a fantastic film. You must see it.
- The restaurant won't be busy tonight. We reserve a table.
- I was very busy last week. I work every evening.
- I want to know what happened. You tell me.
- I don't want Sue to know what happened. You tell her.
- I go now or I'll be late for my appointment.
- 'Why were you so late?' 'I wait half an hour for a bus.'
- We decide now. We can decide later.
- It's Lisa's birthday next week. I forget to buy her a present.

A

**should + infinitive**

(should do / should watch etc.):

I/we/you/they
he/she/it**should
shouldn't****do
stop
go
watch** etc.

B

You **should** do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do:

- ☐ Tom doesn't study enough. He **should study** harder.
- ☐ It's a good film. You **should go** and see it.
- ☐ When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.

C

You **shouldn't** do something = it is not a good thing to do.**Shouldn't** = should not:

- ☐ Tom **shouldn't go** to bed so late.
- ☐ You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn't watch** TV so much.

D

We often say **I think ... should ...****I think ... should ... :**

- ☐ **I think** Lisa **should buy** some new clothes.
(= I think it is a good idea.)
- ☐ It's late. **I think I should go** home now.
- ☐ A: Shall I buy this coat?
B: Yes, **I think you should**.

I don't think ... should ... :

- ☐ **I don't think** you **should work** so hard.
(= I don't think it is a good idea.)
- ☐ **I don't think** we **should go** yet. It's too early.

Do you think ... should ... ?:

- ☐ **Do you think** I **should buy** this hat?
- ☐ What time **do you think** we **should go** home?

Do you think I should buy this hat?



E

Must is stronger than **should**:

- ☐ It's a **good** film. You **should** go and see it.
- ☐ It's a **fantastic** film. You **must** go and see it.

F

Another way to say **should** is **ought to**:

- ☐ It's a good film. You **ought to go** and see it. (= you should go)
- ☐ I think Lisa **ought to buy** some new clothes. (= Lisa should buy)

32.1 Complete the sentences. Use **you should** + these verbs:

eat go take visit ~~watch~~ wear

- When you play tennis, you should watch the ball.
- It's late and you're very tired. _____ to bed.
- _____ plenty of fruit and vegetables.
- If you have time, _____ the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
- When you're driving, _____ a seat belt.
- It's too far to walk from here to the station. _____ a taxi.

32.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use **He/She shouldn't ... so ...**



- She shouldn't watch TV so much.
- He _____
- _____ hard.
- _____

32.3 You are not sure what to do, so you ask a friend. Write questions with **Do you think I should ... ?**

- You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)
You ask your friend: Do you think I should buy this jacket?
- You can't drive. (learn?)
You ask your friend: Do you think _____
- You don't like your job. (get another job?)
You ask your friend: _____
- You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)
You ask your friend: _____

32.4 Write sentences with **I think ... should ...** and **I don't think ... should ...**

- We have to get up early tomorrow. (go home now) I think we should go home now.
- That coat is too big for you. (buy it) I don't think you should buy it.
- You don't need your car. (sell it) _____
- Karen needs a rest. (have a holiday) _____
- Sarah and Dan are too young. (get married) _____
- You're not well this morning. (go to work) _____
- James isn't well today. (go to the doctor) _____
- The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there) _____

32.5 What do **you** think? Write sentences with **should**.

- I think everybody should learn another language.
- I think everybody _____
- I think _____
- I don't think _____
- I think I should _____

I have to ...

A

This is my medicine. I have to take it three times a day.



I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

I/we/you/they	have	to do
		to work
he/she/it	has	to go
		to wear etc.

- ☐ I'll be late for work tomorrow. I **have to go** to the dentist.
- ☐ Jane starts work at 7 o'clock, so she **has to get** up at 6.
- ☐ You **have to pass** a test before you can get a driving licence.

B

The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is **had to** ... :

- ☐ I was late for work yesterday. I **had to go** to the dentist.
- ☐ We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses.

C

In questions and negatives we use **do/does** (present) and **did** (past):

present

do	I/we/you/they	have to ... ?	I/we/you/they	don't	have to ...
does	he/she/it		he/she/it	doesn't	

past

did	I/we/you/they	have to ... ?	I/we/you/they	didn't have to ...
	he/she/it		he/she/it	

- ☐ What time **do** you **have to go** to the dentist tomorrow?
- ☐ **Does** Jane **have to work** on Sundays?
- ☐ Why **did** they **have to leave** the party early?

I **don't have to** (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

- ☐ I'm not working tomorrow, so I **don't have to get** up early.
- ☐ Ian **doesn't have to work** very hard. He's got an easy job.
- ☐ We **didn't have to wait** very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.

D

must and **have to**

You can use **must** or **have to** when you say what *you* think is necessary, when you give *your* opinion:

- ☐ It's a fantastic film. You **must** see it. or You **have to** see it.

When you are *not* giving your personal opinion, use **have to** (*not must*). Compare:

- ☐ Jane won't be at work this afternoon. She **has to go** to the doctor.
(this is not my personal opinion – it is a fact)
- ☐ Jane isn't well. She doesn't want to go to the doctor, but I told her she **must go**.
(this is my personal opinion)

33.1 Complete the sentences. Use **have to** or **has to** + these verbs:

do hit read speak travel -wear

- 1 My eyes are not very good. I have to wear glasses.
- 2 At the end of the course all the students a test.
- 3 Sarah is studying literature. She a lot of books.
- 4 Albert doesn't understand much English. You very slowly to him.
- 5 Kate is often away from home. She a lot in her job.
- 6 In tennis you the ball over the net.

33.2 Complete the sentences. Use **have to** or **had to** + these verbs:

answer buy change go -walk

- 1 We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.
- 2 It's late. I now. I'll see you tomorrow.
- 3 I went to the supermarket after work yesterday. I some food.
- 4 This train doesn't go all the way to London. You at Bristol.
- 5 We did an exam yesterday. We six questions out of ten.

33.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 I have to get up early tomorrow. | What time <u>do you have to get up</u> ? |
| 2 George had to wait a long time. | How long ? |
| 3 Lisa has to go somewhere. | Where ? |
| 4 We had to pay a lot of money. | How much ? |
| 5 I have to do some work. | What exactly ? |

33.4 Write sentences with **don't/doesn't/didn't have to** ...

- 1 Why are you going out? You don't have to go out.
- 2 Why is Sue waiting? She
- 3 Why did you get up early? You
- 4 Why is Paul working so hard? He
- 5 Why do you want to leave now? We

33.5 Which is correct? Sometimes **must** and **have to** are both correct. Sometimes only one is correct.

- 1 It's a fantastic film. You must see / have to see it. (both are correct)
- 2 Jessica won't be at work this afternoon. She must go / has to go to the doctor.
(has to go is correct)
- 3 You can't park your car here for nothing. You must pay / have to pay.
- 4 I didn't have any money with me last night, so I must borrow / had to borrow some.
- 5 I eat too much chocolate. I really must stop / have to stop.
- 6 Paul is in a hurry. He must meet / has to meet somebody in five minutes.
- 7 What's wrong? You must tell / have to tell me. I want to help you.

33.6 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.

- 1 (every day) I have to travel ten miles every day.
- 2 (every day)
- 3 (yesterday)
- 4 (tomorrow)

Would you like ... ? I'd like ...

A Would you like ... ? = Do you want ... ?

We use **Would you like ... ?** to offer things:

- ☐ A: **Would you like** some coffee?
B: No, thank you.
- ☐ A: **Would you like** a chocolate?
B: Yes, please.
- ☐ A: What **would you like**, tea or coffee?
B: Tea, please.



We use **Would you like to ... ?** to invite somebody:

- ☐ **Would you like to go** for a walk?
- ☐ A: **Would you like to eat** with us on Sunday?
B: Yes, **I'd love to**. (= I would love to eat with you)
- ☐ What **would you like to do** this evening?

B I'd like ... is a polite way to say 'I want'. I'd like = I would like:

- ☐ I'm thirsty. **I'd like** a drink.
- ☐ (in a tourist office) **I'd like** some information about hotels, please.
- ☐ I'm feeling tired. **I'd like to stay** at home this evening.

C Would you like ... ? and Do you like ... ?

Would you like ... ? / I'd like ...



Would you like some tea? = Do you want some tea?

- ☐ A: **Would you like** to go to the cinema tonight?
(= do you want to go tonight?)
B: Yes, I'd love to.
- ☐ **I'd like** an orange, please.
(= can I have an orange?)
- ☐ What **would you like** to do next weekend?

Do you like ... ? / I like ...



Do you like tea? = Do you think tea is nice?

- ☐ A: **Do you like** going to the cinema?
(in general)
B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.
- ☐ **I like** oranges. (in general)
- ☐ What **do you like** to do at weekends?

34.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use **Would you like ... ?**



34.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use **Would you like to ... ?**

- You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)
You say: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?
- You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play too. (play)
You say: _____
- You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will come. (come)
You say: _____
- It's raining and Sue is going out. She doesn't have an umbrella, but you have one. (borrow)
You say: _____

34.3 Which is right?

- 'Do you like / Would you like a chocolate?' 'Yes, please.' (Would you like is right)
- 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'
- 'Do you like / Would you like an ice cream?' 'No, thank you.'
- 'What do you like / would you like to drink?' 'A glass of water, please.'
- 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. Perhaps later.'
- I like / I'd like tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
- What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?
- 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'
- 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?' 'Yes, I'm enjoying it.'
- I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.
- 'I like / I'd like a sandwich, please.' 'Sure. What kind of sandwich?'
- 'What kind of music do you like / would you like?' 'All kinds.'

A



We use **come/look/go/wait/be** etc. when we tell somebody to do something:

- ☐ 'Come here and look at this!' 'What is it?'
- ☐ I don't want to talk to you. Go away!
- ☐ I'm not ready yet. Please wait for me.
- ☐ Please be quiet. I'm working.

also

- ☐ Bye! Have a good holiday! / Have a nice time! / Have a good flight! / Have fun!
(= I hope you have a good holiday etc.)
- ☐ 'Have a chocolate.' 'Oh, thanks.'
(= would you like a chocolate?)

B

We use **don't** ... when we tell somebody not to do something:

- ☐ Be careful! Don't fall.
- ☐ Please don't go. Stay here with me.
- ☐ Be here on time. Don't be late.

C

You can say **Let's** ... when you want people to do things with you. **Let's** = Let us.

- ☐ It's a nice day. Let's go out.
(= you and I can go out)
- ☐ Come on! Let's dance.
(= you and I can dance)
- ☐ Are you ready? Let's go.
- ☐ Let's have fish for dinner tonight.
- ☐ A: Shall we go out tonight?
B: No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home.

The negative is **Let's not** ... :

- ☐ It's cold. Let's not go out. Let's stay at home.
- ☐ Let's not have fish for dinner tonight. Let's have chicken.



35.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Some sentences are positive (**buy/come** etc.) and some are negative (**don't buy / don't come** etc.). Use these verbs:

be buy ~~come~~ ~~drink~~ drop forget have sit sleep smile

1

Come in!

2

Don't drink the water!

3

It's too expensive. it.

4

OK, are you ready? !

5

..... on the cat!

6

Bye! a nice time!

7

..... to phone me.

Don't worry. I won't.

8

I'm going to bed now.

OK. well.

9

..... careful with that vase. it!

35.2 Complete the sentences. Use **let's** with:

~~go for a swim~~ go to a restaurant take a taxi wait a little watch TV

1

Would you like to play tennis?

No, let's go for a swim

2

Do you want to walk home?

No,

3

Shall I put a CD on?

No,

4

Shall we eat at home?

No,

5

Would you like to go now?

No,

35.3 Answer with **No, don't ...** or **No, let's not ...**

1

Shall I wait for you?

No, don't wait for me.

2

Shall we go home now?

No, let's not go home yet.

3

Shall we go out?

.....

4

Do you want me to close the window?

.....

5

Shall I phone you tonight?

.....

6

Do you think we should wait for Andy?

.....

7

Do you want me to turn on the light?

.....

8

Shall we go by bus?

.....

I used to ...

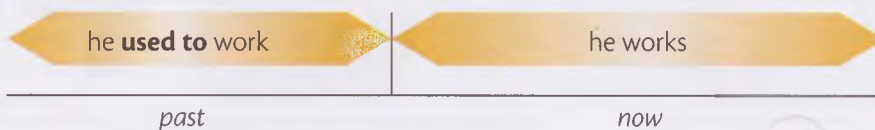
A

DAVE a few years ago

DAVE today



Dave **used to work** in a factory. Now he **works** in a supermarket.



Dave **used to work** in a factory = he worked in a factory before, but he doesn't work there now.

B

You can say **I used to work ... / she used to have ... / they used to be ...** etc.:

I/you/we/they he/she/it	used to	be work have play etc.
----------------------------	---------	---------------------------------

- ☐ When I was a child, I **used to like** chocolate.
- ☐ I **used to read** a lot of books, but I don't read much these days.
- ☐ Lisa has got short hair now, but it **used to be** very long.
- ☐ They **used to live** in the same street as us, so we **used to see** them a lot. But we don't see them much these days.
- ☐ Helen **used to have** a piano, but she sold it a few years ago.

The negative is **I didn't use to ...**:

- ☐ When I was a child, I **didn't use to like** tomatoes.

The question is **did you use to ... ?**:

- ☐ Where **did you use to live** before you came here?



C

We use **used to ...** only for the past. You cannot say 'I use to ...' for the present:

- ☐ I **used to play** tennis. These days I **play** golf. (*not* I use to play golf)
- ☐ We usually **get** up early. (*not* We use to get up early)

36.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **used to ...**.



She used to have
long hair.



He
football.



.....
a taxi driver.



.....
in the country.



.....
.....



This building
.....

36.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

Karen a few years ago



Do you do any sport?

→ Yes, I swim every day and
I play volleyball.

Do you go out much?

→ Yes, most evenings.

Do you play a musical
instrument?

→ Yes, the guitar.

Do you like reading?

→ Yes, I read a lot.

Do you travel much?

→ Yes, I go away two or three
times a year.

Karen now



I work very hard in
my job. I don't have
any free time.

Write sentences about Karen with **used to ...**.

- 1 She used to swim every day. 4
- 2 She 5
- 3 6

36.3 Complete these sentences. Use **used to** or the present simple (**I play / he lives** etc.).

- 1 I used to play tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
- 2 'Do you do any sport?' 'Yes, I play basketball.'
- 3 'Do you have a car?' 'No, I one, but I sold it.'
- 4 George a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel.
- 5 'Do you go to work by car?' 'Sometimes, but most days I by train.'
- 6 When I was a child, I never meat, but I eat it now.
- 7 Mary loves watching TV. She TV every evening.
- 8 We near the airport, but we moved to the city centre a few years ago.
- 9 Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I up very early.
- 10 What games you when you were a child?

there is there are

A



There's a man on the roof.



There's a train at 10.30.

**SUNDAY
MONDAY
TUESDAY
WEDNESDAY
THURSDAY
FRIDAY
SATURDAY**

} 7

There are seven days in a week.

singular

there is ... (there's)
is there ... ?
there is not ... (there isn't or there's not)

- ☐ **There's** a big tree in the garden.
- ☐ **There's** nothing on TV tonight.
- ☐ A: Do you have any money?
B: Yes, **there's** some in my bag.
- ☐ A: Excuse me, **is there** a hotel near here?
B: Yes, **there is**. / No, **there isn't**.
- ☐ We can't go skiing. **There isn't** any snow.

plural

there are ...
are there ... ?
there are not ... (there aren't)

- ☐ **There are** some big trees in the garden.
- ☐ **There are** a lot of accidents on this road.
- ☐ A: **Are there** any restaurants near here?
B: Yes, **there are**. / No, **there aren't**.
- ☐ This restaurant is very quiet. **There aren't** many people here.
- ☐ How many players **are there** in a football team?
- ☐ **There are** 11 players in a football team.

B

there is and it is

there is



There's a book on the table.
 (not It's a book on the table.)

it is



I like **this book**. **It's** interesting.
 (It = this book)

Compare:

- ☐ 'What's **that noise**?' 'It's a train.' (It = that noise)
There's a train at 10.30. **It's** a fast train. (It = the 10.30 train)
- ☐ **There's** a lot of salt in this soup.
 I don't like **this soup**. **It's** too salty. (It = this soup)

- 37.1** Kentham is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Kentham with **There is/are** or **There isn't/aren't**.

1 a castle?	No
2 any restaurants?	Yes (a lot)
3 a hospital?	Yes
4 a swimming pool?	No
5 any cinemas?	Yes (two)
6 a university?	No
7 any big hotels?	No

- 1 There isn't a castle.
- 2 There are a lot of restaurants.
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7

- 37.2** Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use **There is/are** or **There isn't/aren't**.

- 1 There are a few restaurants.
- 2 There's a big park.
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

- 37.3** Write **there is / there isn't / is there** or **there are / there aren't / are there**.

- 1 Kentham isn't an old town. There aren't any old buildings.
- 2 Look! a picture of your brother in the newspaper!
- 3 'Excuse me, a bank near here?' 'Yes, at the end of the street.'
- 4 five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
- 5 'How many students in the class?' 'Twenty.'
- 6 The road is usually very quiet. much traffic.
- 7 '..... a bus from the city centre to the airport?' 'Yes, every 20 minutes.'
- 8 '..... any problems?' 'No, everything is OK.'
- 9 nowhere to sit down. any chairs.

- 37.4** Write sentences with **There are ...**. Choose from the boxes.

~~seven~~ twenty-six
eight thirty
fifteen fifty

letters ~~days~~
players days
planets states

September the solar system
the USA ~~a week~~
a rugby team the English alphabet

- 1 There are seven days in a week.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

- 37.5** Write **there's / is there** or **it's / is it**.

- 1 ' There's a train at 10.30.' ' Is it a fast train?'
- 2 I'm not going to buy this shirt. too expensive.
- 3 'What's wrong?' '..... something in my eye.'
- 4 a red car outside your house. yours?
- 5 '..... anything good on TV tonight?' 'Yes, a programme I want to see at 8.15.'
- 6 'What's that building?' '..... a school.'
- 7 '..... a restaurant in this hotel?' 'No, I'm afraid not.'

there was/were there has/have been
there will be

A

there was / there were (past)

**There is** a train every hour.

The time now is 11.15.

There was a train at 11 o'clock.

Compare:

there is/are (present)

- ☐ **There is** nothing on TV tonight.
- ☐ We are staying at a very big hotel.
There are 550 rooms.
- ☐ Is everything OK? **Are there** any problems?
- ☐ I'm hungry, but **there isn't** anything to eat.

there was/were (past)

- ☐ **There was** nothing on TV last night.
- ☐ We stayed at a very big hotel.
There were 550 rooms.
- ☐ Was everything OK yesterday? **Were there** any problems?
- ☐ I was hungry when I got home, but **there wasn't** anything to eat.

B

there has been / there have been (present perfect)



- ☐ Look! **There's been** an accident.
(**there's been** = there **has** been)
- ☐ This road is very dangerous. **There have been** many accidents.

Compare **there was** (past):

- ☐ **There was** an accident **last night**.
(not There has been an accident last night.)

For past simple and present perfect, see Unit 20.

C

there will be



- ☐ Do you think **there will be** a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- ☐ The manager of the company is leaving, so **there will be** a new manager soon.
- ☐ I'm going away tomorrow. I'll do my packing today because **there won't be** time tomorrow.
(**there won't be** = there **will not be**)

38.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty, but what was in the room last week? Choose from the box and write sentences with **There was ...** or **There were ...**.

an armchair a carpet some flowers a sofa
some books ~~a clock~~ three pictures a small table

last week



now



- 1 There was a clock on the wall near the window.
- 2 on the floor.
- 3 on the wall near the door.
- 4 in the middle of the room.
- 5 on the table.
- 6 on the shelves.
- 7 in the corner near the door.
- 8 opposite the armchair.

38.2 Write **there was** / **there wasn't** / **was there** or **there were** / **there weren't** / **were there**.

- 1 I was hungry, but there wasn't anything to eat.
- 2 Was everything OK yesterday? Were there any problems?
- 3 I opened the envelope, but it was empty. nothing in it.
- 4 'We stayed at a very nice hotel.' 'Really?' a swimming pool?
- 5 'Did you buy any bananas?' 'No, any in the shop.'
- 6 The wallet was empty. any money in it.
- 7 '..... many people at the meeting?' 'No, very few.'
- 8 We didn't visit the museum. enough time.
- 9 I'm sorry I'm late. a lot of traffic.
- 10 Twenty years ago many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

38.3 Write **there + is** / **are** / **was** / **were** / **has been** / **have been** / **will be**.

- 1 There was a good film on TV last night.
- 2 24 hours in a day.
- 3 a party at the club last Friday, but I didn't go.
- 4 'Where can I get something to eat?' '..... a cafe at the end of the street.'
- 5 'Why are the police outside the bank?' '..... a robbery.'
- 6 When we arrived at the theatre, a long queue outside.
- 7 When you arrive tomorrow, somebody at the station to meet you.
- 8 Ten years ago 500 children at the school. Now
..... more than a thousand.
- 9 Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now.
..... a lot of changes.
- 10 I think everything will be OK. I don't think any problems.

It ...

A

We use **it** for time/day/distance/weather:

time



- ☐ What time is **it**?
- ☐ **It's** half past ten.
- ☐ **It's** late.
- ☐ **It's** time to go home.

day



- ☐ What day is **it**?
- ☐ **It's** Thursday.
- ☐ **It's** 16 March.
- ☐ **It** was my birthday yesterday.

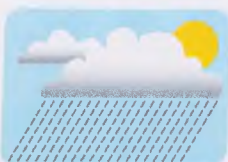
distance



- ☐ **It's** three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
- ☐ How far is **it** from New York to Los Angeles?
- ☐ **It's** a long way from here to the station.
- ☐ We can walk home. **It** isn't far.

We use **far** in questions (**is it far?**) and negatives (**it isn't far**).
In positive sentences, we use **a long way** (**it's a long way**).

weather



- ☐ **It's** raining. **It** isn't raining. Is **it** snowing?
- ☐ **It** rains a lot here. **It** didn't rain yesterday. Does **it** snow very often?
- ☐ **It's** warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.
- ☐ **It's** a nice day today.

Compare **it** and **there**:

- ☐ **It rains** a lot in winter.
There is a lot of rain in winter.
- ☐ **It** was very **windy**.
There was a strong wind yesterday.

B

It's nice to ... etc.

It's	easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe / expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.	to ...
-------------	---	---------------

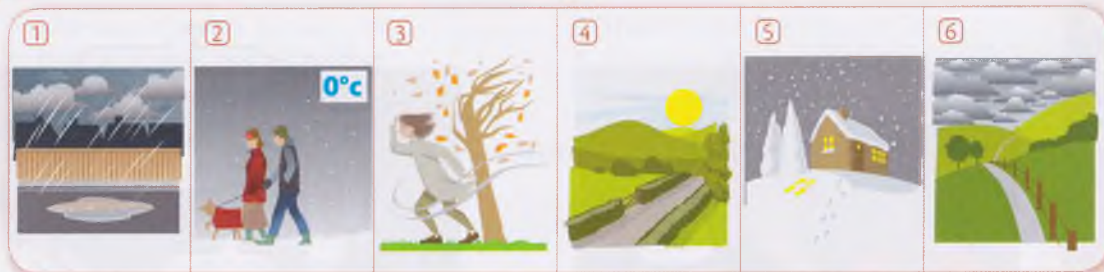
- ☐ **It's** nice **to see you again**.
- ☐ **It's** impossible **to understand her**.
- ☐ **It** wasn't easy **to find your house**.

C

Don't forget **it**:

- ☐ **It's** raining again. (*not* Is raining again)
- ☐ Is **it** true that you're going away? (*not* Is true that ...)

39.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use **It's ...**



- 1 It's raining.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

39.2 Write **it is (it's)** or **is it**.

- 1 What time is it ?
- 2 We have to go now. very late.
- 3 true that Ben can fly a helicopter?
- 4 'What day today? Tuesday?' 'No, Wednesday.'
- 5 ten kilometres from the airport to the city centre.
- 6 OK to call you at your office?
- 7 'Do you want to walk to the hotel?' 'I don't know. How far ?'
- 8 Lisa's birthday today. She's 27.
- 9 I don't believe it! impossible.

39.3 Write questions with **How far ... ?**

- 1 (here / the station) How far is it from here to the station?
- 2 (the hotel / the beach) How
- 3 (New York / Washington)
- 4 (your house / the airport)

39.4 Write **it** or **there**.

- 1 The weather isn't so nice today. It 's cloudy.
- 2 There was a strong wind yesterday.
- 3 's hot in this room. Open a window.
- 4 was a nice day yesterday. was warm and sunny.
- 5 was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
- 6 I was afraid because was very dark.
- 7 's often cold here, but isn't much rain.
- 8 's a long way from here to the nearest shop.

39.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

it's	easy	dangerous	to	work here	get up early
	difficult	nice		visit different places	go out alone
	impossible	interesting		see you again	make friends

- 1 If you go to bed late, it's difficult to get up early in the morning.
- 2 Hello, Jane. How are you?
- 3 There is too much noise.
- 4 Everybody is very nice at work.
- 5 I like travelling.
- 6 Some cities are not safe. at night.

A



She isn't tired, but **he is**.
(**he is** = he is tired)



He likes tea, but **she doesn't**.
(**she doesn't** = she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words ('he is *tired*', 'she doesn't *like tea*').

You can use these verbs in the same way:

am/is/are
was/were
have/has
do/does/did
can
will
might
must

- ☐ I haven't got a car, but my sister **has**. (= my sister has got a car)
- ☐ A: Please help me.
B: I'm sorry. I **can't**. (= I can't help you)
- ☐ A: Are you tired?
B: I **was**, but I **'m not** now. (= I was tired, but I'm not tired now)
- ☐ A: Do you think Laura will come and see us?
B: She **might**. (= she might come)
- ☐ A: Are you going now?
B: Yes, I'm afraid I **must**. (= I must go)

We don't use **'m/s/'ve** etc. (*short forms*) in this way. You must use **am/is/have** etc.:

- ☐ She isn't tired, but he **is**. (*not* but he's)

But you can use **isn't / haven't / won't** etc. (*negative short forms*):

- ☐ My sister has got a car, but I **haven't**.
- ☐ 'Are you and Jane working tomorrow?' 'I am, but Jane **isn't**.'

B

You can use **I am / I'm not** etc. after **Yes** and **No**:

- ☐ 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I **am**. / No, I **'m not**.'
- ☐ 'Will Alan be here tomorrow?' 'Yes, he **will**. / No, he **won't**.'
- ☐ 'Is there a bus to the airport?' 'Yes, there **is**. / No, there **isn't**.'

C

We use **do/does** for the *present simple* (→ Units 6–7):

- ☐ I don't like hot weather, but Sue **does**. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- ☐ Sue works hard, but I **don't**. (= I don't work hard)
- ☐ 'Do you enjoy your work?' 'Yes, I **do**.'

We use **did** for the *past simple* (→ Unit 12):

- ☐ A: Did you and Chris enjoy the film?
B: I **did**, but Chris **didn't**. (= I enjoyed it, but Chris didn't enjoy it)
- ☐ 'I had a good time.' 'I **did** too.' (= I enjoyed it too)
- ☐ 'Did it rain yesterday?' 'No, it **didn't**.'

Exercises

40.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (**is/have/can** etc.) each time.

- 1 Kate wasn't hungry, but we were.
- 2 I'm not married, but my brother
- 3 Ben can't help you, but I
- 4 I haven't seen the film, but Tom
- 5 Karen won't be here, but Chris
- 6 You weren't late, but I

40.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (**isn't/haven't/can't** etc.).

- 1 My sister can play the piano, but I can't.
- 2 Sam is working today, but I
- 3 I was working, but my friends
- 4 Mark has been to China, but I
- 5 I'm ready to go, but Tom
- 6 I've got a key, but Sarah

40.3 Complete these sentences with **do/does/did** or **don't/doesn't/didn't**.

- 1 I don't like hot weather, but Sue does.
- 2 Sue likes hot weather, but I don't.
- 3 My mother wears glasses, but my father
- 4 You don't know Paul very well, but I
- 5 I didn't enjoy the party, but my friends
- 6 I don't watch TV much, but Peter
- 7 Kate lives in London, but her parents
- 8 You had breakfast this morning, but I

40.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.

- 1 I didn't go out last night, but my friends did.
- 2 I like, but
- 3 I don't, but
- 4 I'm
- 5 I haven't

40.5 Put in a verb, positive or negative.

- 1 'Are you tired?' 'I was earlier, but I'm not now.'
- 2 Steve is happy today, but he yesterday.
- 3 The bank isn't open yet, but the shops
- 4 I haven't got a telescope, but I know somebody who
- 5 I would like to help you, but I'm afraid I
- 6 I don't usually go to work by car, but I yesterday.
- 7 A: Have you ever been to the United States?
B: No, but Sandra She went there on holiday last year.
- 8 'Do you and Chris watch TV a lot?' 'I, but Chris doesn't.'
- 9 I've been invited to Sam's wedding, but Kate
- 10 'Do you think Sarah will pass her driving test?' 'Yes, I'm sure she
- 11 'Are you going out tonight?' 'I I don't know for sure.'

40.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use **Yes, I have.** / **No, I'm not.** etc.

- 1 Are you American? No, I'm not.
- 2 Have you got a car?
- 3 Do you feel OK?
- 4 Is it snowing?
- 5 Are you hungry?
- 6 Do you like classical music?
- 7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow?
- 8 Have you ever broken your arm?
- 9 Did you buy anything yesterday?
- 10 Were you asleep at 3 a.m.?

Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.

A



You can say **have you?** / **is it?** / **can't he?** etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:

- ☐ 'You're late.' 'Oh, **am I?** I'm sorry.'
- ☐ 'I was ill last week.' 'Were you? I didn't know that.'
- ☐ 'It's raining again.' 'Is it? It was sunny ten minutes ago.'
- ☐ 'There's a problem with the car.' 'Is there? What's wrong with it?'
- ☐ 'Bill can't drive.' 'Can't he? I didn't know that.'
- ☐ 'I'm not hungry.' 'Aren't you? I am.'
- ☐ 'Sue isn't at work today.' 'Isn't she? Is she ill?'

Use **do/does** for the *present simple*, and **did** for the *past simple*:

- ☐ 'I speak four languages.' 'Do you? Which ones?'
- ☐ 'Ben doesn't eat meat.' 'Doesn't he? Does he eat fish?'
- ☐ 'Nicola got married last week.' 'Did she? Really?'

B

Question tags

You can use **have you?** / **is it?** / **can't she?** etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'mini-questions' are *question tags*.



positive sentence → *negative question tag*

It's a beautiful day, isn't it? Kate lives in London, doesn't she? You closed the window, didn't you? Those shoes are nice, aren't they? Tom will be here soon, won't he?	Yes, it's perfect. Yes, that's right. Yes, I think so. Yes, very nice. Yes, probably.
---	--

negative sentence → *positive question tag*

That isn't your car, is it? You haven't met my mother, have you? Helen doesn't go out much, does she? You won't be late, will you?	No, it's my mother's. No, I haven't. No, she doesn't. No, I'm never late.
--	---

41.1 Answer with **Do you?** / **Doesn't she?** / **Did they?** etc.

- 1 I speak four languages
- 2 I work in a bank.
- 3 I didn't go to work yesterday.
- 4 Jane doesn't like me.
- 5 You look tired.
- 6 Kate phoned me last night.

Do you ? Which ones?
 ? I work in a bank too.
 ? Were you ill?
 ? Why not?
 ? I feel fine.
 ? What did she say?

41.2 Answer with **Have you?** / **Haven't you?** / **Did she?** / **Didn't she?** etc.

- 1 I've bought a new car.
- 2 Tim doesn't eat meat.
- 3 I've lost my key.
- 4 Sue can't drive.
- 5 I was born in Italy.
- 6 I didn't sleep well last night.
- 7 There's a film on TV tonight.
- 8 I'm not happy.
- 9 I saw Paula last week.
- 10 Maria works in a factory.
- 11 I won't be here next week.
- 12 The clock isn't working.

Have you ? What make is it?
Doesn't he ? Does he eat fish?
 ? When did you last have it?
 ? She should learn.
 ? I didn't know that.
 ? Was the bed uncomfortable?
 ? Are you going to watch it?
 ? Why not?
 ? How is she?
 ? What kind of factory?
 ? Where will you be?
 ? It was working yesterday.

41.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (**isn't it?** / **haven't you?** etc.).

- 1 It's a beautiful day, **isn't it** ?
- 2 These flowers are nice, ?
- 3 Jane was at the party, ?
- 4 You've been to Paris, ?
- 5 You speak German, ?
- 6 Martin looks tired, ?
- 7 You'll help me, ?

Yes, it's perfect.
 Yes, what are they?
 Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
 Yes, many times.
 Yes, but not very well.
 Yes, he works very hard.
 Yes, of course I will.

41.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (**is it?** / **do you?** etc.) or negative (**isn't it?** / **don't you?** etc.).

- 1 You haven't got a car, **have you** ?
- 2 You aren't tired, ?
- 3 Lisa is a very nice person, ?
- 4 You can play the piano, ?
- 5 You don't know Mike's sister, ?
- 6 Sarah went to university, ?
- 7 The film wasn't very good, ?
- 8 Anna lives near you, ?
- 9 You won't tell anybody what I said, ?

No, I can't drive.
 No, I feel fine.
 Yes, everybody likes her.
 Yes, but I'm not very good.
 No, I've never met her.
 Yes, she studied psychology.
 No, it was terrible.
 That's right. In the same street.
 No, of course not.

too/either so am I / neither do I etc.

A too and either



We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

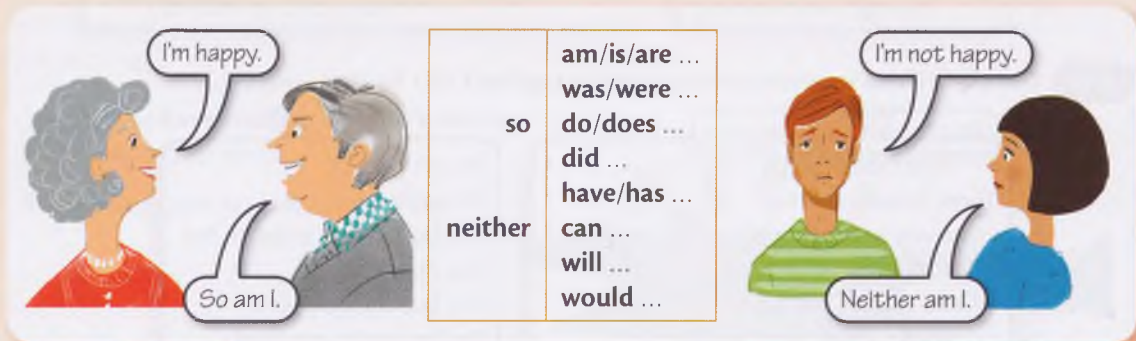
We use **too** after a *positive* verb:

- ☐ A: I'm happy.
B: I'm happy **too**.
- ☐ A: I enjoyed the film.
B: I **enjoyed** it **too**.
- ☐ Jane is a doctor. Her husband **is** a doctor **too**.

We use **either** after a *negative* verb:

- ☐ A: I'm not happy.
B: I'm **not** happy **either**.
- ☐ A: I can't cook.
B: I **can't** **either**.
- ☐ Ben doesn't watch TV. He **doesn't** read newspapers **either**.

B so am I / neither do I etc.



so

neither

am/is/are ...
was/were ...
do/does ...
did ...
have/has ...
can ...
will ...
would ...

so am I = I am too

so have I = I have too (etc.):

- ☐ A: I'm working.
B: **So am I.** (= I'm working too)
- ☐ A: I **was** late for work today.
B: **So was** Sam.
- ☐ A: I **work** in a bank.
B: **So do** I.
- ☐ A: **We went** to the cinema last night.
B: Did you? **So did** we.
- ☐ A: I'd like to go to Australia.
B: **So would** I.

neither am I = I'm not either

neither can I = I can't either (etc.):

- ☐ A: I **haven't** got a key.
B: **Neither have** I. (= I haven't either)
- ☐ A: **Kate can't** cook.
B: **Neither can** Tom.
- ☐ A: I **won't** (= will not) be here tomorrow.
B: **Neither will** I.
- ☐ A: I **never** go to the cinema.
B: **Neither do** I.

You can also use **Nor** (= Neither):

- ☐ A: I'm not married.
B: **Nor am** I. or **Neither am** I.

Remember: So **am I** (not So I am), Neither **have I** (not Neither I have).

Exercises

42.1 Write **too** or **either**.

- 1 I'm happy.
- 2 I'm not hungry.
- 3 I'm going out.
- 4 It rained on Saturday.
- 5 Rachel can't drive a car.
- 6 I don't like shopping.
- 7 Emma's mother is a teacher.

- 1 I'm happy too.
- 2 I'm not hungry
- 3 I'm going out
- 4 It rained on Sunday
- 5 She can't ride a bike
- 6 I don't like shopping
- 7 Her father is a teacher

42.2 Answer with **So ... I** (**So am I** / **So do I** / **So can I** etc.).

- 1 I went to bed late last night.
- 2 I'm thirsty.
- 3 I've just eaten.
- 4 I need a holiday.
- 5 I'll be late tomorrow.
- 6 I was very tired this morning.

So did I.

Answer with **Neither ... I**.

- 7 I can't go to the party.
- 8 I didn't phone Alex last night.
- 9 I haven't got any money.
- 10 I'm not going out tomorrow.
- 11 I don't know what to do.

42.3 You are talking to Maria. Write sentences about yourself. Where possible, use **So ... I** or **Neither ... I**. Look at these examples carefully:



I'm tired today.

I don't work hard.

Maria

You can answer: So am I. or I'm not.

You can answer: Neither do I. or I do.

You

- 1 I'm learning English.
- 2 I can ride a bike.
- 3 I'm not American.
- 4 I like cooking.
- 5 I don't like cold weather.
- 6 I slept well last night.
- 7 I've never run a marathon.
- 8 I don't use my phone much.
- 9 I'm going out tomorrow evening.
- 10 I haven't been to Scotland.
- 11 I didn't watch TV last night.
- 12 I go to the cinema a lot.

isn't, haven't, don't etc. (negatives)

A

We use **not** (n't) in negative sentences:

positive → negative

am	am not ('m not)
is	is not (isn't or 's not)
are	are not (aren't or 're not)
was	was not (wasn't)
were	were not (weren't)
have	have not (haven't)
has	has not (hasn't)
will	will not (won't)
can	cannot (can't)
could	could not (couldn't)
must	must not (mustn't)
should	should not (shouldn't)
would	would not (wouldn't)

- ☐ I'm **not** tired.
- ☐ It **isn't** (or It's **not**) raining.
- ☐ They **aren't** (or They're **not**) here.
- ☐ Julian **wasn't** hungry.
- ☐ The shops **weren't** open.
- ☐ I **haven't** finished my work.
- ☐ Sue **hasn't** got a car.
- ☐ We **won't** be here tomorrow.
- ☐ George **can't** drive.
- ☐ I **couldn't** sleep last night.
- ☐ I **mustn't** forget to phone Jane.
- ☐ You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- ☐ I **wouldn't** like to be an actor.

B

don't/doesn't/didn't

present simple negative

I/we/you/they he/she/it	do not (don't) does not (doesn't)
----------------------------	--

work/live/go etc.

past simple negative

I/they/he/she etc.	did not (didn't)
--------------------	-------------------------

positive → negative

I want to go out.	→	I don't want to go out.
They work hard.	→	They don't work hard.
Lisa plays the guitar.	→	Lisa doesn't play the guitar.
My father likes his job.	→	My father doesn't like his job.
I got up early this morning.	→	I didn't get up early this morning.
They worked hard yesterday.	→	They didn't work hard yesterday.
We played tennis.	→	We didn't play tennis.
Emily had dinner with us.	→	Emily didn't have dinner with us.

Don't ...

Look!	→	Don't look!
Wait for me.	→	Don't wait for me.

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (**don't do** / **doesn't do** / **didn't do**):

Do something!	→	Don't do anything!
Sue does a lot at weekends.	→	Sue doesn't do much at weekends.
I did what you said.	→	I didn't do what you said.

- 43.1 Make these sentences negative.
- | | |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1 He's gone away. <u>He hasn't gone away.</u> | 4 It's cold today. |
| 2 They're married. | 5 We'll be late. |
| 3 I've had dinner. | 6 You should go. |

- 43.2 Make these sentences negative. Use **don't/doesn't/didn't**.
- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| 1 She saw me. <u>She didn't see me.</u> | 4 He lives here. |
| 2 I like cheese. | 5 Go away! |
| 3 They understood. | 6 I did the shopping. |

- 43.3 Make these sentences negative.
- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1 She can swim. <u>She can't swim.</u> | 6 He'll be pleased. |
| 2 They've arrived. | 7 Call me tonight. |
| 3 I went to the bank. | 8 It rained yesterday. |
| 4 He speaks German. | 9 I could hear them. |
| 5 We were angry. | 10 I believe you. |

- 43.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (**isn't/haven't/don't** etc.).
- 1 They aren't rich. They haven't got much money.
 - 2 'Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thank you. I hungry.'
 - 3 I find my glasses. Have you seen them?
 - 4 Steve go to the cinema much. He prefers to watch DVDs at home.
 - 5 We can walk to the station from here. It very far.
 - 6 'Where's Jane?' 'I know. I seen her today.'
 - 7 Be careful! fall!
 - 8 We went to a restaurant last night. I like the food very much.
 - 9 I've been to Japan many times, but I been to Korea.
 - 10 Julia be here tomorrow. She's going away.
 - 11 'Who broke that window?' 'Not me. I do it.'
 - 12 We didn't see what happened. We looking at the time.
 - 13 Lisa bought a new coat a few days ago, but she worn it yet.
 - 14 You drive so fast. It's dangerous.

- 43.5 You ask Gary some questions. He answers 'Yes' or 'No'. Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.

You

Are you married?

Do you live in London?

Were you born in London?

Do you like London?

Would you like to live in the country?

Can you drive?

Have you got a car?

Do you read newspapers?

Are you interested in politics?

Do you watch TV most evenings?

Did you watch TV last night?

Did you go out last night?



Gary

No. 1 He isn't married.

Yes. 2 He lives in London.

No. 3

No. 4

Yes. 5

Yes. 6

No. 7

No. 8

No. 9

Yes. 10

No. 11

Yes. 12

is it ... ? have you ... ? do they ... ? etc.
(questions 1)

A

positive

you

are

You are eating.

question

are

you

Are you eating?

What are you eating?

In questions, the first verb (**is/are/have** etc.) is before the subject:positive
subject + verbquestion
verb + subject

I	am late.	→	Am	I late?
That seat	is free.	→	Is	that seat free?
She	was angry.	→	Why was	she angry?
David	has gone.	→	Where has	David gone?
You	have got a car.	→	Have	you got a car?
They	will be here soon.	→	When will	they be here?
Paula	can swim.	→	Can	Paula swim?

Remember: the subject is after the first verb.

- ☐ Where **has David** gone? (not Where has gone David?)
- ☐ **Are those people** waiting for something? (not Are waiting ... ?)
- ☐ When **was the telephone** invented? (not When was invented ... ?)

B

do ... ? / does ... ? / did ... ?

present simple questions

do I/we/you/they
does he/she/it

work/live/go etc. ... ?

past simple questions

did I/they/he/she etc.

positive

question

They work hard.	→	Do they work hard?
You watch television.	→	How often do you watch television?
Chris works hard.	→	Does Chris work hard?
She gets up early.	→	What time does she get up ?
They worked hard.	→	Did they work hard?
You had dinner.	→	What did you have for dinner?
She got up early.	→	What time did she get up ?

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (do you **do** / did he **do** etc.):

- ☐ What **do** you usually **do** at weekends?
- ☐ A: What **does** your brother **do**?
B: He works in a bank.
- ☐ A: I broke my finger last week.
B: How **did** you **do** that? (not How did you that?)

C

Why isn't ... ? / Why don't ... ? etc. (Why + negative):

- ☐ Where's John? **Why isn't he** here? (not Why he isn't here?)
- ☐ **Why can't Paula** come to the meeting tomorrow? (not Why Paula can't ... ?)
- ☐ **Why didn't you** phone me last night?

Exercises

44.1 Write questions.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 I can swim. | (and you?) | <u>Can you swim?</u> |
| 2 I work hard. | (and Jack?) | <u>Does Jack work hard?</u> |
| 3 I was late this morning. | (and you?) | ..... |
| 4 I've got a key. | (and Kate?) | ..... |
| 5 I'll be here tomorrow. | (and you?) | ..... |
| 6 I'm going out this evening. | (and Paul?) | ..... |
| 7 I like my job. | (and you?) | ..... |
| 8 I live near here. | (and Nicola?) | ..... |
| 9 I enjoyed the film. | (and you?) | ..... |
| 10 I had a good holiday. | (and you?) | ..... |

44.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.

You

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 (have / a car?) | <u>Have you got a car?</u> |
| 2 (use / a lot?) | it |
| 3 (use / yesterday?) | ..... |
| 4 (enjoy driving?) | ..... |
| 5 (a good driver?) | ..... |
| 6 (ever / have / an accident?) | ..... |



Yes, I have.
Yes, nearly every day.
Yes, to go to work.
Not very much.
I think I am.
No, never.

44.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1 (has / gone / where / David?) | <u>Where has David gone?</u> |
| 2 (working / Rachel / is / today?) | <u>Is Rachel working today?</u> |
| 3 (the children / what / are / doing?) | What |
| 4 (made / is / how / cheese?) | ..... |
| 5 (to the party / coming / is / your sister?) | ..... |
| 6 (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?) | ..... |
| 7 (your guests / have / yet / arrived?) | ..... |
| 8 (leave / what time / your train / does?) | ..... |
| 9 (to work / Emily / why / go / didn't?) | ..... |
| 10 (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?) | ..... |

44.4 Complete the questions.

- | | |
|----|--|
| 1 | I want to go out. |
| 2 | Kate and Paul aren't going to the party. |
| 3 | I'm reading. |
| 4 | Sue went to bed early. |
| 5 | My parents are going on holiday. |
| 6 | I saw Tom a few days ago. |
| 7 | I can't come to the party. |
| 8 | Tina has gone away. |
| 9 | I need some money. |
| 10 | Angela doesn't like me. |
| 11 | It rains sometimes. |
| 12 | I did the shopping. |

Where do you want to go?
Why aren't they going?

What

What time

When

Where

Why

Where

How much

Why

How often

When

Who saw you? Who did you see?
(questions 2)

A



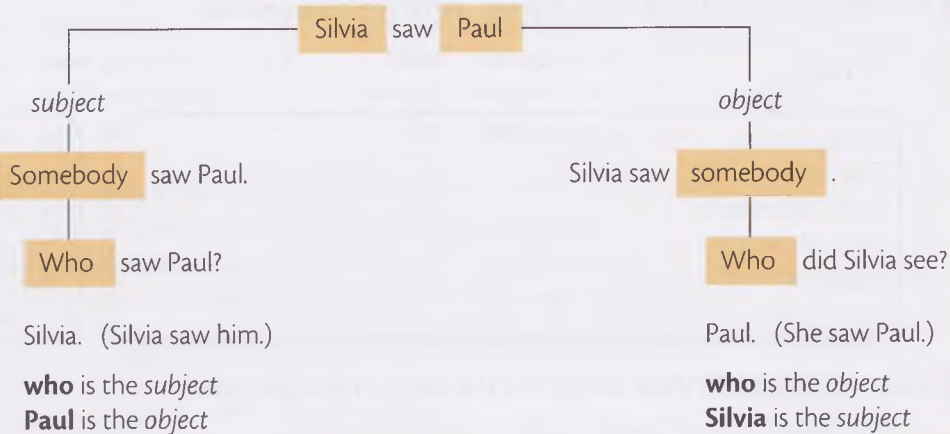
Silvia saw Paul.

Who **saw** Paul?

Silvia. (Silvia saw him.)

Who **did** Silvia **see**?

Paul. (She saw Paul.)



B

In these questions, **who/what** is the *subject*:

- ☐ **Who lives** in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?)
(not Who does live?)
- ☐ **What happened?** (= something happened – what?)
(not What did happen?)
- ☐ **What's happening?** (What's = What **is**)
- ☐ **Who's got** my key? (Who's = Who **has**)

In these questions, **who/what** is the *object*:

- ☐ Who did **you** meet yesterday? (= **you** met somebody – who?)
- ☐ What did **Paul** say? (= **Paul** said something – what?)
- ☐ Who are **you** phoning?
- ☐ What was **Silvia** wearing?

Compare:

- ☐ George likes oranges. → **Who likes** oranges? – George.
What does George like? – Oranges.
- ☐ Jane won a new car. → **Who won** a new car? – Jane.
What did Jane win? – A new car.

C

Use **who** for people (somebody). Use **what** for things, ideas etc. (something):

- ☐ **Who** is your favourite **singer**?
- ☐ **What** is your favourite **song**?

45.1 Make questions with **who** or **what**. In these questions, **who/what** is the subject.

- 1 Somebody broke the window.
- 2 Something fell off the shelf.
- 3 Somebody wants to see you.
- 4 Somebody took my umbrella.
- 5 Something made me ill.
- 6 Somebody is coming.

Who broke the window?
What me?

45.2 Make questions with **who** or **what** (subject or object).

- 1 I bought something.
- 2 Somebody lives in this house.
- 3 I phoned somebody.
- 4 Something happened last night.
- 5 Somebody knows the answer.
- 6 Somebody did the washing-up.
- 7 Jane did something.
- 8 Something woke me up.
- 9 Somebody saw the accident.
- 10 I saw somebody.
- 11 Somebody has got my pen.
- 12 This word means something.

What did you buy?
Who lives in this house?

45.3 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with **who** or **what**.

- 1 I lost XXXXX yesterday, but fortunately XXXXX found it and gave it back to me.

What did you lose?
Who found it?

- 2 XXXXX phoned me last night. She wanted XXXXX.

Who
What

- 3 I needed some advice, so I asked XXXXX. He said XXXXX.

- 4 I hear that XXXXX got married last week. XXXXX told me.

- 5 I met XXXXX on my way home this evening. She told me XXXXX.

- 6 Steve and I played tennis yesterday. XXXXX won. After the game we XXXXX.

- 7 It was my birthday last week and I had some presents. XXXXX gave me a book and Catherine gave me XXXXX.

Who is she talking to? What is it like?
(questions 3)

A



Jessica is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking **to**?

In questions beginning **Who ... ? / What ... ? / Where ... ? / Which ... ?**, prepositions (**to/from/with** etc.) usually go at the end:

- ☐ 'Where are you **from**?' 'I'm from Thailand.'
- ☐ 'Jack was afraid.' 'What was he afraid **of**?'
- ☐ 'Who do these books belong **to**?' 'They're mine.'
- ☐ 'Tom's father is in hospital.' 'Which hospital is he **in**?'
- ☐ 'Kate is going on holiday.' 'Who **with**?' / 'Who is she going **with**?'
- ☐ 'Can we talk?' 'Sure. What do you want to talk **about**?'

B

What's it like? / What are they like? etc.



What's it like? = What **is** it like?

What's it like? = tell me something about it – is it good or bad, big or small, old or new (etc.)?

When we say '**What is it like?**', **like** is a *preposition*. It is not the verb **like** ('Do you **like** your new house?' etc.).

- ☐ A: There's a new restaurant in our street.
B: **What's it like?** Is it good?
A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.
- ☐ A: **What's** your new teacher **like**?
B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
- ☐ A: I met Nicola's parents yesterday.
B: Did you? **What** are they **like**?
A: They're very nice.
- ☐ A: Did you have a good holiday? **What** was the weather **like**?
B: It was lovely. It was sunny every day.

Exercises

46.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with **who** or **what**.

1 The letter is from XXXXX.

Who is the letter from?

2 I'm looking for a XXXXX.

What you

3 I went to the cinema with XXXXX.

4 The film was about XXXXX.

5 I gave the money to XXXXX.

6 The book was written by XXXXX.

46.2 Write questions about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs + a preposition:

go listen look talk talk wait



1 Who is she talking to?

2 What they

3 Which restaurant

4 What

5 What

6 Which bus

46.3 Write questions beginning **Which ... ?**

1 Tom's father is in hospital.

2 We stayed at a hotel.

3 Jack plays for a football team.

4 I went to school in this town.

Which hospital is he in?

..... you

46.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with **What is/are ... like?**

1 (the roads) What are the roads like?

2 (the food)

3 (the people)

4 (the weather)

46.5 Ask questions with **What was/were ... like?**

1 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather.

What was the weather like?

2 Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.

3 Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.

4 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.

What ... ? Which ... ? How ... ? (questions 4)

A

What + *noun* (What colour ... ? / What kind ... ? etc.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| ☐ What colour is your car? | ☐ What colour are your eyes? |
| ☐ What size is this shirt? | ☐ What make is your TV? |
| ☐ What time is it? | ☐ What day is it today? |
| ☐ What kind of job do you want?
(or What type of job ... ? / What sort of job ... ?) | |

What without a noun:

- ☐ **What's** your favourite colour?
☐ **What** do you want to do tonight?

B

Which + *noun* (things or people):

- ☐ **Which train** did you catch – the 9.50 or the 10.30?
☐ **Which doctor** did you see – Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

We use **which** without a noun for things, not people:

- ☐ **Which** is bigger – Canada or Australia?

We use **who** for people (without a noun):

- ☐ **Who** is taller – Joe or Gary? (*not* Which is taller?)

C

What or **which**?

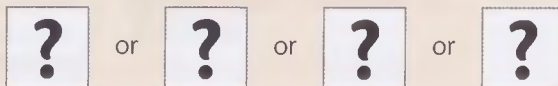
We use **which** when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3 or 4):

- ☐ We can go this way or that way.

Which way shall we go?

- ☐ There are four umbrellas here.

Which is yours?



WHICH?

What is more general:

- ☐ **What's** the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
☐ **What sort** of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:

- ☐ **What colour** are his eyes? (*not* Which colour?)

Which colour do you prefer, **pink or yellow**?

- ☐ **What** is the longest river in the world?

Which is the longest river – **the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile**?

D

How ... ?

- ☐ **'How** was the party last night?' 'It was great.'
☐ **'How** do you usually go to work?' 'By bus.'

You can use **how** + *adjective/adverb* (**how tall** / **how old** / **how often** etc.):

'How	tall are you? 'I'm 1 metre 70.'
	big is the house? 'Not very big.'
	old is your mother? 'She's 45.'
	far is it from here to the airport? 'Five kilometres.'
	often do you use your car? 'Every day.'
	long have they been married? 'Ten years.'
	much was the meal? 'Thirty pounds.'

47.1 Write questions with **what**.

- 1 I've got a new TV.
- 2 I want a job.
- 3 I bought a new sweater.
- 4 I got up early this morning.
- 5 I like music.
- 6 I want to buy a car.

- (make?)
(kind?)
(colour?)
(time?)
(type?)
(kind?)

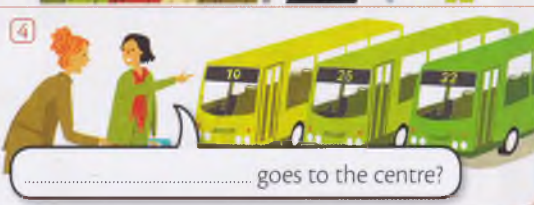
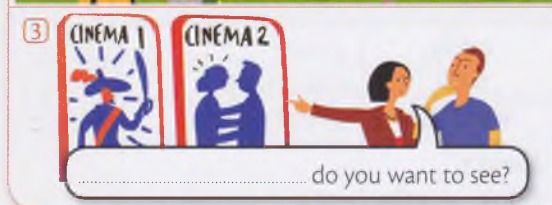
What make is it?

What kind of job do you want?

What

get up?

47.2 Complete the questions. Use **Which ... ?**



47.3 Write **what/which/who**.

- 1 What is that man's name?
- 2 Which way shall we go? Left or right?
- 3 You can have tea or coffee. do you prefer?
- 4 ' day is it today?' 'Friday.'
- 5 This is a nice office. desk is yours?
- 6 is your favourite sport?
- 7 is more expensive, meat or fish?
- 8 is older, Liz or Steve?
- 9 kind of camera have you got?
- 10 A: I have three cameras.
B: camera do you use most?
- 11 nationality are you?

47.4 Complete the questions with **How + adjective or adverb (high/long etc.)**.

- 1 How high is Mount Everest?
- 2 is it to the station?
- 3 is Helen?
- 4 do the buses run?
- 5 is the water in the pool?
- 6 have you lived here?

Nearly 9000 metres.
It's about two kilometres from here.
She's 26.
Every ten minutes.
Two metres.
Nearly three years.

47.5 Write questions with **How ... ?**

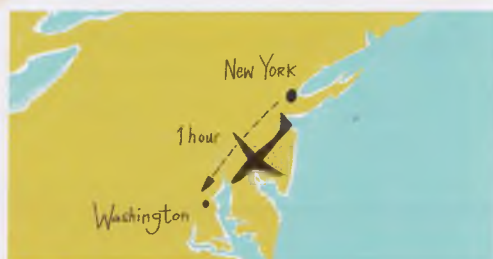
- 1 Are you 1 metre 70? 1.75? 1.80?
- 2 Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three?
- 3 Are you 20 years old? 22? 25?
- 4 Did you spend £20? £30? £50?
- 5 Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never?
- 6 Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000?

How tall are you?

How long does it take ... ?

A

How long does it take from ... to ... ?

How long **does it take** by plane from New York to Washington?**It takes** an hour.

- ☐ How long **does it take** by train from London to Manchester?
- ☐ **It takes** two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- ☐ How long **does it take** by car from your house to the station?
- ☐ **It takes** ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

B

How long does it take to do something?

How long	does did will	it take to ... ?
----------	--	-------------------------

It	takes took will take	a week a long time three hours	to ...
	doesn't didn't won't	take long	

- ☐ How long **does it take to cross** the Atlantic by ship?
- ☐ 'I came by train.' 'Did you? How long **did it take (to get here)?**'
- ☐ How long **will it take to get** from here to the hotel?
- ☐ **It takes** a long time **to learn** a language.
- ☐ **It doesn't take** long **to cook** an omelette.
- ☐ **It won't take** long **to fix** the computer.

C

How long does it take you to do something?



How long	does did will	it take	you Tom them	to ... ?
----------	--	----------------	--------------------	-----------------

It	takes took will take	me Tom them	a week a long time three hours	to ...
----	---	-------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------

I started reading the book on Monday.

I finished it on Wednesday evening.

It **took me** three days **to read** it.

- ☐ How long **will it take me to learn** to drive?
- ☐ **It takes Tom** 20 minutes **to get** to work in the morning.
- ☐ **It took us** an hour **to do** the shopping.
- ☐ **Did it take you** a long time **to find** a job?
- ☐ **It will take me** an hour **to cook** dinner.

48.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with **How long ... ?**



1 How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?

2

3

4

48.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

1 fly from your city/country to London

It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.

2 fly from your city/country to New York

3 study to be a doctor in your country

4 walk from your home to the nearest shop

5 get from your home to the nearest airport

48.3 Write questions with **How long did it take ... ?**

1 (Jane found a job.)

How long did it take her to find a job?

2 (I walked to the station.)

you

3 (Tom painted the bathroom.)

4 (I learnt to ski.)

5 (They repaired the car.)

48.4 Read the situations and write sentences with **It took ...**

1 I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.

It took me three days to read the book.

2 We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock and we arrived home at 10.20.

3 I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.

4 Mark drove to London yesterday. He left home at 7 o'clock and got to London at 10.

5 Lisa began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.

6 Write a sentence about yourself.

Do you know where ... ?
I don't know what ... etc

A



We say:

Where **is** Paula?

but **Do you know** where Paula **is** ?
(not Do you know where is Paula?)

In the same way we say:

I know
I don't know
Can you tell me } where **Paula is**.

Compare:

Who **are** those people?How old **is** Nicola?What time **is** it?Where **can** I go?How much **is** this camera?When **are** you going away?Where **have** they gone?What **was** Kate wearing?

but

Do you know Can you tell me	who those people are how old Nicola is what time it is where I can go how much this camera is when you're going away where they have gone what Kate was wearing	?
I know I don't know I don't remember		.

B

Questions with **do/does/did** (present simple and past simple)Where **does he live** ?

but **Do you know** where **he lives** ? (not Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:

How **do** airplanes fly?What **does** Jane want?Why **did** she go home?Where **did** I put the key?

but

Do you know	how airplanes fly what Jane wants why she went home where I put the key	?
I don't know I don't remember I know		.

C

Questions beginning **Is ... ? / Do ... ? / Can ... ?** etc. (yes/no questions)

Compare:

Is Jack at home?**Have** they got a car?**Can** Ben swim?**Do** they live near here?**Did** anybody see you?

but

Do you know	if <i>or</i> whether	Jack is at home they've got a car Ben can swim they live near here anybody saw you	?
I don't know			.

You can use **if** or **whether** in these sentences:

- ☐ Do you know **if** they've got a car? *or*
Do you know **whether** they've got a car?
- ☐ I don't know **if** anybody saw me. *or*
I don't know **whether** anybody saw me.

49.1 Answer these questions with **I don't know where/when/why ...** etc.

- 1 Have your friends gone home?
- 2 Is Kate in her office?
- 3 Is the castle very old?
- 4 Will Paul be here soon?
- 5 Was he angry because I was late?
- 6 Has Emily lived here a long time?

(where) I don't know where they've gone.
 (where) I don't know
 (how old)
 (when)
 (why)
 (how long)

49.2 Complete the sentences.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1 (How do airplanes fly?) | Do you know <u>how airplanes fly</u> |
| 2 (Where does Susan work?) | I don't know |
| 3 (What did Peter say?) | Do you remember |
| 4 (Why did he go home early?) | I don't know |
| 5 (What time does the meeting begin?) | Do you know |
| 6 (How did the accident happen?) | I don't remember |

49.3 Which is right?

- 1 Do you know what time is it / it is? (Do you know what time it is? is right)
- 2 Why are you / you are going away?
- 3 I don't know where are they / they are going.
- 4 Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
- 5 Where do you want / you want to go for your holidays?
- 6 Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?
- 7 I don't know how far is it / it is from the hotel to the station.

49.4 Write questions with **Do you know if ... ?**

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1 (Have they got a car?) | <u>Do you know if they've got a car?</u> |
| 2 (Are they married?) | Do you know |
| 3 (Does Sue know Bill?) | ..... |
| 4 (Will Gary be here tomorrow?) | ..... |
| 5 (Did he pass his exam?) | ..... |

49.5 Write questions beginning **Do you know ... ?**

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 (What does Laura want?) | <u>Do you know what Laura wants?</u> |
| 2 (Where is Paula?) | Do |
| 3 (Is she working today?) | ..... |
| 4 (What time does she start work?) | ..... |
| 5 (Are the shops open tomorrow?) | ..... |
| 6 (Where do Sarah and Jack live?) | ..... |
| 7 (Did they go to Jane's party?) | ..... |

49.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Do you know why <u>the bus was late</u> | ? |
| 2 Do you know what time | ? |
| 3 Excuse me, can you tell me where | ? |
| 4 I don't know what | ? |
| 5 Do you know if | ? |
| 6 Do you know how much | ? |

She said that ... He told me that ...

A

Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you:

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said:

CLARE



I'm enjoying my new job.

My father isn't well.

am
is } → was

- ☐ Clare said that **she was** enjoying her new job.
- ☐ She said that **her father wasn't** well.

SARAH



We're going to buy a house.

BEN

are → were

- ☐ Sarah and Ben said that **they were** going to buy a house.

PETER



I have to leave early.

My sister has gone to Australia.

have
has } → had

- ☐ Peter said that **he had** to leave early.
- ☐ He said that **his sister had** gone to Australia.

KATE



I can't find a job.

can → could

- ☐ Kate said that **she couldn't** find a job.

STEVE



I'll phone you.

will → would

- ☐ Steve said that **he would** phone me.

RACHEL



I don't like my job.

My son doesn't like school.

do
does } → did

- ☐ Rachel said that **she didn't** like her job.
- ☐ She said that **her son didn't** like school.

MIKE



You look tired.

I feel fine.

YOU

look → looked
feel → felt
etc. etc.
(present) (past)

- ☐ Mike said that **I looked** tired.
- ☐ I said that **I felt** fine.

B

say and tell

say (→ said)

- ☐ He **said** that he was tired.
(not He said me)
- ☐ What did she **say** to you?
(not say you)

We say **he said to me, I said to Ann** etc.
(not 'he said me', 'I said Ann').

tell (→ told)

- ☐ He **told me** that he was tired.
(not He told that)
- ☐ What did she **tell you**?
(not tell to you)

We say **he told me, I told Ann** etc.
(not 'he told to me', 'I told to Ann').

C

You can say:

- ☐ He said **that** he was tired. or He said he was tired. (*without that*)
- ☐ Kate told me **that** she couldn't find a job. or Kate told me she couldn't find a job.

50.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with **He/She/They said (that)** ...

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1  I've lost my watch.
He said <u>he had lost his watch.</u> | 6  I don't feel very well. |
| 2  I'm very busy. | 7  We'll be home late. |
| 3  I can't go to the party. | 8  I've just come back from holiday. |
| 4  I have to go out. | 9  I'm going to buy a guitar. |
| 5  I'm learning Russian. | 10  We haven't got a key. |

50.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.

1  I'm enjoying my new job. CLARE	2  I'm not hungry. EMMA	3  I need it. MIKE
4  I don't want to go. HANNAH	5  You can have it. SUSAN	6  I'll send you a postcard. MARTIN
7  Where's Robert? He's gone home. NICOLA	8  I want to watch TV. DAVID	9  I'm going to the cinema. MARY

- I met Clare last week. She said she was enjoying her new job.
- Emma didn't want anything to eat. She said
- I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder, but he said
- Hannah was invited to the party, but she said
- Susan told me she didn't want the picture. She said
- Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said
- I was looking for Robert. Nicola said
- 'Why did David stay at home?' 'He said
- 'Has Mary gone out?' 'I think so. She said

50.3 Write **say/said** or **tell/told**.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 He <u>said</u> he was tired. | 7 The woman she was a reporter. |
| 2 What did she <u>tell</u> you? | 8 The woman us she was a reporter. |
| 3 Anna she didn't like Peter. | 9 They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't them anything. |
| 4 Jack me that you were ill. | 10 They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't anything. |
| 5 Please don't Dan what happened. | |
| 6 Did Lucy she would be late? | |

work/working go/going do/doing

A

work/go/be etc. (infinitive)

will/can/must etc. + infinitive:

will	☐ Anna will be here soon.	} → Units 27–28
shall	☐ Shall I open the window?	
might	☐ I might phone you later.	} → Unit 29
may	☐ May I sit here?	
can	☐ I can't meet you tomorrow.	} → Unit 30
could	☐ Could you pass the salt, please?	
must	☐ It's late. I must go now.	→ Unit 31
should	☐ You shouldn't work so hard.	→ Unit 32
would	☐ Would you like some coffee?	→ Unit 34

do/does/did + infinitive:

do/does (present simple)	☐ Do you work ?	→ Units 6–7
	☐ They don't work very hard.	
	☐ Helen doesn't know many people.	
	☐ How much does it cost ?	
did (past simple)	☐ What time did the train leave ?	→ Unit 12
	☐ We didn't sleep well.	

B

to work / to go / to be etc. (to + infinitive)

(I'm) going to ...	☐ I'm going to play tennis tomorrow.	→ Unit 26
	☐ What are you going to do ?	
(I) have to ...	☐ I have to go now.	→ Unit 33
	☐ Everybody has to eat .	
(I) want to ...	☐ Do you want to go out?	→ Unit 52
	☐ They don't want to come with us.	
(I) would like to ...	☐ I'd like to talk to you.	→ Unit 34
	☐ Would you like to go out?	
(I) used to ...	☐ Dave used to work in a factory.	→ Unit 36

C

working/going/playing etc.

am/is/are + -ing (present continuous)	☐ Please be quiet. I'm working .	→ Units 3–4, 8, 25
	☐ Tom isn't working today.	
	☐ What time are you going out?	
was/were + -ing (past continuous)	☐ It was raining , so we didn't go out.	→ Units 13–14
	☐ What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday?	

51.1 Complete the sentences. Write: ... **phone Paul** or ... **to phone Paul**.

- 1 I'll phone Paul .
- 2 I'm going to phone Paul .
- 3 Can you Paul?
- 4 Shall I ?
- 5 I'd like
- 6 Do you have ?
- 7 You should
- 8 I want
- 9 I might
- 10 You must

51.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (**work/go** etc.) and sometimes you need **-ing** (**working/going** etc.).

do/doing	get/getting	sleep/sleeping	watch/watching
eat/eating	go/going	stay/staying	wear/wearing
fly/flying	listen/listening	wait/waiting	work/working

- 1 Please be quiet. I'm working .
- 2 I feel tired today. I didn't sleep very well last night.
- 3 What time do you usually up in the morning?
- 4 'Where are you?' 'To the office.'
- 5 Did you TV last night?
- 6 Look at that plane! It's very low.
- 7 You can turn off the radio. I'm not to it.
- 8 They didn't anything because they weren't hungry.
- 9 My friends were for me when I arrived.
- 10 'Does Susan always glasses?' 'No, only for reading.'
- 11 'What are you tonight?' 'I'm at home.'

51.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose from:

the infinitive (**work/go** etc.) or
to ... (to work / to go etc.) or
-ing (working/going etc.)

- 1 Shall I open the window? (open)
- 2 It's late. I have to go now. (go)
- 3 Amanda isn't working this week. She's on holiday. (work)
- 4 I'm tired. I don't want out. (go)
- 5 It might, so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
- 6 What time do you have tomorrow morning? (leave)
- 7 I'm sorry I can't you. (help)
- 8 My brother is a student. He's physics. (study)
- 9 Would you like on a trip round the world? (go)
- 10 When you saw Maria, what was she ? (wear)
- 11 When you go to London, where are you going ? (stay)
- 12 I'm hungry. I must something to eat. (have)
- 13 'Where's Gary?' 'He's a bath.' (have)
- 14 I used a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
- 15 He spoke very quietly. I couldn't him. (hear)
- 16 You don't look well. I don't think you should to work today. (go)
- 17 I don't know what he said. I wasn't to him. (listen)
- 18 I missed the bus and had home. (walk)
- 19 I want what happened. (know) You must me. (tell)
- 20 May I this book? (borrow)

to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

A

verbs + to ... (I want to do)

want	plan	decide	try
hope	expect	offer	forget
need	promise	refuse	learn

+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- ☐ What do you **want to do** this evening?
- ☐ It's not very late. We don't **need to go** home yet.
- ☐ Tina has **decided to sell** her car.
- ☐ You **forgot to switch** off the light when you went out.
- ☐ My brother is **learning to drive**.
- ☐ I **tried to read** my book, but I was too tired.

B

verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

enjoy	stop
mind	finish

suggest

+ -ing (doing / working / being etc.)

- ☐ I **enjoy dancing** (not enjoy to dance)
- ☐ I don't **mind getting** up early.
- ☐ Has it **stopped raining**?
- ☐ Sonia **suggested going** to the cinema.



C

verbs + -ing or to ...

like	love	start	continue
prefer	hate	begin	

+ -ing (doing etc.) or to ... (to do etc.)

- ☐ Do you **like getting** up early? or Do you **like to get** up early?
- ☐ I **prefer travelling** by car. or I **prefer to travel** by car.
- ☐ Anna **loves dancing**. or Anna **loves to dance**.
- ☐ I **hate being** late. or I **hate to be** late.
- ☐ It **started raining**. or It **started to rain**.

D

would like to ... etc.

would like	would love
would prefer	would hate

+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- ☐ Amy **would like to meet** you.
- ☐ I'd **love to go** to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- ☐ 'Would you **like to sit** down?' 'No, I'd **prefer to stand**, thank you.'
- ☐ I like this apartment. I **wouldn't like to move**.
- ☐ I live in a small village. I'd **hate to live** in a big city.

52.1 Put the verb in the right form, **to ...** or **-ing**.

- 1 I enjoy dancing. (dance)
- 2 What do you want to do tonight? (do)
- 3 Bye! I hope you again soon. (see)
- 4 I learnt when I was five years old. (swim)
- 5 Have you finished the kitchen? (clean)
- 6 Where's Anna? I need her something. (ask)
- 7 Do you enjoy other countries? (visit)
- 8 The weather was nice, so I suggested for a walk by the river. (go)
- 9 Where's Ben? He promised here on time. (be)
- 10 I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind (wait)
- 11 What have you decided ? (do)
- 12 Dan was angry and refused to me. (speak)
- 13 I'm tired. I want to bed. (go)
- 14 I was very upset and started (cry)
- 15 I'm trying (work) Please stop (talk)

52.2 Complete the sentences using **to ...** or **-ing**. Use these verbs:

~~go~~ go help lose rain read see send wait watch

- 1 'Have you ever been to Australia?' 'No, but I'd love to go.'
- 2 Amy had a lot to do, so I offered her.
- 3 I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect you.
- 4 Kate has a lot of books. She enjoys
- 5 This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate it.
- 6 Don't forget us a postcard when you're on holiday.
- 7 I'm not going out until it stops
- 8 What shall we do this afternoon? Would you like to the beach?
- 9 When I'm tired in the evenings, I like TV.
- 10 'Shall we go now?' 'No, I'd prefer a few minutes.'

52.3 Complete the answers to the questions.

- 
- 1 Do you usually get up early?
 - 2 Do you ever go to museums?
 - 3 Would you like to go to a museum now?
 - 4 Do you drive a lot?
 - 5 Have you ever been to New York?
 - 6 Do you often travel by train?
 - 7 Shall we walk home or take a taxi?

- 
- Yes, I like to get up early
- Yes, I enjoy
- No, I'm hungry. I'd prefer to a restaurant.
- No, I don't like
- No, but I'd love one day.
- Yes, I enjoy
- I don't mind, but a taxi would be quicker.

52.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use **to ...** or **-ing**.

- 1 I enjoy
- 2 I don't like
- 3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like
- 4 When I'm on holiday, I like
- 5 I don't mind, but
- 6 I wouldn't like

I want you to ... I told you to ...

A

I want you to ...

The woman **wants to go**.The man **doesn't want** the woman **to go**.
He **wants** her **to stay**.

We say:

I want	you somebody Sarah	to do something
--------	--------------------------	-----------------

- ☐ I **want you to be** happy. (*not* I want that you are happy)
- ☐ They didn't **want anybody to know** their secret.
- ☐ Do you **want me to lend** you some money?

We use **would like** in the same way:

- ☐ **Would you like me to lend** you some money?

B

We also use this structure with:

		verb	+	somebody	+	to ...
ask	Sue	asked		a friend	to lend	her some money.
tell	I	told		you	to be	careful.
advise	What do you	advise		me	to do?	
expect	I didn't	expect		them	to be	here.
persuade	We	persuaded		Gary	to come	with us.
teach	I	am teaching		my brother	to swim.	

C

I told you to ... / I told you not to ...

→ Jane **told** me **to wait** for her.→ Paul **told** Sue **not to wait** for him.

D

make and let

After **make** and **let**, we do *not* use **to**:

- ☐ He's very funny. He **makes** me **laugh**. (*not* makes me to laugh)
- ☐ At school our teacher **made** us **work** very hard.
- ☐ I didn't have my phone with me, so Sue **let** me **use** hers. (*not* let me to use)

You can say **Let's ...** (= **Let us**) when you want people to do things with you:

- ☐ Come on! **Let's dance**.
- ☐ 'Do you want to go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** at home.'

53.1 Write sentences beginning **I want you ... / I don't want you ... / Do you want me ... ?**

- (you must come with me) *I want you to come with me.*
- (listen carefully) I want
- (please don't be angry) I don't
- (shall I wait for you?) Do you
- (don't call me tonight)
- (you must meet Sarah)

53.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 DAN YOU	2 YOU	3 BEN YOU	4 LAURA YOU
5 YOU TOM	6 YOU PAUL	7 YOU SUE	8 YOU AMY

- Dan persuaded *me to go to the cinema.*
- I wanted to get to the station. A woman told
- Ben wasn't well. I advised
- Laura had a lot of luggage. She asked
- I was too busy to talk to Tom. I told
- I wanted to make a phone call. Paul let
- Sue is going to call me later. I told
- Amy's mother taught

53.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes **to** is necessary (**to go / to wait** etc.); sometimes **to** is not necessary (**go/wait** etc.).

arrive borrow get ~~go~~ go make repeat tell think wait

- Please stay here. I don't want you *to go* yet.
- I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her it.
- 'Shall we begin?' 'No, let's a few minutes.'
- Are they already here? I expected them much later.
- Kevin's parents didn't want him married.
- I want to stay here. You can't make me with you.
- 'Is that your bike?' 'No, it's John's. He let me it.'
- Rachel can't come to the party. She told me you.
- Would you like a drink? Would you like me some coffee?
- 'Kate doesn't like me.' 'What makes you that?'

I went to the shop to ...

A

Paula wanted a newspaper, so she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop?

To get a newspaper.

She went to the shop **to get** a newspaper.



to ... (to get / to see etc.) tells us *why* a person does something:

- ☐ 'Why are you going out?' **'To buy** some food.'
- ☐ Catherine went to the station **to meet** her friend.
- ☐ Sue turned on the television **to watch** the news.
- ☐ I'd like to go to Spain **to learn** Spanish.

money/time to (do something):

- ☐ We need some **money to buy** food.
- ☐ I haven't got **time to watch** television.

B

to ... and for ...

to + verb

(**to get / to see** etc.)

- ☐ I went to the shop **to get** a newspaper.
(*not for get*)
- ☐ They're going to Brazil **to see** their friends.
- ☐ We need some money **to buy** food.

for + noun

(**for a newspaper / for food** etc.)

- ☐ I went to the shop **for a newspaper**.
- ☐ They're going to Brazil **for a holiday**.
- ☐ We need some money **for food**.

C

wait for ... :

- ☐ Please **wait for** me.
- ☐ Are you **waiting for** the bus?

wait to (do something):

- ☐ Hurry up! I'm **waiting to go**.
- ☐ Are you **waiting to see** the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) **to ... :**

- ☐ The lights are red. You have to **wait for them to change**.
- ☐ Are you **waiting for the doctor to come**?



They're **waiting for the lights to change**.

Exercises

54.1 Write sentences beginning *I went to ...*. Choose from the boxes.

a coffee shop
the chemist

~~the station~~
the market

+

buy some vegetables
meet a friend

get some medicine
~~get a train ticket~~

- 1 *I went to the station to get a train ticket.*
- 2 I went
- 3
- 4

54.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

to get some fresh air
to open this door

to read the newspaper
to see who it was

to wake him up
~~to watch the news~~

- 1 I turned on the TV *to watch the news*
- 2 Alice sat down in an armchair
- 3 Do I need a key
- 4 I went for a walk by the river
- 5 I knocked on the door of David's room
- 6 The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window

54.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use *to ...*.

- 1 I went to the shop *to get a newspaper*
- 2 I'm very busy. I don't have time
- 3 I called Amy
- 4 I'm going out
- 5 I borrowed some money

54.4 Write *to* or *for*.

- 1 I went out *to* get some bread.
- 2 We went to a restaurant have dinner.
- 3 Robert wants to go to university study economics.
- 4 I'm going to London an interview next week.
- 5 I'm going to London visit some friends of mine.
- 6 Do you have time a cup of coffee?
- 7 I got up late this morning. I didn't have time wash.
- 8 Everybody needs money live.
- 9 We didn't have any money a taxi, so we walked home.
- 10 The office is very small. There's space only a desk and chair.
- 11 A: Excuse me, are you waiting be served?
B: No, I'm already being served, thanks.

54.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from:

it / to arrive you / tell me ~~them / change~~ the film / begin

- 1 We stopped at the lights and waited *for them to change*
- 2 I sat down in the cinema and waited
- 3 We called an ambulance and waited
- 4 'Do you know what to do?' 'No, I'm waiting

go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing

A

go to ... (go to work / go to London / go to a concert etc.)

- ☐ What time do you usually **go to work**?
- ☐ I'm **going to China** next week.
- ☐ Sophie didn't want to **go to the concert**.
- ☐ 'Where's Tom?' 'He's **gone to bed**.'
- ☐ I **went to the dentist** yesterday.

go to

go to sleep = start to sleep:

- ☐ I was very tired and **went to sleep** quickly.

go home (without to)

- ☐ I'm **going home** now. (*not* going to home)

B

go on ...

go on

holiday
a trip
a tour
a cruise
strike

- ☐ We're **going on holiday** next week.
- ☐ Children often **go on school trips**.
- ☐ Workers at the airport have **gone on strike**.
(= they are refusing to work)

C

go for ...

go (somewhere) for

a walk
a run
a swim
a drink
a meal

- ☐ 'Where's Emma?' 'She's **gone for a walk**'
- ☐ Do you **go for a run** every morning?
- ☐ The water looks nice. I'm **going for a swim**.
- ☐ I met Chris in town, so we **went for coffee**.
- ☐ Shall we **go out for a meal**? I know a good restaurant.

D

go + -ing

We use **go + -ing** for many sports (**swimming** / **skiing** etc.) and also **shopping**.

I **go**
he is **going**
we **went**
they have **gone**
she wants to **go**

shopping
swimming
fishing
sailing
skiing
jogging etc.

- ☐ Are you **going shopping** this afternoon?
- ☐ It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming**.
(or Let's **go for a swim**.)
- ☐ Richard has a small boat and he often **goes sailing**.
- ☐ I **went jogging** before breakfast this morning.



55.1 Write **to/on/for** where necessary.

- I'm going **to** China next week.
- Richard often goes **-** sailing. (*no preposition*)
- Sue went **-** Mexico last year.
- Jack goes **-** jogging every morning.
- I'm going out **-** a walk. Do you want to come?
- I'm tired because I went **-** bed very late last night.
- Mark is going **-** holiday **-** Italy next week.
- The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went **-** a swim.
- The taxi drivers went **-** strike when I was in New York.
- Let's go **-** the cinema this evening.
- It's late. I have to go **-** home now.
- Would you like to go **-** a tour of the city?
- Shall we go out **-** dinner this evening?
- My parents are going **-** a cruise this summer.

55.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use **go/goes/going/went + -ing**.

① often	② last Saturday	③ every day	④ next month	⑤ later	⑥ yesterday
					
RICHARD	EMILY	DAN	JESSICA	PETER	SARAH

- Richard has a boat. He often **goes sailing**.
- Last Saturday Emily went **-**.
- Dan **-** every day.
- Jessica is going on holiday next month. She is **-**.
- Peter is going out later. He has to **-**.
- Sarah **-** after work yesterday.

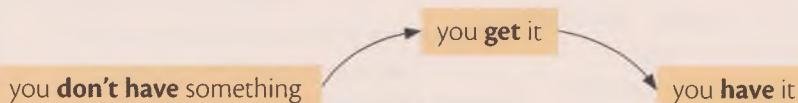
55.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box. Use **to/on/for** if necessary.

a swim **holiday** **Portugal** **shopping** **sleep**
a walk **home** **riding** **skiing** **university**

- The water looks nice. Let's go **for a swim**.
- After leaving school, Tina went **-** where she studied psychology.
- I'm going **-** now. I have to buy a few things.
- I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went **-**.
- I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went **-** early.
- We live near the mountains. In winter we go **-** most weekends.
- Robert has got a horse. He goes **-** a lot.
- The weather is nice. Shall we go **-** along the river?
- A: Are you going **-** soon?
 B: Yes, next month. We're going **-**. We've never been there before.

get

A **get** + *noun* = receive, buy, find etc.

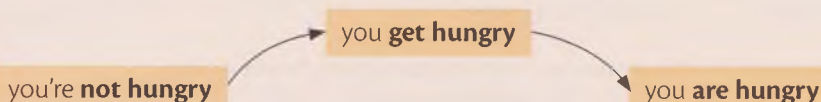


- ☐ I **got** an email from Sam this morning. (= receive)
- ☐ I like your sweater. Where did you **get** it? (= buy)
- ☐ It's hard to **get** a job at the moment? (= find)
- ☐ 'Is Lisa here?' 'Yes, I'll **get** her for you.'

also **get a bus / a train / a taxi** (= take a bus/train etc.):

- ☐ 'Did you walk here?' 'No, I **got** the bus.'

B **get hungry / get cold / get tired** etc. (**get** + *adjective*) = become:



- ☐ If you don't eat, you **get hungry**.
- ☐ Drink your coffee. It's **getting cold**.
- ☐ I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she **gets better** soon.
- ☐ It was raining very hard. We didn't have an umbrella, so we **got** very **wet**.

also **get married**

get dressed (= put your clothes on)

get lost (= lose your way)

- ☐ Nicola and Frank are **getting married** soon.
- ☐ I got up and **got dressed** quickly.
- ☐ We didn't have a map, so we **got lost**.

C **get to** a place = arrive:

- ☐ I usually **get to work** before 8.30. (= arrive at work)
- ☐ We left London at 10 o'clock and **got to Manchester** at 12.45.

get here/there (without **to**):

- ☐ How did you **get here**? By bus?

get home (without **to**):

- ☐ What time did you **get home** last night?



D **get in/out/on/off**



get in (a car)



get out (of a car)



get on

(a bus / a train / a plane)



get off

- ☐ Kate **got in the car** and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got **into** the car and ...)
- ☐ A car stopped and a man **got out**. (but A man got out **of the car**.)
- ☐ We **got on the bus** outside the hotel and **got off** in Church Street.

Exercises

56.1 Complete these sentences. Use **get/gets** and choose from the box.

a doctor a lot of rain a taxi ~~my email~~ the job
a good salary a new laptop a ticket some milk your boots

- Did you get my email? I sent it a week ago.
- Where did you? They're very nice.
- Quick! This man is ill. We need to
- I don't want to walk home. Let's
- Tom has an interview tomorrow. I hope he
- When you go to the shop, can you?
- 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can
- Helen has got a well-paid job. She
- The weather is horrible here in winter. We
- I'm going to The one I have is too slow.

56.2 Complete these sentences. Use **getting** + these words:

~~cold~~ dark late married ready

- Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
- Turn on the light. It's
- 'I'm next week.' 'Really? Congratulations!'
- 'Where's Karen?' 'She's to go out.'
- It's It's time to go home.

56.3 Complete the sentences. Use **get/gets/got** + these words:

angry better ~~hungry~~ lost married old wet

- If you don't eat, you get hungry.
- Don't go out in the rain. You'll
- My brother last year. His wife's name is Sarah.
- Mark is always very calm. He never
- We tried to find the hotel, but we
- Everybody wants to stay young, but we all
- Yesterday the weather wasn't so good at first, but it during the day.

56.4 Write sentences with **I left ...** and **got to ...**.

- home / 7.30 → work / 8.15
I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15.
- London / 10.15 → Bristol / 11.45
I left London at 10.15 and
- the party / 11.15 → home / midnight
.....
- Write a sentence about yourself.
I left

56.5 Write **got in / got out of / got on / got off**.

- Kate got in the car and drove away.
- I the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
- Isabel the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
- I made a stupid mistake. I the wrong train.

do and make

A

Do is a general word for actions:

- ☐ What are you **doing** this evening? (*not* What are you making?)
- ☐ 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll **do** it.'
- ☐ Rachel's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- ☐ I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

What do you do? = What's your job?:

- ☐ 'What do you **do**?' 'I work in a bank.'

B

Make = produce/create. For example:She's **making** coffee.He has **made** a cake.They **make** umbrellas.It was **made** in China.Compare **do** and **make**:

- ☐ I **did** a lot yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters and I **made** a cake.
- ☐ A: What do you **do** in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies?
B: I **make** clothes. I **make** dresses and jackets. I also **make** toys for my children.

C

Expressions with **do****do**

an exam / a test
a course
homework
housework
somebody a favour
an exercise

- ☐ I'm **doing my driving test** next week.
- ☐ John has just **done a training course**.
- ☐ Our children have to **do a lot of homework**.
- ☐ I hate **doing housework**, especially cleaning.
- ☐ Sue, could you **do me a favour**?
- ☐ I go for a run and **do exercises** every morning.

also **do the shopping** / **do the washing** / **do the washing-up** / **do the ironing** / **do the cooking** etc.:

- ☐ I **did the washing** but I didn't **do the shopping**.

D

Expressions with **make****make**

a mistake
an appointment
a phone call
a list
a noise
a bed

- ☐ I'm sorry, I **made a mistake**.
- ☐ I need to **make an appointment** to see the doctor.
- ☐ Excuse me, I have to **make a phone call**.
- ☐ Have you **made a shopping list**?
- ☐ It's late. Don't **make a noise**.
- ☐ Sometimes I forget to **make my bed** in the morning.

We say **make a film** *but* **take a photo** / **take a picture**:

- ☐ When was **this film made**?
- but* ☐ When was **this photo taken**?

57.1 Write **make/making/made** or **do/doing/did/done**.

- 1 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll do it.'
- 2 What did you at the weekend? Did you go away?
- 3 Do you know how to bread?
- 4 Paper is from wood.
- 5 Richard didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and nothing.
- 6 'What do you?' 'I'm a doctor.'
- 7 I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you it?
- 8 'What do they in that factory?' 'Shoes.'
- 9 I'm some coffee. Would you like some?
- 10 Why are you angry with me? I didn't anything wrong.
- 11 'What are you tomorrow afternoon?' 'I'm working.'

57.2 What are these people doing?



- 1 He's making a cake.
- 2 They
- 3 He
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10

57.3 Write **make** or **do** in the correct form.

- 1 I hate doing housework, especially cleaning.
- 2 Why do you always the same mistake?
- 3 'Can you me a favour?' 'It depends what it is.'
- 4 'Have you your homework?' 'Not yet.'
- 5 I need to see the dentist, but I haven't an appointment.
- 6 I'm a course in photography at the moment. It's very good.
- 7 The last time I an exam was ten years ago.
- 8 How many phone calls did you yesterday?
- 9 When you've finished Exercise 1, you can Exercise 2.
- 10 There's something wrong with the car. The engine is a strange noise.
- 11 It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I've ever
- 12 Let's a list of all the things we have to today.

have

A

have and have got

I **have** (something) or I **'ve got** (something) = it is mine:

- ☐ I **have** a new car. or I **'ve got** a new car.
- ☐ Sue **has** long hair. or Sue **has got** long hair.
- ☐ **Do** they **have** any children? or **Have** they **got** any children?
- ☐ Tom **doesn't have** a job. or Tom **hasn't got** a job.
- ☐ How much time **do** you **have**? or How much time **have** you **got**?

also

I have	a headache / (a) toothache / a pain (in my leg etc.)
I 've got	a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu etc.

- ☐ I **have** a headache. or I **'ve got** a headache.
- ☐ **Do** you **have** a cold? or **Have** you **got** a cold?

The past is I **had** (without **got**) / I **didn't have** / **Did** you **have**? etc. :

- ☐ When I first met Sue, she **had** short hair.
- ☐ He **didn't have** any money because he **didn't have** a job.
- ☐ **Did** you **have** enough time to do everything you wanted?

B

have breakfast / have a shower etc.

In these expressions **have** = eat/drink/take etc. You can't use 'have got'.

have	breakfast / lunch / dinner	☐ 'Where's Lisa?' 'She's having lunch.'
	a meal / a sandwich / a pizza etc.	☐ I don't usually have breakfast.
	a cup of coffee / a glass of milk etc.	☐ I had three cups of coffee this morning.
	something to eat/drink	☐ ' Have a biscuit!' 'Oh, thank you.'

We also use **have** (not have got) in these expressions:

have	a bath / a shower	☐ I had a shower this morning.
	a rest / a holiday / a party	☐ We're having a party next week. You must come.
	a nice time / a good trip / fun etc.	☐ Enjoy your holiday. Have a nice time!
	a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.)	☐ Did you have a good time in Tokyo?
	a dream / an accident	☐ Sandra has just had a baby.
	a baby	☐ Can I have a look at your magazine?
	a look (at something)	

C

Compare:

Have or have got

- ☐ I **have** / I **'ve got** a new shower. It's very good.

Have (not have got)

- ☐ I **have** a shower every morning.
(not I **'ve got** a shower every morning)
- ☐ A: Where's Paul?
B: He's **having** a shower.
(= he's washing now)



58.1 Write the correct form of **have** or **have got**.

- I didn't have time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
- ' Has Lisa got (OR Does Lisa have) a car?' 'No, she can't drive.' (Lisa / have?)
- He can't open the door. a key. (he / not / have)
- a cold last week. He's better now. (Gary / have)
- What's wrong? a headache? (you / have?)
- We wanted to go by taxi, but enough money. (we / not / have)
- Laura is very busy. much free time. (she / not / have)
- any problems when you were on holiday? (you / have?)

58.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:

a bath ~~a breakfast~~ a cup of tea dinner a good time a rest



- They're having breakfast.
- She
- He
- They
-
-

58.3 What do you say in these situations? Use **have**.

- Emily is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes?
Have a nice holiday!
- You meet Clare at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about the flight.
Did you have a good flight?
- Tom is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?
.....
- It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.
.....
- Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.
.....
- Rachel is going out this evening. What do you say to her before she goes?
.....
- Mark has just returned from holiday. Ask him about his holiday.
.....

58.4 Complete the sentences. Use **have/had** and choose from the list.

an accident a glass of water a look a walk ~~a party~~ something to eat

- We had a party a few weeks ago. We invited 50 people.
- 'Shall we?' 'No, I'm not hungry.'
- I was thirsty, so I
- I like to get up early and before breakfast.
- Tina is a very good driver. She has never
- There's something wrong with the engine of my car. Can you at it?

I/me he/him they/them etc.

A

People



subject	I	we	you	he	she	they
object	me	us	you	him	her	them

subject

I I know Tom.
 we We know Tom.
 you You know Tom.
 he He knows Tom.
 she She knows Tom.
 they They know Tom.

object

Tom knows me.
 Tom knows us.
 Tom knows you.
 Tom knows him.
 Tom knows her.
 Tom knows them.

B

Things



subject	it
object	it



they
them

- ☐ I don't want **this book**. You can have **it**.
- ☐ I don't want **these books**. You can have **them**.
- ☐ Kate never drinks **milk**. She doesn't like **it**.
- ☐ I never go to **parties**. I don't like **them**.

C

We use **me/her/them** etc. (object) after a *preposition* (**for/to/with** etc.):

- ☐ This letter isn't **for me**. It's **for you**.
- ☐ Who is that woman? Why are you looking **at her**?
- ☐ We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come **with us**?
- ☐ Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go **with them**?
- ☐ 'Where's the newspaper?' 'You're sitting **on it**.'

give it/them to ... :

- ☐ I want that book. Please give **it to me**.
- ☐ Robert needs these books. Can you give **them to him**, please?

59.1 Complete the sentences with **him/her/them**.

- 1 I don't know those girls. Do you know them ?
- 2 I don't know that man. Do you know _____ ?
- 3 I don't know those people. Do you know _____ ?
- 4 I don't know David's wife. Do you know _____ ?
- 5 I don't know Mr Stevens. Do you know _____ ?
- 6 I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know _____ ?
- 7 I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know _____ ?

59.2 Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/you/she/her** etc.

- 1 I want to see **her**, but she doesn't want to see me .
[]
- 2 **They** want to see **me**, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
- 3 **She** wants to see **him**, but _____ doesn't want to see _____ .
- 4 **We** want to see **them**, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
- 5 **He** wants to see **us**, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
- 6 **They** want to see **her**, but _____ doesn't want to see _____ .
- 7 I want to see **them**, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
- 8 **You** want to see **her**, but _____ doesn't want to see _____ .

59.3 Write sentences beginning **I like ... , I don't like ...** or **Do you like ... ?**

- 1 I don't eat tomatoes. I don't like them .
- 2 George is a very nice man. I like _____ .
- 3 This jacket isn't very nice. I don't _____ .
- 4 This is my new car. Do _____ ?
- 5 Mrs Clark is not very friendly. I _____ .
- 6 These are my new shoes. _____ ?

59.4 Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/he/him** etc.

- 1 Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her ?
- 2 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I work with _____ .'
- 3 Where are the tickets? I can't find _____ .
- 4 I can't find my keys. Where are _____ ?
- 5 We're going out. You can come with _____ .
- 6 I've got a new motorbike. Do you want to see _____ ?
- 7 Maria likes music. _____ plays the piano.
- 8 I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of _____ .
- 9 I'm talking to you. Please listen to _____ .
- 10 Where is Anna? I want to talk to _____ .
- 11 You can have these CDs. I don't want _____ .
- 12 My brother has a new job, but _____ doesn't like _____ very much.

59.5 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I need that book. Can you give it to me ?
- 2 He wants the key. Can you give _____ ?
- 3 She wants the keys. Can you _____ ?
- 4 I need my bag. Can you _____ ?
- 5 They want the money. Can you _____ ?
- 6 We want the pictures. Can you _____ ?

my/his/their etc.

A



I → **my**
 we → **our**
 you → **your**
 he → **his**
 she → **her**
 they → **their**

I like **my** house.
 We like **our** house.
 You like **your** house.
 He likes **his** house.
 She likes **her** house.
 They like **their** house.

it → **its**

Oxford (= **it**) is famous for **its** university.

We use **my/your/his** etc. + *noun*:

my hands **his** new car **her** parents
our clothes **your** best friend **their** room

B

his/her/their

AMY



her car
 (= Amy's car)



her husband
 (= Amy's husband)



her children
 (= Amy's children)



ANDY



his bike



his sister



his parents

MR AND
MRS LEE

their son



their daughter



their children



C

its and it's

itsOxford is famous for **its** university.**it's** (= it is)I like Oxford. **It's** a nice place. (= It is a nice place.)

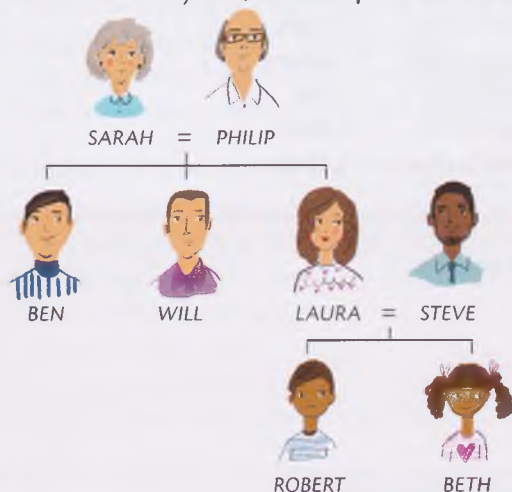
60.1 Complete the sentences in the same way.

- I'm going to wash my hands.
- She's going to wash hands.
- We're going to wash
- He's going to wash
- They're going to wash
- Are you going to wash

60.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

- He lives with his parents.
- They live with parents.
- We parents.
- Martina lives
- I parents.
- John
- Do you live
- Most children

60.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with **his/her/their**.



- I saw Sarah with her husband, Philip.
- I saw Laura and Steve with children.
- I saw Steve with wife, Laura.
- I saw Ben with brother, Will.
- I saw Laura with brother, Will.
- I saw Sarah and Philip with son, Will.
- I saw Laura with parents.
- I saw Beth and Robert with parents.

60.4 Write **my/our/your/his/her/their/its**.

- Do you like your job?
- I know Mr Watson, but I don't know wife.
- Alice and Tom live in London. son lives in Australia.
- We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all friends.
- Anna is going out with friends this evening.
- I like tennis. It's favourite sport.
- 'Is that car?' 'No, I don't have a car.'
- I want to contact Maria. Do you know number?
- Do you think most people are happy in jobs?
- I'm going to wash hair before I go out.
- This is a beautiful tree. leaves are a beautiful colour.
- John has a brother and a sister. brother is 25, and sister is 21.

60.5 Complete the sentences. Use **my/his/their** etc. with these words:

coat homework house husband job key name

- James doesn't enjoy his job. It's not very interesting.
- I can't get in. I don't have
- Sally is married. works in a bank.
- Please take off and sit down.
- 'What are the children doing?' 'They're doing
- 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, but I don't know
- We live in Barton Street. is at the end on the left.

Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.

A



I	→	my	→	mine
we	→	our	→	ours
you	→	your	→	yours
he	→	his	→	his
she	→	her	→	hers
they	→	their	→	theirs

It's my money.	It's mine .
It's our money.	It's ours .
It's your money.	It's yours .
It's his money.	It's his .
It's her money.	It's hers .
It's their money.	It's theirs .

B

We use **my/your** etc. + *noun* (**my hands** / **your book** etc.):

- ☐ **My hands** are cold.
- ☐ Is this **your book**?
- ☐ Helen gave me **her umbrella**.
- ☐ It's **their problem**, not **our problem**.

We use **mine/yours** etc. without a noun:

- ☐ Is this book **mine** or **yours**? (= my book or your book)
- ☐ I didn't have an umbrella, so Sarah gave me **hers**. (= her umbrella)
- ☐ It's their problem, not **ours**. (= not our problem)
- ☐ We went in our car, and they went in **theirs**. (= their car)

You can use **his** with or without a noun:

- ☐ 'Is this **his camera** or **hers**?' 'It's **his**.'

C

a friend **of mine** / a friend **of his** / some friends **of yours** etc.

- ☐ I went out to meet a friend **of mine**. (*not* a friend of me)
- ☐ Tom was in the restaurant with a friend **of his**. (*not* a friend of him)
- ☐ Are those people friends **of yours**? (*not* friends of you)

D

Whose ... ?

- ☐ **Whose phone** is this? (= Is it your phone? his phone? my phone? etc.)

You can use **whose** with or without a noun:

- ☐ **Whose money** is this? } It's mine.
- ☐ **Whose** is this? }
- ☐ **Whose shoes** are these? } They're John's.
- ☐ **Whose** are these? }



61.1 Complete the sentences with **mine/yours** etc.

- 1 It's your money. It's yours.
- 2 It's my bag. It's
- 3 It's our car. It's
- 4 They're her shoes. They're
- 5 It's their house. It's
- 6 They're your books. They're
- 7 They're my glasses. They're
- 8 It's his coat. It's

61.2 Choose the right word.

- 1 It's their/theirs problem, not our/ours. (their and ours are right)
- 2 This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
- 3 That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
- 4 Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
- 5 Catherine is going out with her/hers friends this evening.
- 6 My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
- 7 They have two children, but I don't know their/theirs names.
- 8 Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours isn't working.

61.3 Complete these sentences. Use **friend(s) of mine/yours** etc.

- 1 I went to the cinema with a friend of mine.
- 2 They went on holiday with some friends of theirs.
- 3 She's going out with a friend
- 4 We had dinner with some
- 5 I played tennis with a
- 6 Tom is going to meet a
- 7 Do you know those people? Are they

61.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?

①

Whose car is this?

It's theirs.

②

is this?

It's

③

these?

They

④

...?

...

⑤

... money?

...

⑥

...?

...

A

I etc.
(→ Unit 59)me etc.
(→ Unit 59)my etc.
(→ Unit 60)mine etc.
(→ Unit 61)

	I know Tom.	Tom knows me .	It's my car.	It's mine .
	We know Tom.	Tom knows us .	It's our car.	It's ours .
	You know Tom.	Tom knows you .	It's your car.	It's yours .
	He knows Tom.	Tom knows him .	It's his car.	It's his .
	She knows Tom.	Tom knows her .	It's her car.	It's hers .
	They know Tom.	Tom knows them .	It's their car.	It's theirs .

B

Study these examples:

- ☐ 'Do **you** know that man?' 'Yes, I know **him**, but I can't remember **his name**.'
- ☐ **She** was very pleased because **we** invited **her** to stay with **us** at **our house**.
- ☐ A: Where are the children? Have **you** seen them?
B: Yes, **they** are playing with **their friends** in the park.
- ☐ That's **my pen**. Can **you** give it to **me**, please?
- ☐ 'Is this **your umbrella**?' 'No, it's **yours**.'
- ☐ **He** didn't have an umbrella, so **she** gave **him hers**. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- ☐ I'm going out with a friend of **mine** this evening. (not a friend of me)

62.1 Answer the questions in the same way.



Yes, I know him, but I can't
remember his name.



Yes, I know but I can't
remember



Yes, I, but
I names.



Yes, I, but
.....

62.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

- 1 We invited her to stay with us at our house.
- 2 He invited us to stay with at his house.
- 3 They invited me to stay with house.
- 4 I invited them to stay house.
- 5 She invited us to stay house.
- 6 Did you invite him house?

62.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

- 1 I gave him my phone number, and he gave me his.
- 2 I gave her my phone number, and she gave me
- 3 He gave me his phone number, and I gave
- 4 We gave them phone number, and they gave
- 5 She gave him phone number, and he gave
- 6 You gave us phone number, and we gave
- 7 They gave you phone number, and you gave

62.4 Write **him/her/yours** etc.

- 1 Where's Amanda? Have you seen her ?
- 2 Where are my keys? Where did I put ?
- 3 This book belongs to Ben. Can you give it to ?
- 4 We don't see neighbours much. They're not at home very often.
- 5 'I can't find my phone. Can I use ?' 'Yes, of course.'
- 6 We're going to the cinema. Why don't you come with ?
- 7 Did your sister pass exams?
- 8 Some people talk about work all the time.
- 9 Last night I went out for a meal with a friend of

myself/yourself/themselves etc.

A

He's looking at **himself**.Help **yourself**!They're enjoying **themselves**.

I	→	me	→	myself
he	→	him	→	himself
she	→	her	→	herself
you	→	you	→	yourself yourselves
we	→	us	→	ourselves
they	→	them	→	themselves

- ☐ I looked at **myself** in the mirror.
- ☐ **He** cut **himself** with a knife.
- ☐ **She** fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt **herself**.
- ☐ Please help **yourself**. (*one person*)
- ☐ Please help **yourselves**. (*two or more people*)
- ☐ We had a good holiday. **We** enjoyed **ourselves**.
- ☐ They had a nice time. **They** enjoyed **themselves**.

B

Compare:

me/him/them etc.



She is looking at **him**.

different people



- ☐ You never talk to **me**.
- ☐ I didn't pay for **them**.
- ☐ I'm sorry. Did I hurt **you**?

myself/himself/themselves etc.



He is looking at **himself**.

the same person



- ☐ Sometimes I talk to **myself**.
- ☐ They paid for **themselves**.
- ☐ Be careful. Don't hurt **yourself**.

C

by myself / by yourself etc. = alone:

- ☐ I went on holiday **by myself**. (= I went alone)
- ☐ 'Was she with friends?' 'No, she was **by herself**'

D

each other

- ☐ Kate and Helen are good friends. They know **each other** well. (= Kate knows Helen / Helen knows Kate)
- ☐ Paul and I live near **each other**. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare **each other** and **-selves**:

- ☐ James and Sue looked at **each other**.
(= he looked at her, she looked at him)



- ☐ James and Sue looked at **themselves**.
(= he looked at himself, she looked at herself)

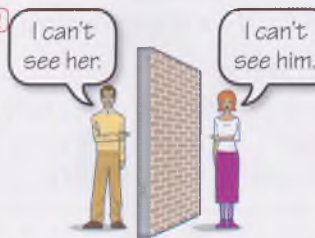
63.1 Complete the sentences with **myself/yourself** etc.

- He looked at himself in the mirror.
- I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with
- Karen had a good time in Australia. She enjoyed
- My friends had a good time in Australia. They enjoyed
- I picked up a very hot plate and burnt
- He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about
- I want to know more about you. Tell me about (one person)
- Goodbye! Have a good trip and take care of! (two people)

63.2 Write sentences with **by myself / by yourself** etc.

- I went on holiday alone. I went on holiday by myself.
- When I saw him, he was alone. When I saw him, he
- Don't go out alone. Don't
- I went to the cinema alone. I
- My sister lives alone. My sister
- Many people live alone. Many people

63.3 Write sentences with **each other**.

1  I like her. I like him. <u>They like each other.</u>	2  I can't see her. I can't see him. They can't	3  I call her a lot. I call him a lot. They
4  I don't know him. I don't know him. 	5  I'm sitting next to him. I'm sitting next to her. 	6  I gave her a present. I gave her a present.

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

each other or **ourselves/yourself/themselves** or **us/you/them**

- Paul and I live near each other.
- Who are those people? Do you know them?
- You can help Tom, and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help
- There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help
- We didn't go to Emily's party. She didn't invite
- When we go on holiday, we always enjoy
- Helen and Jane were at school together, but they never see now.
- Karen and I are very good friends. We've known for a long time.
- 'Did you see Sam and Laura at the party?' 'Yes, but I didn't speak to!'
- Many people talk to when they're alone.

-s (Kate's camera / my brother's car etc.)

A



KATE

Kate's camera
(her camera)



MY BROTHER

my brother's car
(his car)



the manager's office
(his or her office)

We normally use **-s** for people:

- ☐ I stayed at **my sister's** house. (not the house of my sister)
- ☐ Have you met **Mr Black's** wife? (not the wife of Mr Black)
- ☐ Are you going to **James's** party?
- ☐ Paul is a **man's** name. Paula is a **woman's** name.

You can use **-s** without a noun after it:

- ☐ Sophie's hair is longer than **Kate's**. (= Kate's hair)
- ☐ 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's **my mother's**.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- ☐ 'Where were you last night?' 'I was at **Paul's**.' (= Paul's house)

B

friend's and friends'

my **friend's** house = one friend
(= his house or her house)

We write **'s** after

friend/student/mother etc. (singular):

- my mother's car (one mother)
- my father's car (one father)



my **friends'** house = two or more friends
(= their house)

We write **'** after

friends/students/parents etc. (plural):

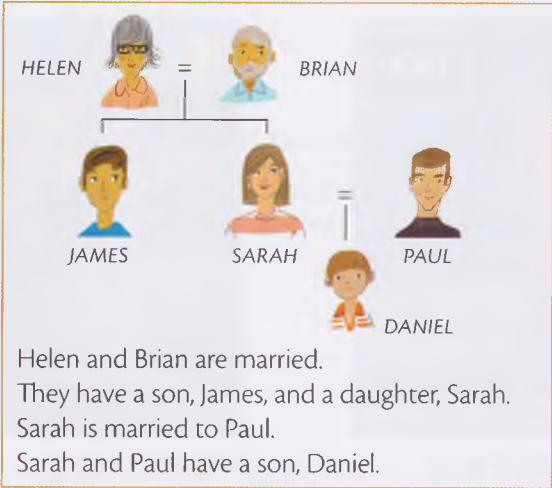
- my parents' car (two parents)

C

We use **of** ... for things, places etc.:

- ☐ Look at the roof **of that building**. (not that building's roof)
- ☐ We didn't see the beginning **of the film**. (not the film's beginning)
- ☐ What's the name **of this village**?
- ☐ Do you know the cause **of the problem**?
- ☐ You can sit in the back **of the car**.
- ☐ Madrid is the capital **of Spain**.

64.1 Look at the family tree. Complete the sentences about the people in the family.



- 1 Brian is Helen's husband.
- 2 Sarah is Daniel's mother.
- 3 Helen is _____ wife.
- 4 James is Sarah's _____.
- 5 James is _____ uncle.
- 6 Sarah is _____ wife.
- 7 Helen is Daniel's _____.
- 8 Sarah is James's _____.
- 9 Paul is _____ husband.
- 10 Paul is Daniel's _____.
- 11 Daniel is _____ nephew.

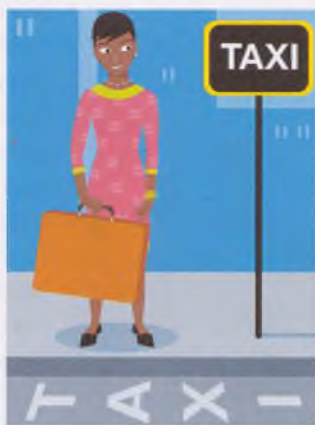
64.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.



64.3 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

- 1 I stayed at the house of my sister. my sister's house
- 2 What is the name of this village? OK
- 3 Do you like the colour of this coat? _____
- 4 Do you have the phone number of Simon? _____
- 5 The job of my brother is very interesting. _____
- 6 Write your name at the top of the page. _____
- 7 For me, the morning is the best part of the day. _____
- 8 The favourite colour of Paula is blue. _____
- 9 When is the birthday of your mother? _____
- 10 The house of my parents isn't very big. _____
- 11 The walls of this house are very thin. _____
- 12 The car stopped at the end of the street. _____
- 13 Are you going to the party of Silvia next week? _____
- 14 The manager of the hotel is not here at the moment _____

A

He's got **a** camera.She's waiting for **a** taxi.It's **a** beautiful day.**a** ... = one thing or person:

- ☐ Rachel works in **a** bank. (*not* in bank)
- ☐ Can I ask **a** question? (*not* ask question)
- ☐ I don't have **a** job at the moment.
- ☐ There's **a** woman at the bus stop.

B

an (*not* a) before **a/e/i/o/u**:

- ☐ Do you want **an** apple or **a** banana?
- ☐ I'm going to buy **a** hat and **an** umbrella.
- ☐ There was **an** interesting programme on TV last night.

also **an** hour (**h** is not pronounced: *an* ~~h~~our)but **a** university (pronounced *yuniversity*)**a** European country (pronounced *yuropean*)**another** (= **an** + **other**) is one word:

- ☐ Can I have **another** cup of coffee?

C

We use **a/an** ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:

- ☐ The sun is **a** star.
- ☐ Football is **a** game.
- ☐ Dallas is **a** city in Texas.
- ☐ A mouse is **an** animal. It's **a** small animal.
- ☐ Joe is **a** very nice person.

We use **a/an** ... for jobs etc.:

- ☐ A: What's your job?
- B: I'm **a** dentist. (*not* I'm dentist)
- ☐ 'What does Mark do?' 'He's **an** engineer.'
- ☐ Would you like to be **a** teacher?
- ☐ Beethoven was **a** composer.
- ☐ Picasso was **a** famous painter.
- ☐ Are you **a** student?



65.1 Write **a** or **an**.

- 1 an old book
- 2 window
- 3 horse
- 4 airport
- 5 new airport
- 6 organisation
- 7 university
- 8 hour
- 9 economic problem

65.2 What are these things? Choose from the box.

~~bird~~
flower

fruit
game

mountain
planet

river
tool

musical instrument
vegetable

- 1 A duck is a bird
- 2 A carrot is
- 3 Tennis is
- 4 A hammer is
- 5 Everest is
- 6 Saturn is
- 7 A banana is
- 8 The Amazon is
- 9 A rose is
- 10 A trumpet is

65.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and complete the sentences.

architect
electrician

~~dentist~~
nurse

shop assistant
taxi driver

photographer



- 1 She's a dentist.
- 2 He's
- 3 She
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8 And you? I'm

65.4 Write sentences. Choose from the two boxes. Use **a/an** where necessary.

~~I want to ask you~~
Tom never wears
I can't ride
My brother is

Rebecca works in
Jane wants to learn
Mike lives in
This evening I'm going to

+

old house
party
bookshop
hat

artist
~~question~~
foreign language
bike

- 1 I want to ask you a question.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)

A

The plural of a noun is usually -s:

singular (= one) → plural (= two or more)

a flower → some **flowers**a train → two **trains**one week → a few **weeks**a nice place → some nice **places**this student → these **students**

a flower

some **flowers**

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

-s / -sh / -ch / -x → -es

bus → buses dish → dishes

church → churches box → boxes

also potato → potatoes tomato → tomatoes

-y → -ies

baby → babies dictionary → dictionaries party → parties

but -ay / -ey / -oy → -ys

day → days monkey → monkeys boy → boys

-f / -fe → -ves

shelf → shelves knife → knives wife → wives

B

These things are plural:



scissors



glasses



trousers



jeans



shorts



tights



pyjamas

☐ Do you wear **glasses**?☐ Where **are** the **scissors**? I need **them**.You can also say **a pair of scissors** / **a pair of trousers** / **a pair of pyjamas** etc.:☐ I need **a new pair of jeans**. or I need **some new jeans**. (not a new jeans)

C

Some plurals do *not* end in -s:this **man** → these **men**one **foot** → two **feet**that **sheep** → those **sheep**a **woman** → some **women**a **tooth** → all my **teeth**a **fish** → a lot of **fish**a **child** → many **children**a **mouse** → some **mice**also a **person** → **two people** / **some people** / **a lot of people** etc.:☐ **She's** a nice **person**.but ☐ **They are** nice **people**. (not nice persons)

D

People is plural (= they), so we say **people are** / **people have** etc.:☐ **A lot of people speak** English. (not speaks)☐ I like **the people** here. **They are** very friendly.**Police** is plural:☐ **The police want** to talk to anybody who saw the accident. (not The police wants)

66.1 Write the plural.

- | | | | | | |
|----------|----------------|------------|-------|------------|-------|
| 1 flower | <u>flowers</u> | 5 umbrella | ..... | 9 family | ..... |
| 2 boat | ..... | 6 address | ..... | 10 foot | ..... |
| 3 woman | ..... | 7 knife | ..... | 11 holiday | ..... |
| 4 city | ..... | 8 sandwich | ..... | 12 potato | ..... |

66.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 There are a lot of <u>sheep</u> in the field. | 4 Lucy has two |
| 2 Gary is cleaning his | 5 There are a lot of in the river. |
| 3 There are three at the bus stop. | 6 The are falling from the tree. |

66.3 Are these sentences OK? Change the sentences where necessary.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1 I'm going to buy some flowers. | OK |
| 2 I need a new jeans. | <u>I need a new pair of jeans.</u> OR |
| | <u>I need some new jeans.</u> |
| 3 It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree. | ..... |
| 4 There was a woman in the car with two mens. | ..... |
| 5 Sheep eat grass. | ..... |
| 6 David is married and has three childs. | ..... |
| 7 Most of my friend are student. | ..... |
| 8 He put on his pyjama and went to bed. | ..... |
| 9 We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish. | ..... |
| 10 Do you know many persons in this town? | ..... |
| 11 I like your trouser. Where did you get it? | ..... |
| 12 The town centre is usually full of tourist. | ..... |
| 13 I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them. | ..... |
| 14 This scissor isn't very sharp. | ..... |

66.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1 It's a nice place. Many people <u>go</u> there on holiday. | go or goes? |
| 2 Some people always late. | is or are? |
| 3 The new city hall is not a beautiful building. Most people like it. | don't or doesn't? |
| 4 A lot of people TV every day. | watch or watches? |
| 5 Three people injured in the accident. | was or were? |
| 6 How many people in that house? | live or lives? |
| 7 the police know the cause of the explosion? | Do or Does? |
| 8 The police looking for the stolen car. | is or are? |
| 9 I need my glasses, but I can't find | it or them? |
| 10 I'm going to buy new jeans today. | a or some? |

a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)

A

A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

Countable nouns

For example: (a) **car** (a) **man** (a) **bottle** (a) **house** (a) **key** (an) **idea** (an) **accident**

You can use **one/two/three** (etc.) + *countable nouns* (you can count them):



one **bottle**



two **bottles**



three **men**



four **houses**

Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more):

singular
plural

a car	the car	my car	etc.
cars	two cars	the cars	some cars many cars etc.

- ☐ I've got **a car**.
- ☐ New **cars** are very expensive.
- ☐ There aren't **many cars** in the car park.

You can't use the singular (**car/bottle/key** etc.) alone. You need **a/an**:

- ☐ We can't get into the house without **a key**. (*not* without key)

B

Uncountable nouns

For example: **water** **air** **rice** **salt** **plastic** **money** **music** **tennis**

water



water

salt



salt



money



music

You can't say **one/two/three** (etc.) + these things: ~~one water~~ ~~two musics~~

Uncountable nouns have only *one* form:

money **the money** **my money** **some money** **much money** etc.

- ☐ I've got **some money**.
- ☐ There isn't **much money** in the box.
- ☐ **Money** isn't everything.

You can't use **a/an** + *uncountable nouns*: ~~✗ money~~ ~~✗ music~~ ~~✗ water~~

But you can say **a piece of ... / a bottle of ...** etc. + *uncountable noun*:

a bottle of water	a carton of milk	a bar of chocolate
a piece of cheese	a bottle of perfume	a piece of music
a bowl of rice	a cup of coffee	a game of tennis

67.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write **a/an** if necessary. The names of these things are:

- bucket
egg
- envelope
jug
- money
~~salt~~
- sand
~~spoon~~
- toothbrush
toothpaste
- wallet
water

1 It's <u>salt</u>	2 It's <u>a spoon</u>	3 It's	4 It's
5 It's	6 It's	7 It's	8 It's
9 It's	10 It's	11 It's	12 It's

67.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need **a/an**. Write **a/an** where necessary.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1 I don't have watch. <u>a watch</u> | 9 Jamaica is island. |
| 2 Do you like cheese? <u>OK</u> | 10 I don't need key. |
| 3 I never wear hat. | 11 Everybody needs food. |
| 4 Are you looking for job? | 12 I've got good idea. |
| 5 Kate doesn't eat meat. | 13 Can you drive car? |
| 6 Kate eats apple every day. | 14 Do you want cup of coffee? |
| 7 I'm going to party tonight. | 15 I don't like coffee without milk. |
| 8 Music is wonderful thing. | 16 Don't go out without umbrella. |

67.3 What are these things? Write **a ... of ...** for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

1 	2 	3 	4 	5 	6 	7 	8 	9
-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

- | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|-------|-------|---|-----------|------------------|-------|
| bar | cup | loaf | + | bread | milk | tea |
| bowl | glass | piece | | chocolate | paper | water |
| carton | jar | piece | | honey | soup | wood |

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---------|---------|
| 1 <u>a carton of milk</u> | 4 | 7 |
| 2 | 5 | 8 |
| 3 | 6 | 9 |

a cake / some cake / some cakes
(countable/uncountable 2)

A a/an and some

a/an + singular countable nouns (car/apple/shoe etc.):

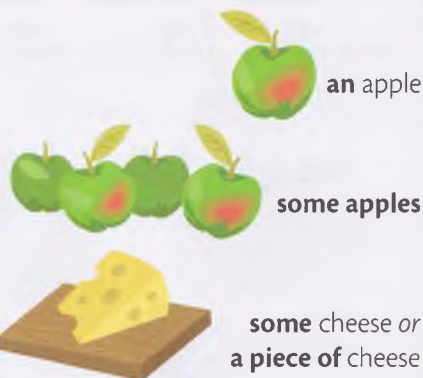
- ☐ I need **a** new **car**.
- ☐ Would you like **an** apple?

some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes etc.):

- ☐ I need **some** new **shoes**.
- ☐ Would you like **some** apples?

some + uncountable nouns (water/money/music etc.):

- ☐ I need **some** **water**.
- ☐ Would you like **some** **cheese**?
(or Would you like **a piece of** cheese?)

Compare **a** and **some**:

- ☐ Nicola bought **a** hat, **some** shoes and **some** perfume.
- ☐ I read **a** newspaper, made **some** phone calls, and listened to **some** music.

B Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:



a cake



some cakes



some cake or a piece of cake



a chicken



some chickens



some chicken or a piece of chicken

Compare **a paper** (= a newspaper) and **some paper**:

- ☐ I want something to read. I'm going to buy **a paper**.
- but ☐ I want to make a shopping list. I need **some paper** / **a piece of paper**. (not a paper)

C Be careful with:

advice bread furniture hair information news weather work

These nouns are usually uncountable. So you can't say **a/an** ... (~~a bread, an advice~~), and they can't be plural (~~advices, furnitures~~ etc.).

- ☐ Can I talk to you? I need **some advice**. (not an advice)
- ☐ I'm going to buy **some bread**. (not a bread)
- ☐ They've got **some** nice **furniture** in their house. (not furnitures)
- ☐ Silvia has very long **hair**. (not hairs)
- ☐ Where can I get **some information** about hotels here? (not informations)
- ☐ Listen! I've just had **some** good **news**. (not a good news)
- ☐ It's nice **weather** today. (not a nice weather)
- ☐ 'Do you like your job?' 'Yes, but it's hard **work**.' (not a hard work)

We say **a job** (but not a work):

- ☐ I've got **a** new **job**. (not a new work)

68.1 What can you see in these pictures? Use **a** or **some**.



1 some perfume, a hat and some shoes

2

3

4

68.2 Write sentences with **Would you like a ... ?** or **Would you like some ... ?**



1 Would you like some cheese?

4

2 Would you like

5

3 Would

6

68.3 Write **a/an** or **some**.

1 I read a book and listened to some music.

2 I need money. I want to buy food.

3 We met interesting people at the party.

4 I'm going to open window to get fresh air.

5 Rachel didn't eat much for lunch – only apple and bread.

6 We live in big house. There's nice garden with beautiful trees.

7 I'm going to make a table. First I need wood.

8 Listen to me carefully. I'm going to give you advice.

9 I want to make a list of things to do. I need paper and pen.

68.4 Which is right?

1 I'm going to buy some new shoe/shoes. (shoes is right)

2 Mark has brown eye/eyes.

3 Paula has short black hair/hairs.

4 The tour guide gave us some information/informations about the city.

5 We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.

6 We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.

7 It's hard to find a work/job at the moment.

8 We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on holiday.

A

a/an



There are *three* windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- ☐ I've got **a car**.
(there are many cars and I've got one)
- ☐ Can I ask **a question**? (there are many questions – can I ask one?)
- ☐ Is there **a hotel** near here? (there are many hotels – is there one near here?)
- ☐ Paris is **an interesting city**. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
- ☐ Lisa is **a student**.
(there are many students and Lisa is one)

the



There is only *one* window here –
the window.

- ☐ I'm going to clean **the car** tomorrow.
(= my car)
- ☐ Can you repeat **the question**, please?
(= the question that you asked)
- ☐ We enjoyed our holiday. **The hotel** was very nice. (= our hotel)
- ☐ Paris is **the capital of France**.
(there is only one capital of France)
- ☐ Lisa is **the youngest student** in her class. (there is only one youngest student in her class)

Compare **a** and **the**:

- ☐ I bought **a jacket** and **a shirt**. **The jacket** was cheap, but **the shirt** was expensive.
(= **the** jacket and **the** shirt **that I bought**)

B

We say **the** ... when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

the door / **the ceiling** / **the floor** / **the carpet** / **the light** etc. (of a room)

the roof / **the garden** / **the kitchen** / **the bathroom** etc. (of a house)

the centre / **the station** / **the airport** / **the town hall** etc. (of a town)

- ☐ 'Where's Tom?' 'In **the kitchen**.'
(= the kitchen of this house or flat)
- ☐ Turn off **the light** and close **the door**.
(= the light and the door of the room)
- ☐ Do you live far from **the centre**?
(= the centre of your town)
- ☐ I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please.
(= the manager of this shop etc.)



69.1 Write a/an or the.

- We enjoyed our trip. The hotel was very nice.
- 'Can I ask a question?' 'Sure. What do you want to know?'
- You look very tired. You need holiday.
- 'Where's Tom?' 'He's in garden.'
- Eve is interesting person. You should meet her.
- A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to city centre?
B: Yes, go straight on and then take next turning left.
- A: Shall we go out for meal this evening?
B: Yes, that's good idea.
- It's nice morning. Let's go for walk.
- Amanda is student. When she finishes her studies, she wants to be journalist. She lives with two friends in apartment near college where she is studying. apartment is small, but she likes it.
- Peter and Mary have two children, boy and girl. boy is seven years old, and girl is three. Peter works in factory. Mary doesn't have job at the moment.

69.2 Complete the sentences. Use a or the + these words:

airport cup dictionary ~~door~~ floor picture

1 Can you open the door, please?

2 How far is it to the airport?

3 Can I have a cup of coffee, please?

4 That's nice - I like it.

5 Can you pass me , please?

6 Why are you sitting on ?

69.3 These sentences are not correct. Put in a/an or the where necessary.

- Don't forget to turn off the light when you go out.
- Enjoy your trip, and don't forget to send me postcard.
- What is name of this village?
- Canada is very big country.
- What is largest city in Canada?
- I like this room, but I don't like colour of carpet.
- 'Are you OK?' 'No, I've got headache.'
- We live in old house near station.
- What is name of director of film we saw last night?

the ...

A

We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

- ☐ What is **the name** of this street? (there is only one name)
- ☐ Who is **the best player** in your team? (there is only one best player)
- ☐ Can you tell me **the time**, please? (= the time *now*)
- ☐ My office is on **the first floor**. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget **the**:

- ☐ Do you live near **the city centre**? (*not* near city centre)
- ☐ Excuse me, where is **the nearest bank**? (*not* where is nearest ...)

B

the same ...

- ☐ We live in **the same street**. (*not* in same street)
- ☐ 'Are these two books different?' 'No, they're **the same**.' (*not* they're same)

C

We say:

the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the sea / the country

- ☐ **The sky** is blue and **the sun** is shining.
- ☐ Do you live in a town or in **the country**?

the police / the fire brigade / the army (of a city, country etc.)

- ☐ My brother is a soldier. He's in **the army**.
- ☐ What do you think of **the police**? Do they do a good job?

the top / the end / the middle / the left etc.

- ☐ Write your name at **the top of** the page.
- ☐ My house is at **the end of** the street.
- ☐ The table is in **the middle of** the room.
- ☐ Do you drive on **the right** or on **the left** in your country?

(play) **the piano / the guitar / the trumpet** etc. (musical instruments)

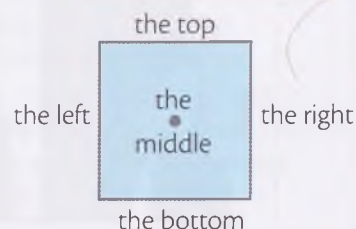
- ☐ Paula is learning to play **the piano**.

the radio

- ☐ I listen to **the radio** a lot.

the internet

- ☐ What do you use **the internet** for?



D

We do *not* use **the** with:**television / TV**

- ☐ I watch **TV** a lot.
- ☐ What's on **television** tonight?

but Can you turn off **the TV**? (= the TV set)**breakfast / lunch / dinner**

- ☐ What did you have for **breakfast**? (*not* the breakfast)
- ☐ **Dinner** is ready!

next / last + week/month/year/summer/Monday etc.

- ☐ I'm not working **next week**. (*not* the next week)
- ☐ Did you have a holiday **last summer**? (*not* the last summer)



70.1 Put in **the** where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

- 1 What is name of this street?
- 2 What's on TV tonight?
- 3 Our apartment is on second floor.
- 4 Would you like to go to moon?
- 5 Which is best hotel in this town?
- 6 What time is lunch?
- 7 How far is it to city centre?
- 8 We're going away at end of May.
- 9 What are you doing next weekend?
- 10 I didn't like her first time I met her.
- 11 I'm going out after dinner.
- 12 It's easy to get information from internet.
- 13 My sister got married last month.
- 14 My dictionary is on top shelf on right.
- 15 We live in country about ten miles from nearest town.

the name

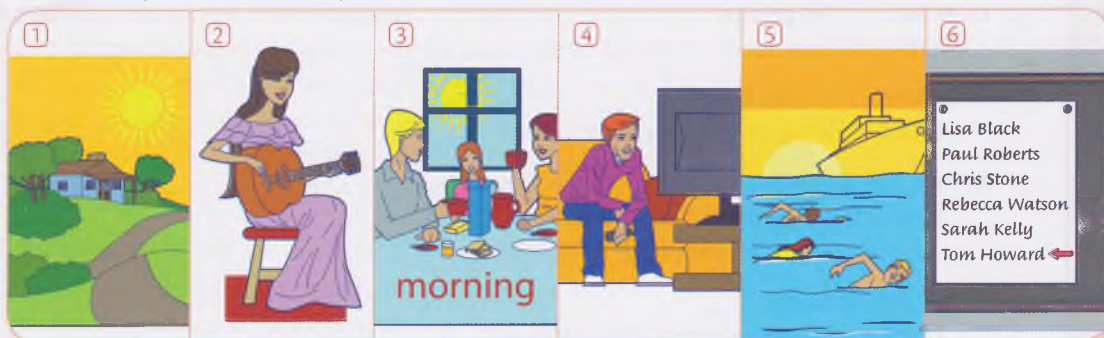
OK

70.2 Complete the sentences. Use **the same** + these words:

age colour problem ~~street~~ time

- 1 I live in North Street and you live in North Street. We live in the same street.
- 2 I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at
- 3 James is 25 and Sue is 25. James and Sue are
- 4 My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are
- 5 I have no money and you have no money. We have

70.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **the** if necessary.



- 1 The sun is shining.
- 2 She's playing
- 3 They're having
- 4 He's watching
- 5 They're swimming in
- 6 Tom's name is at of the list.

70.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use **the** if necessary.

capital ~~dinner~~ police lunch middle name sky TV

- 1 We had dinner at a restaurant last night.
- 2 We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember
- 3 is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
- 4 Sometimes there are some good films on late at night.
- 5 Somebody was trying to break into the shop, so I called
- 6 Tokyo is of Japan.
- 7 'What did you have for?' 'A salad.'
- 8 I woke up in of the night.

A

She's **at work**.They're going **to school**.He's **in bed**.

We say:

(go) **to work**, (be) **at work**, start **work**, finish **work**

- ☐ Bye! I'm **going to work** now. (*not to the work*)
- ☐ I **finish work** at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) **to school**, (be) **at school**, start **school**, leave **school** etc.

- ☐ What did you learn **at school** today? (*not at the school*)
- ☐ Some children don't like **school**.

(go) **to university/college**, (be) **at university/college**

- ☐ Helen wants to **go to university** when she **leaves school**.
- ☐ What did you study **at college**?

(go) **to hospital**, (be) **in hospital**

- ☐ Jack had an accident. He had to go **to hospital**.

(go) **to prison**, (be) **in prison**

- ☐ Why is he **in prison**? What did he do?

(go) **to church**, (be) **in/at church**

- ☐ David usually goes **to church** on Sundays.

(go) **to bed**, (be) **in bed**

- ☐ I'm tired. I'm **going to bed**. (*not to the bed*)
- ☐ 'Where's Alice?' 'She's **in bed**.'

(go) **home**, (be) **at home** etc.

- ☐ I'm tired. I'm **going home**. (*not to home*)
- ☐ Are you going out tonight, or are you **staying at home**?



B

We say:

(go to) **the cinema / the theatre / the bank / the post office / the station / the airport / the city centre**

- ☐ I never go to **the theatre**, but I go to **the cinema** a lot.
- ☐ 'Are you going to **the bank**?' 'No, to **the post office**.'
- ☐ The number 5 bus goes to **the airport**; the number 8 goes to **the city centre**.

(go to) **the doctor, the dentist**

- ☐ You're not well. Why don't you go to **the doctor**?
- ☐ I have to go to **the dentist** tomorrow.



71.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.



- 1 He's in bed. 3 She's in 5 They're at
2 They're at 4 She's at 6 He's in

71.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use **the** if necessary.

~~bank~~ bed ~~church~~ home post office school station

- 1 I need to change some money. I have to go to the bank.
2 David usually goes to church on Sundays.
3 In Britain, children go to from the age of five.
4 There were a lot of people at waiting for the train.
5 We went to their house, but they weren't at
6 I'm going to now. Goodnight!
7 I'm going to to get some stamps.

71.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.

- 1 If you want to catch a plane, you go to the airport.
2 If you want to see a film, you go to
3 If you are tired and you want to sleep, you
4 If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you
5 If you have a problem with your teeth, you
6 If you want to study after you leave school, you
7 If you are badly injured in an accident, you

71.4 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

- 1 We went to cinema last night. to the cinema
2 I finish work at 5 o'clock every day. OK
3 Lisa wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor.
4 I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed.
5 Why is Angela always late for work?
6 'Where are your children?' 'They're at school.'
7 We have no money in bank.
8 When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.
9 What time do you usually get home from work?
10 Do you live far from city centre?
11 'Where shall we meet?' 'At station.'
12 James is ill. He's in hospital.
13 Kate takes her children to school every day.
14 Would you like to go to university?
15 Would you like to go to theatre this evening?

I like music I hate exams

A



We do not use **the** for general ideas:

- ☐ I like **music**, especially **classical music**.
(not the music ... the classical music)
- ☐ We don't eat **meat** very often. (not the meat)
- ☐ **Life** is not possible without **water**.
(not The life ... the water)
- ☐ I hate **exams**. (not the exams)
- ☐ Is there a shop near here that sells **newspapers**?



We do not use **the** for games and sports:

- ☐ My favourite sports are **football** and **skiing**. (not the football ... the skiing)

We do not use **the** for languages or school subjects (**history/geography/physics/biology** etc.):

- ☐ Do you think **English** is difficult? (not the English)
- ☐ Tom's brother is studying **physics** and **chemistry**.

B

flowers or the flowers?

Compare:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ Flowers are beautiful.
(= flowers in general) ☐ I don't like cold weather.
(= cold weather in general) ☐ We don't eat fish very often.
(= fish in general) ☐ Are you interested in history?
(= history in general) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☐ I love this garden.
The flowers are beautiful.
(= the flowers in this garden) ☐ The weather isn't very good today.
(= the weather today) ☐ We had a great meal last night. The fish was excellent.
(= the fish we ate last night) ☐ Do you know much about the history of your country? |
|---|--|



72.1 What do you think about these things?

big cities	computer games	exams	jazz	parties
chocolate	dogs	housework	museums	tennis

Choose seven of these things and write sentences with:

I like ... I don't like ... I love ... I hate ... or ... is/are all right

- 1 I hate exams. or I like exams. or Exams are all right. (etc.)
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

72.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in ...	I know a lot about ...	I don't know much about ...
I'm not interested in ...	I know a little about ...	I don't know anything about ...

- 1 (history) I'm very interested in history.
- 2 (politics) I
- 3 (sport)
- 4 (art)
- 5 (astronomy)
- 6 (economics)

72.3 Which is right?

- 1 My favourite sport is football / ~~the football~~. (football is right)
- 2 I like this hotel. ~~Rooms~~ / The rooms are very nice. (The rooms is right)
- 3 Everybody needs friends / ~~the friends~~.
- 4 Jane doesn't go to parties / ~~the parties~~ very often.
- 5 I went shopping this morning. Shops / The shops were very busy.
- 6 'Where's milk / ~~the milk~~?' 'It's in the fridge.'
- 7 I don't like milk / ~~the milk~~. I never drink it.
- 8 'Do you do any sports?' 'Yes, I play basketball / ~~the basketball~~.'
- 9 An architect is a person who designs buildings / ~~the buildings~~.
- 10 We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
- 11 I don't like swimming in cold water / ~~the cold water~~.
- 12 Excuse me, can you pass salt / ~~the salt~~, please?
- 13 I like this town. I like people / ~~the people~~ here.
- 14 Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
- 15 Houses / The houses in this street are all the same.
- 16 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / ~~the words~~.
- 17 I enjoy taking pictures / ~~the pictures~~. It's my hobby.
- 18 Do you want to see pictures / ~~the pictures~~ that I took when I was on holiday?
- 19 English / The English is used a lot in international business / ~~the international business~~.
- 20 Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / ~~the happiness~~.

the ... (names of places)

A Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** with names of places:

- ☐ **France** is a very large country. (*not* the France)
- ☐ **Cairo** is the capital of **Egypt**.
- ☐ **Corsica** is an island in the Mediterranean.
- ☐ **Peru** is in **South America**.



But we use **the** in names with 'republic'/'states'/'kingdom':

the Czech **Republic**
the United **States** of America (**the** USA)
the United **Kingdom** (**the** UK)



B **the -s** (plural names)

We use **the** with *plural* names of countries/islands/mountains:

the Netherlands **the** Canary Islands
the Philippines **the** Alps



C Seas, rivers etc.

We use **the** with names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:

the Atlantic (Ocean) **the** Mediterranean (Sea) **the** Amazon
the (River) Nile **the** Suez Canal **the** Black Sea



D Places in towns (streets, buildings etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** with names of streets, squares etc.:

- ☐ Kevin lives in **Newton Street**.
- ☐ Where is **Highfield Road**, please?
- ☐ **Times Square** is in New York.



We do not use **the** with names of airports, stations and many other important buildings:

Kennedy Airport **Westminster Abbey** **London Zoo**
Victoria Station **Edinburgh Castle**



also

Cambridge University, Harvard University etc.

But we use **the** with names of most hotels, museums, theatres and cinemas:

the Regent Hotel **the** National Theatre
the Science Museum **the** Odeon (cinema)



E **the ... of ...**

We use **the** + names with ... **of** ...:

the Museum **of** Modern Art **the** University **of** California
the Great Wall **of** China **the** Tower **of** London



We say **the north** / **the south** / **the east** / **the west** (of ...):

- ☐ I've been to **the north of Italy**, but not to **the south**.

73.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use **The** if necessary.



- 1 Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- 2 The Atlantic is between Africa and America.
- 3 is a country in northern Europe.
- 4 is a river in South America.
- 5 is the largest continent in the world.
- 6 is the largest ocean.
- 7 is a river in Europe.
- 8 is a country in East Africa.
- 9 is between Canada and Mexico.
- 10 are mountains in South America.
- 11 is the capital of Thailand.
- 12 are mountains in central Europe.
- 13 is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
- 14 is an island in the Caribbean.
- 15 are a group of islands near Florida.

Alps
Amazon
Andes
Asia
~~Atlantic~~
Bahamas
Bangkok
~~Cairo~~
Jamaica
Kenya
Pacific
Red Sea
Rhine
Sweden
United States

73.2 Write **the** where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write OK.

- 1 Kevin lives in Newton Street.
- 2 We went to see a play at National Theatre.
- 3 Have you ever been to China?
- 4 Have you ever been to Philippines?
- 5 Have you ever been to south of France?
- 6 Can you tell me where Regal Cinema is?
- 7 Can you tell me where Merrion Street is?
- 8 Can you tell me where Museum of Art is?
- 9 Europe is bigger than Australia.
- 10 Belgium is smaller than Netherlands.
- 11 Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile?
- 12 Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London?
- 13 We stayed at Park Hotel in Hudson Road.
- 14 How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station (*in London*)?
- 15 Rocky Mountains are in North America.
- 16 Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.
- 17 I hope to go to United States next year.
- 18 Mary comes from west of Ireland.
- 19 Alan is a student at Manchester University.
- 20 Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.

OK
at the National Theatre

this/that/these/those

A

this (singular)

this
these

these (plural)

this picture
(= this picture *here*)
these flowers
(= these flowers *here*)

that (singular)

that
those

those (plural)

that picture
(= that picture *there*)
those people
(= those people *there*)

B

We use **this/that/these/those** with a noun (**this picture** / **those girls** etc.) or without a noun:

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| ☐ This hotel is expensive, but it's very nice.
☐ 'Who's that girl?' 'I don't know.'
☐ Do you like these shoes? I bought them last week.
☐ Those apples look nice. Can I have one? | } with a noun |
| ☐ This is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive.
☐ 'Excuse me, is this your bag?' 'Oh yes, thank you.'
☐ Who's that ? (= Who is that person?)
☐ Which shoes do you prefer – these or those ? | } without a noun |

C

that = something that *has happened*:

- ☐ 'I'm sorry I forgot to phone you.' '**That's** all right.'
- ☐ **That** was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

that = what somebody *has just said*:

- ☐ 'You're a teacher, aren't you?' 'Yes, **that's** right.'
- ☐ 'Martin has a new job.' 'Really? I didn't know **that**.'
- ☐ 'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, **that's** nice.'

D

We use **this is** ... and **is that** ... ? on the phone:

- ☐ Hi Sarah, **this** is David.
(**this** = the speaker)
- ☐ Is **that** Sarah?
(**that** = the other person)


We use **this is** ... to introduce people:

- ☐ A: Ben, **this is** Chris.
- B: Hello, Chris – nice to meet you.
- C: Hi.



74.1 Complete the sentences. Use **this/that/these/those** + these words:

birds house plates postcards seat shoes

1 Do you like <u>these shoes</u> ?	2 Who lives in ?	3 How much are ?
4 Look at	5 Excuse me, is free?	6 are dirty.

74.2 Write questions: **Is this/that your ... ?** or **Are these/those your ... ?**

1 Is this <u>your bag</u> ?	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10

74.3 Complete the sentences with **this is** or **that's** or **that**.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 A: I'm sorry I'm late.
B: <u>That's</u> all right. | 5 A: Beth plays the piano very well.
B: Does she? I didn't know |
| 2 A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.
B: Oh, a pity. Why not? | 6 Mark meets Paul's sister, Helen.
PAUL: Mark, my sister, Helen.
MARK: Hi, Helen. |
| 3 on the phone
SUE: Hello, Jane. Sue.
JANE: Oh, hi Sue. How are you? | 7 A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.
B: OK. Forget it! |
| 4 A: You're lazy.
B: not true! | 8 A: You're a friend of Tom's, aren't you?
B: Yes, right. |

A

one (= a ...)

These chocolates are good.
Would you like **one**?



Would you like **one** ?
= Would you like **a chocolate** ?

one = a/an ... (a chocolate / an apple etc.)

- ☐ I need **a pen**. Do you have **one**? (**one** = **a pen**)
- ☐ A: Is there **a bank** near here?
B: Yes, there's **one** at the end of this street. (**one** = **a bank**)

B

one and ones

one (singular)

Which **one**
do you want?



Which **one**? = Which **hat**?

one = hat/car/girl etc.

this one / that one

- ☐ Which **car** is yours? **This one** or **that one**? (= this car or that car)

the one ...

- ☐ A: Which **hotel** did you stay at?
B: **The one** opposite the station.
- ☐ I found this **key**. Is it **the one** you lost?

the ... one

- ☐ I don't like the black **coat**, but I like **the brown one**.
- ☐ Don't buy that **camera**. Buy **the other one**.

a/an ... one

- ☐ This **cup** is dirty. Can I have **a clean one**?
- ☐ That **biscuit** was nice. I'm going to have **another one**.

ones (plural)

Which **ones**
do you want?



Which **ones**? = Which **flowers**?

ones = flowers/cars/girls etc.

these/those or these ones / those ones

- ☐ Which flowers do you want? **These** or **those**? or
These ones or **those ones**?

the ones ...

- ☐ A: Which **books** are yours?
B: **The ones** on the table.
- ☐ I found these **keys**. Are they **the ones** you lost?

the ... ones

- ☐ I don't like the red **shoes**, but I like **the green ones**.
- ☐ Don't buy those **apples**. Buy **the other ones**.

some ... ones

- ☐ These **cups** are dirty. Can we have **some clean ones**?
- ☐ My **shoes** are very old. I'm going to buy **some new ones**.

75.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use **one** (not **a/an ...**) in the answers.

B doesn't need a car	B has just had a cup of coffee
there's a chemist in Mill Road	B is going to get a bike
B doesn't have a pen	B doesn't have an umbrella

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 A: Can you lend me a pen? | B: I'm sorry, <u>I don't have one</u> |
| 2 A: Would you like to have a car? | B: No, I don't |
| 3 A: Do you have a bike? | B: No, but |
| 4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella? | B: I'm sorry, but |
| 5 A: Would you like a cup of coffee? | B: No, thank you. |
| 6 A: Is there a chemist near here? | B: Yes, |

75.2 Complete the sentences. Use **a/an ... one**. Use the words in the list.

better big ~~clean~~ different new old

- This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
- I'm going to sell my car and buy
- That's not a very good photo, but this is
- I want today's newspaper. This is
- This box is too small. I need
- Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to

75.3 A is talking to B. Use the information to complete the conversations. Use **one/ones**.

1 A stayed at a hotel. It was opposite the station. A: We stayed at a hotel. B: <u>Which one</u> ? A: <u>The one opposite the station.</u>	6 A is looking at a picture. It's on the wall. A: That's an interesting picture. B:? A:
2 A sees some shoes in a shop window. They're green. A: I like those shoes. B: Which? A: The	7 A sees a girl in a group of people. She's tall with long hair. A: Do you know that girl? B:? A:
3 A is looking at a house. It has a red door. A: That's a nice house. B:? A: with	8 A is looking at some flowers in the garden. They're yellow. A: Those flowers are beautiful. B:? A:
4 A is looking at some CDs. They're on the top shelf. A: Are those your CDs? B:? A:	9 A is looking at a man in a restaurant. He has a moustache and glasses. A: Who's that man? B:? A:
5 A is looking at a jacket in a shop. It's black. A: Do you like that jacket? B:? A:	10 A took some photos at the party last week. A: Did I show you my photos? B:? A:

some and any

A

some

Use **some** in *positive* sentences:

- ☐ I'm going to buy **some** clothes.
- ☐ There's **some** milk in the fridge.
- ☐ We made **some** mistakes.

any

Use **any** in *negative* sentences:

- ☐ I'm **not** going to buy **any** clothes.
- ☐ There **isn't** **any** milk in the fridge.
- ☐ We **didn't** make **any** mistakes.

B

any and **some** in questionsIn most questions (but not all) we use **any** (*not some*):

- ☐ Is there **any** milk in the fridge?
- ☐ Does he have **any** friends?
- ☐ Do you need **any** help?

We normally use **some** (*not any*) when we *offer* things (**Would you like ... ?**):

- ☐ A: Would you like **some** coffee?
- B: Yes, please.

or when we *ask for* things (**Can I have ... ?** etc.):

- ☐ A: Can I have **some** soup, please?
- B: Yes. Help yourself.
- ☐ A: Can you lend me **some** money?
- B: Sure. How much do you need?



C

some and **any** without a noun

- ☐ I didn't take any pictures, but Jessica took **some**. (= some pictures)
- ☐ You can have some coffee, but I don't want **any**. (= any coffee)
- ☐ I've just made some coffee. Would you like **some**? (= some coffee)
- ☐ 'Where's your luggage?' 'I don't have **any**.' (= any luggage)
- ☐ 'Are there any biscuits?' 'Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen.' (= some biscuits)

D

something / somebody (or someone)

- ☐ She said **something**.
- ☐ I saw **somebody** (or **someone**).
- ☐ Would you like **something** to eat?
- ☐ **Somebody's** at the door.

anything / anybody (or anyone)

- ☐ She **didn't** say **anything**.
- ☐ I **didn't** see **anybody** (or **anyone**).
- ☐ Are you doing **anything** tonight?
- ☐ Where's Sue? Has **anybody** seen her?

76.1 Write **some** or **any**.

- I bought some cheese, but I didn't buy any bread.
- In the middle of the room there was a table and chairs.
- There aren't shops in this part of town.
- Gary and Alice don't have children.
- Do you have brothers or sisters?
- There are beautiful flowers in the garden.
- Do you know good hotels in London?
- 'Would you like tea?' 'Yes, please.'
- When we were on holiday, we visited interesting places.
- Don't buy rice. We don't need
- I went out to buy bananas, but they didn't have in the shop.
- I'm thirsty. Can I have water, please?

76.2 Complete the sentences. Use **some** or **any** + the words in the box.

air	cheese	help	milk	questions
batteries	friends	languages	pictures	-shampoo

- I want to wash my hair. Is there any shampoo ?
- The police want to talk to you. They want to ask you
- I had my camera, but I didn't take
- Do you speak foreign ?
- Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with of mine.
- Can I have in my coffee, please?
- The radio isn't working. There aren't in it.
- It's hot in this office. I'm going out for fresh
- A: Would you like ?
B: No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.
- I can do this job alone. I don't need

76.3 Complete the sentences. Use **some** or **any**.

- Kate didn't take any pictures, but I took some. (I/take)
- 'Where's your luggage?' 'I don't have any.' (I/not/have)
- 'Do you need any money?' 'No, thank you.' (I/have)
- 'Can you lend me some money?' 'I'm sorry, but' (I/not/have)
- The tomatoes in the shop didn't look very good, so (I/not/buy)
- There were some nice oranges in the shop, so (I/buy)
- 'How much coffee did you drink yesterday?' '.....' (I/not/drink)

76.4 Write **something/somebody** or **anything/anybody**.

- A woman stopped me and said something, but I didn't understand.
- 'What's wrong?' 'There's in my eye.'
- Do you know about politics?
- I went to the shop, but I didn't buy
- has broken the window. I don't know who.
- There isn't in the bag. It's empty.
- I'm looking for my keys. Has seen them?
- Would you like to drink?
- I didn't eat because I wasn't hungry.
- This is a secret. Please don't tell

A



The car park is empty.

There **aren't any** cars } in the car park.
There are **no** cars }

How many cars are there in the car park?

None.

not (-n't) + any

- ☐ There **aren't any** cars in the car park.
- ☐ Tracey and Jack **don't** have **any** children.
- ☐ You can have some coffee, but I **don't** want **any**.

no + noun (**no cars** / **no garden** etc.)

no ... = not any or not a

- ☐ There are **no cars** in the car park. (= there **aren't any** cars)
- ☐ We have **no coffee**. (= we **don't** have **any** coffee)
- ☐ It's a nice house, but there's **no garden**. (= there **isn't a** garden)

We use **no ...** especially after **have** and **there is/are**.

negative verb + any = positive verb + no

- ☐ They **don't** have **any** children. or They **have no** children.
(not They don't have no children)
- ☐ There **isn't any** sugar in your coffee. or There's **no** sugar in your coffee.

B

no and none

Use **no** + noun (**no money** / **no children** etc.):

- ☐ We have **no money**.
- ☐ Everything was OK. There were **no problems**.

Use **none** alone (*without a noun*):

- ☐ 'How much money do you have?' **'None.'** (= no money)
- ☐ 'Were there any problems?' **'No, none.'** (= no problems)

C

none and no-one

none = 0 (zero)

no-one = nobody

None is an answer for **How much?** / **How many?** (things or people):

- ☐ A: **How much** money do you have?
B: **None.** (= no money)
- ☐ A: **How many** people did you meet?
B: **None.** (= no people)

No-one is an answer for **Who?**:

- ☐ A: **Who** did you meet?
B: **No-one.** (or **Nobody.**)

77.1 Write these sentences again with **no**.

- 1 We don't have any money. We have no money.
- 2 There aren't any shops near here. There are
- 3 Carla doesn't have any free time.
- 4 There isn't a light in this room.

Write these sentences again with **any**.

- 5 We have no money. We don't have any money.
- 6 There's no milk in the fridge.
- 7 There are no buses today.
- 8 Tom has no brothers or sisters.

77.2 Write **no** or **any**.

- 1 There's no sugar in your coffee.
- 2 My brother is married, but he doesn't have children.
- 3 Sue doesn't speak foreign languages.
- 4 I'm afraid there's coffee. Would you like some tea?
- 5 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? Where? I can't see birds.'
- 6 'Do you know where Jessica is?' 'No, I have idea.'

Write **no**, **any** or **none**.

- 7 There aren't pictures on the wall.
- 8 The weather was cold, but there was wind.
- 9 I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn't have in the shop.
- 10 Everything was correct. There were mistakes.
- 11 'How much luggage do you have?' '.....'
- 12 'How much luggage do you have?' 'I don't have'

77.3 Complete the sentences. Use **any** or **no** + the words in the box.

difference	friends	furniture	heating	idea
money	problems	questions	queue	

- 1 Everything was OK. There were no problems.
- 2 Jack and Emily would like to go on holiday, but they have
- 3 I'm not going to answer
- 4 He's always alone. He has
- 5 There is between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
- 6 There wasn't in the room. It was completely empty.
- 7 'Do you know how the accident happened?' 'No, I have'
- 8 The house is cold because there isn't
- 9 We didn't have to wait to get our train tickets. There was

77.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use **none** where necessary.

- 1 How many letters did you write yesterday? Two. or A lot. or None.
- 2 How many sisters do you have?
- 3 How much coffee did you drink yesterday?
- 4 How many photos have you taken today?
- 5 How many legs does a snake have?

not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing

A

not + anybody/anyone
nobody/no-one
(for people)



- ☐ There **isn't** **anybody** in the room.
- ☐ There **is** **nobody** in the room.
- ☐ A: **Who** is in the room?
B: **Nobody** / **No-one**.

-body and **-one** are the same:
anybody = **anyone** **nobody** = **no-one**

not + anything
nothing
(for things)



- ☐ There **isn't** **anything** in the bag.
- ☐ There **is** **nothing** in the bag.
- ☐ A: **What's** in the bag?
B: **Nothing**.

B

not + anybody/anyone

- ☐ I **don't** know **anybody** (or **anyone**) here.

nobody = **not + anybody**
no-one = **not + anyone**

- ☐ I'm lonely. I have **nobody** to talk to.
(= I **don't** have **anybody**)
- ☐ The house is empty. There is **no-one** in it.
(= There **isn't** **anyone** in it.)

not + anything

- ☐ I **can't** remember **anything**.

nothing = **not + anything**

- ☐ She said **nothing**.
(= She **didn't** say **anything**.)
- ☐ There's **nothing** to eat.
(= There **isn't** **anything** to eat.)

C

You can use **nobody/no-one/nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

- ☐ The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there.
- ☐ 'Who did you speak to?' **'No-one.'**
- ☐ **Nothing** happened.
- ☐ 'What did you say?' **'Nothing'**

D

Remember: *negative verb* + **anybody/anyone/anything**
positive verb + **nobody/no-one/nothing**

- ☐ He **doesn't** know **anything**. (not He doesn't know nothing)
- ☐ **Don't** tell **anybody**. (not Don't tell nobody)
- ☐ There **is** **nothing** to do in this town. (not There isn't nothing)

Exercises

78.1 Write these sentences again with **nobody/no-one** or **nothing**.

- 1 There isn't anything in the bag. There's nothing in the bag.
- 2 There isn't anybody in the office. There's
- 3 I don't have anything to do. I
- 4 There isn't anything on TV.
- 5 There wasn't anyone at home.
- 6 We didn't find anything.

78.2 Write these sentences again with **anybody/anyone** or **anything**.

- 1 There's nothing in the bag. There isn't anything in the bag.
- 2 There was nobody on the bus. There wasn't
- 3 I have nothing to read.
- 4 I have no-one to help me.
- 5 She heard nothing.
- 6 We have nothing for dinner.

78.3 Answer these questions with **nobody/no-one** or **nothing**.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1a What did you say? <u>Nothing.</u> | 5a Who knows the answer? |
| 2a Who saw you? <u>Nobody.</u> | 6a What did you buy? |
| 3a What do you want? | 7a What happened? |
| 4a Who did you meet? | 8a Who was late? |

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.

Use **nobody/no-one/nothing** or **anybody/anyone/anything**:

- 1b I didn't say anything.
- 2b Nobody saw me.
- 3b I don't
- 4b I
- 5b the answer.
- 6b
- 7b
- 8b

78.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

nobody / no-one / nothing or **anybody / anyone / anything**

- 1 That house is empty. Nobody lives there.
- 2 Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember anything.
- 3 Be quiet! Don't say
- 4 I didn't know about the meeting. told me.
- 5 'What did you have to eat?' '..... I wasn't hungry.'
- 6 I didn't eat I wasn't hungry.
- 7 Helen was sitting alone. She wasn't with
- 8 I'm afraid I can't help you. There's I can do.
- 9 I don't know about car engines.
- 10 The museum is free. It doesn't cost to go in.
- 11 I heard a knock on the door, but when I opened it, there was there.
- 12 The hotel receptionist spoke very fast. I didn't understand
- 13 'What are you doing tonight?' '..... Why?'
- 14 Sophie has gone away. knows where she is. She didn't tell
..... where she was going.

somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

A



Somebody (or **Someone**)
has broken the window.

somebody/someone
= a person, but we
don't know who



She has got **something** in
her mouth.

something = a thing,
but we don't know what



Tom lives **somewhere** near
London.

somewhere = in/to
a place, but we don't
know where

B

people (-body or -one)

somebody or **someone**

anybody or **anyone**

nobody or **no-one**

- ☐ There is **somebody** (or **someone**) at the door.
- ☐ Is there **anybody** (or **anyone**) at the door?
- ☐ There isn't **anybody** (or **anyone**) at the door.
- ☐ There is **nobody** (or **no-one**) at the door.

-body and **-one** are the same: **somebody** = **someone**, **nobody** = **no-one** etc.

things (-thing)

something

anything

nothing

- ☐ Lucy said **something**, but I didn't understand what she said.
- ☐ Are you doing **anything** at the weekend?
- ☐ I was angry, but I didn't say **anything**.
- ☐ 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'

places (-where)

somewhere

anywhere

nowhere

- ☐ Ruth's parents live **somewhere** in the south of England.
- ☐ Did you go **anywhere** interesting for your holidays?
- ☐ I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere**.
- ☐ I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

C

something/anybody etc. + *adjective* (**big/cheap/interesting** etc.)

- ☐ Did you meet **anybody interesting** at the party?
- ☐ We always go to the same place. Let's go **somewhere different**.
- ☐ 'What's that letter?' 'It's **nothing important**.'

D

something/anybody etc. + **to** ...

- ☐ I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
- ☐ Tony doesn't have **anybody to talk to**. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- ☐ There is **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

79.1 Write **somebody** (or **someone**) / **something** / **somewhere**.

- 1 Lucy said something .
 2 I've lost
 3 Sue and Tom went
 4 I'm going to phone

What did she say?
 What have you lost?
 Where did they go?
 Who are you going to phone?

79.2 Write **nobody** (or **no-one**) / **nothing** / **nowhere**.

- 1a What did you say?
 2a Where are you going?
 3a What do you want?
 4a Who are you looking for?

Nothing.

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.

Use **not** + **anybody/anything/anywhere**.

- 1b I didn't say anything. 3b
 2b I'm not 4b

79.3 Write **somebody/anything/nowhere** etc.

- 1 It's dark. I can't see anything .
 2 Tom lives somewhere near London.
 3 Do you know about computers?
 4 'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear'
 5 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for'
 6 We need to talk. There's I want to tell you.
 7 'Did see the accident?' 'No,'
 8 We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat
 9 'What's going to happen?' 'I don't know. knows.'
 10 'Do you know in Paris?' 'Yes, a few people.'
 11 'What's in that cupboard?' '..... It's empty.'
 12 I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them
 13 I don't like cold weather. I want to live warm.
 14 Is there interesting on TV tonight?
 15 Have you ever met famous?

79.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

something **anything** **nothing**
something **anywhere** ~~**nowhere**~~
somewhere **nowhere**

do **eat** **park** **sit**
drink ~~**go**~~ **read** **stay**

- 1 We don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go .
 2 There isn't any food in the house. We don't have
 3 I'm bored. I've got
 4 'Why are you standing?' 'Because there isn't'
 5 'Would you like?' 'Yes, please – a glass of water.'
 6 If you're going to the city centre, take the bus. Don't drive because there's
 7 I want I'm going to buy a magazine.
 8 I need in London. Can you recommend a hotel?

every and all

A

every



Every house in the street is the same.

every house in the street =
all the houses in the street

We use **every** + *singular noun* (**every house** / **every country** etc.):

- ☐ Sarah has been to **every country** in Europe.
- ☐ **Every summer** we have a holiday by the sea.
- ☐ She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a *singular verb* after **every** ... :

- ☐ **Every house** in the street **is** the same. (*not are* the same)
- ☐ **Every country** **has** a national flag. (*not have*)

Compare **every** and **all**:

- ☐ **Every student** in the class passed the exam.
- ☐ **Every country** **has** a national flag.

- ☐ **All the students** in the class passed the exam.
- ☐ **All countries** **have** a national flag.

B

every day and all day

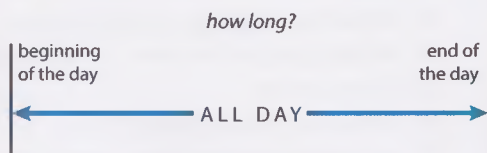
every day = on all days:



- ☐ It rained **every day** last week.
- ☐ Ben watches TV for about two hours **every evening**. (= on all evenings)

also **every morning/night/summer** etc.

all day = the complete day:



- ☐ It rained **all day** yesterday.
- ☐ On Monday, I watched TV **all evening**. (= the complete evening)

also **all morning/night/summer** etc.

C

everybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere

everybody or **everyone**

(people)

everything

(things)

everywhere

(places)

- ☐ **Everybody** (or **Everyone**) needs friends.
(= all people need friends)
- ☐ Do you have **everything** you need?
(= all the things you need)
- ☐ I lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it.
(= I've looked in all places)

Use a *singular verb* after **everybody/everyone/everything**:

- ☐ **Everybody** **has** problems. (*not Everybody have*)

80.1 Complete the sentences. Use **every** + these words:

day room ~~student~~ time word

- 1 Every student in the class passed the exam.
- 2 My job is very boring. is the same.
- 3 Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins
- 4 in the hotel has free internet access and a minibar.
- 5 'Did you understand what she said?' 'Most of it, but not

80.2 Complete the sentences with **every day** or **all day**.

- 1 Yesterday it rained all day.
- 2 I buy a newspaper, but sometimes I don't read it.
- 3 I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home
- 4 I usually drink about four cups of coffee
- 5 Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed
- 6 I'm tired now because I've been working hard
- 7 Last year we went to the seaside for a week, and it rained

80.3 Write **every** or **all**.

- 1 Bill watches TV for about two hours every evening.
- 2 Julia gets up at 6.30 morning.
- 3 The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside afternoon.
- 4 I'm going away on Monday. I'll be away week.
- 5 A: How often do you go skiing?
B: year. Usually in March.
- 6 A: Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday?
B: Yes, I was at home morning. I went out after lunch.
- 7 My sister loves new cars. She buys one year.
- 8 I saw Sam at the party, but he didn't speak to me evening.
- 9 We go away on holiday for two or three weeks summer.

80.4 Write **everybody**/ **everything**/ **everywhere**.

- 1 Everybody needs friends.
- 2 Chris knows about computers.
- 3 I like the people here. is very friendly.
- 4 This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and is very clean.
- 5 Kevin never uses his car. He goes by motorcycle.
- 6 Let's get something to eat. is hungry.
- 7 Sue's house is full of books. There are books
- 8 You are right. you say is true.

80.5 Complete the sentences. Use one word only each time.

- 1 Everybody has problems.
- 2 Are you ready yet? Everybody waiting for you.
- 3 The house is empty. Everyone gone out.
- 4 Gary is very popular. Everybody him.
- 5 This town is completely different now. Everything changed.
- 6 I got home very late last night. I came in quietly because everyone asleep.
- 7 Everybody mistakes!
- 8 A: everything clear? everybody know what to do?
B: Yes, we all understand.

all most some any no/none

A

Compare:

children/money/books etc. (in general):

- ☐ **Children** like playing.
(= children in general)
- ☐ **Money** isn't everything.
(= money in general)
- ☐ I enjoy reading **books**.
- ☐ Everybody needs **friends**.

the children / the money / these books etc.:

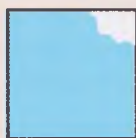
- ☐ Where are **the children**?
(= our children)
- ☐ I want to buy a car, but I don't have **the money**. (= the money for a car)
- ☐ Have you read **these books**?
- ☐ I often go out with **my friends**.

B

most / most of ... , some / some of ... etc.



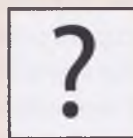
all



most



some



any



no / none / not + any

most/some etc. + noun

all		cities
most		children
some	of	books
any		money
no		

- ☐ **Most children** like playing.
(= children in general)
- ☐ I don't want **any money**.
- ☐ **Some books** are better than others.
- ☐ He has **no friends**.
- ☐ **All cities** have the same problems.
(= cities in general)

Do not use **of** in these sentences:

- ☐ **Most people** drive too fast.
(not Most of people)
- ☐ **Some birds** can't fly.
(not Some of birds)

most of/some of etc. + the/this/my ... etc.

all	(of)	the ...
most		this/that ...
some	of	these/those ...
any		my/your... etc.
none		

- ☐ **Most of the children at this school** are under 11 years old.
- ☐ I don't want **any of this money**.
- ☐ **Some of these books** are very old.
- ☐ **None of my friends** live near me.

You can say **all the ...** or **all of the ...** (with or without **of**):

- ☐ **All the students in our class** passed the exam. (or **All of the students ...**)
- ☐ Amy has lived in London **all her life**.
(or... **all of her life**.)

C

all of it / most of them / none of us etc.

all		it
most		them
some	of	us
any		you
none		

- ☐ You can have **some of this cake**, but not **all of it**.
- ☐ A: Do you know those people?
B: **Most of them**, but not **all of them**.
- ☐ **Some of us** are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- ☐ I have a lot of books, but I haven't read **any of them**.
- ☐ 'How many of these books have you read?' '**None of them**.'

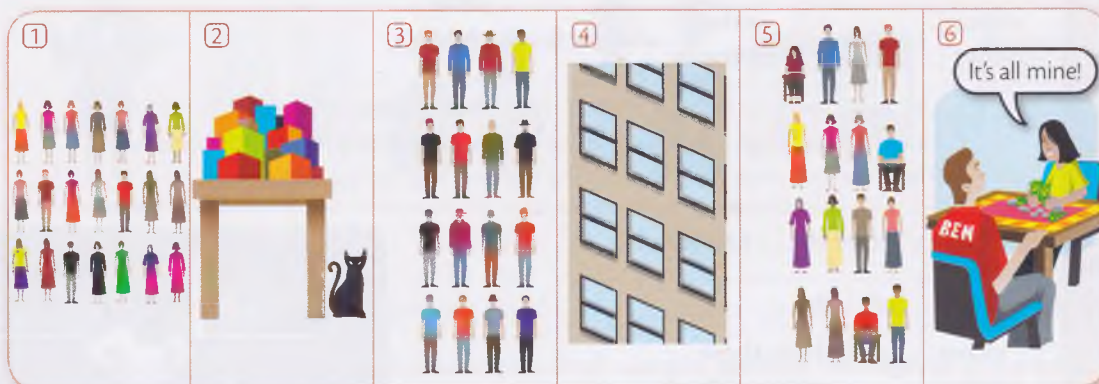
Exercises

81.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (**some/most** etc.). Sometimes you need **of** (**some of / most of** etc.).

- 1 Most children like playing. (**most**)
- 2 Some of this money is yours. (**some**)
- 3 people never stop talking. (**some**)
- 4 the shops in the city centre close at 6.30. (**most**)
- 5 people have mobile phones these days. (**most**)
- 6 I don't like the pictures in the living room. (**any**)
- 7 He's lost his money. (**all**)
- 8 my friends are married. (**none**)
- 9 Do you know the people in this picture? (**any**)
- 10 birds can fly. (**most**)
- 11 I enjoyed the film, but I didn't like the ending. (**most**)
- 12 sports are very dangerous. (**some**)
- 13 We can't find anywhere to stay. the hotels are full. (**all**)
- 14 You must have this cheese. It's delicious. (**some**)
- 15 The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained the time. (**most**)

81.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use:

all/most/some/none + **of them / of it**



- 1 How many of the people are women? Most of them.
- 2 How many of the boxes are on the table?
- 3 How many of the men are wearing hats?
- 4 How many of the windows are open?
- 5 How many of the people are standing?
- 6 How much of the money is Ben's?

81.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

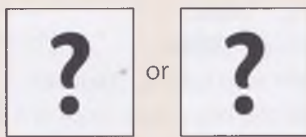
- 1 Most of children like playing. Most children
- 2 All the students failed the exam. OK
- 3 Some of people work too hard.
- 4 Some of questions in the exam were very easy.
- 5 I haven't seen any of those people before.
- 6 All of insects have six legs.
- 7 Have you read all these books?
- 8 Most of students in our class are very nice.
- 9 Most of my friends are going to the party.
- 10 I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night.

both either neither

A We use **both/either/neither** to talk about two things or people:



both



either



neither (not + either)

- ☐ Rebecca has two children. **Both** are married. (**both** = the two children)
- ☐ Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (**either** = tea or coffee)
- ☐ A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?
B: **Neither**. I want to stay at home. (**neither** = not the cinema or the theatre)

Compare **either** and **neither**:

- ☐ 'Would you like **tea** or **coffee**?' {
 'Either. I don't mind.' (= tea or coffee)
 'I **don't** want **either**.' (not I don't want neither)
 'Neither.' (= not tea or coffee)

B **both/either/neither** + *noun*

both + *plural*
either } + *singular*
neither }

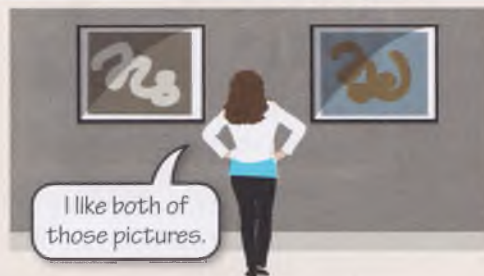
both	windows/books/children etc.
either neither	window/book/child etc.

- ☐ Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked **both cities** very much.
- ☐ First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. **Neither job** was very interesting.
- ☐ There are two ways from here to the station. You can go **either way**.

C **both of ... / either of ... / neither of ...**

both	(of)	the ...
either neither	of	these/those ... my/your/Paul's ... etc.

- ☐ **Neither of my parents** is British.
- ☐ I **haven't** read **either of these books**.



You can say **both of the/those/my ...** or **both the/those/my ...** (with or without **of**):

- ☐ I like **both of** those pictures. *or*
I like **both** those pictures.
- ☐ **Both of** Paul's sisters are married. *or*
Both Paul's sisters are married.

but ☐ **Neither of** Paul's sisters is married. (*not* Neither Paul's sisters)

D **both of them / neither of us**

both either neither	of	them us you
--	----	-------------------

- ☐ Paul has two sisters. **Both of them** are married.
- ☐ Sue and I didn't eat anything. **Neither of us** was hungry.
- ☐ Who are those two people? I **don't** know **either of them**.

82.1 Write both/either/neither. Use of where necessary.

- 1 Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
- 2 There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like either of them.
- 3 It was a good football match. teams played well.
- 4 It wasn't a good football match. team played well.
- 5 'Is your friend English or American?' ' . She's Australian.'
- 6 We went away for two days, but the weather wasn't good. It rained days.
- 7 A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
B: . It doesn't matter which one.
- 8 I invited Sam and Chris to the party, but them came.
- 9 'Do you go to work by car or by bus?' ' . I always walk.'
- 10 'Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?' 'I don't like them.'
- 11 'Do you work or are you a student?' ' . I work and I'm a student too.'
- 12 My friend and I went to the cinema, but us liked the film. It was really bad.
- 13 Helen has two sisters and a brother. sisters are married.
- 14 Helen has two sisters and a brother. I've met her brother, but I haven't met her sisters.

82.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use Both ... and Neither

1

2

3

4

5

6

ANSWER
 $27+18=47$
 $49+38=77$

- 1 Both cups are empty.
- 2 are open.
- 3 wearing a hat.
- 4 beards.
- 5 to the airport.
- 6 correct.

82.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with Both/Neither of them

1 Are you married?	No	No	1 Neither of them is married.
2 How old are you?	21	21	2 Both of them are 21.
3 Are you a student?	Yes	Yes	3 students.
4 Do you have a car?	No	No	4 a car.
5 Where do you live?	London	London	5
6 Do you like cooking?	Yes	Yes	6
7 Can you play the piano?	No	No	7
8 Do you eat seafood?	Yes	Yes	8
9 Are you interested in sport?	No	No	9

175

A



a lot of money



not much money



a lot of books



not many books

We use **much** + *uncountable noun*
(**much food** / **much money** etc.):

- ☐ Did you buy **much food**?
- ☐ We don't have **much luggage**.
- ☐ How **much money** do you want?
- ☐ A: Do you have any **money**?
B: I have some, but **not much**.

We use **many** + *plural noun*
(**many books** / **many people** etc.):

- ☐ Did you buy **many books**?
- ☐ We don't know **many people**.
- ☐ How **many photos** did you take?
- ☐ A: Did you take any **photos**?
B: I took some, but **not many**.

We use **a lot of** + *both types of noun*:

- ☐ We bought **a lot of food**.
- ☐ Paula doesn't have **a lot of** free **time**.

- ☐ We bought **a lot of books**.
- ☐ Did they ask **a lot of questions**?

We say:

- ☐ There **is** a lot of **food/money/water** ...
(*singular verb*)

- ☐ There **are** a lot of **trees/shops/people** ... (*plural verb*)
- ☐ A lot of **people speak** English.
(*not speaks*)

B

We use **much** in *questions* and *negative sentences*:

- ☐ Do you drink **much coffee**?
- ☐ I don't drink **much coffee**.

But we do not often use **much** in *positive sentences*:

- ☐ I drink **a lot of coffee**. (*not I drink much coffee*)
- ☐ 'Do you drink much coffee?' 'Yes, **a lot**.' (*not Yes, much*)

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all types of sentences (positive/negative/question):

- ☐ We have **many** friends / **a lot of** friends.
- ☐ We don't have **many** friends / **a lot of** friends.
- ☐ Do you have **many** friends / **a lot of** friends?

C

You can use **much** and **a lot** without a noun:

- ☐ Amy spoke to me, but she didn't say **much**.
- ☐ 'Do you watch TV **much**?' 'No, **not much**.' (= not often)
- ☐ We like films, so we go to the cinema **a lot**. (*not go to the cinema much*)
- ☐ I don't like him very **much**.

83.1 Write **much** or **many**.

- Did you buy much food?
- There aren't hotels in this town.
- We don't have petrol. We need to stop and get some.
- Were there people on the train?
- Did students fail the exam?
- Paula doesn't have money.
- I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat
- I don't know where Gary lives these days. I haven't seen him for years.

Write **How much** or **How many**.

- people are coming to the party?
- milk do you want in your coffee?
- bread did you buy?
- players are there in a football team?

83.2 Complete the sentences. Use **much** or **many** with these words:

~~books~~ countries luggage people time times

- I don't read very much. I don't have many books.
- Hurry up! We don't have
- Do you travel a lot? Have you been to ?
- Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know
- 'Do you have ?' 'No, only this bag.'
- I know Tokyo well. I've been there

83.3 Complete the sentences. Use **a lot of** + these words:

accidents ~~books~~ fun interesting things traffic

- I like reading. I have a lot of books.
- We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw
- This road is very dangerous. There are
- We enjoyed our holiday. We had
- It took me a long time to drive here. There was

83.4 In some of these sentences **much** is not natural. Change the sentences or write OK.

- Do you drink much coffee? OK
- I drink much tea. a lot of tea
- It was a cold winter. We had much snow.
- There wasn't much snow last winter.
- It costs much money to travel around the world.
- We had a cheap holiday. It didn't cost much.
- Do you know much about computers?
- 'Do you have any luggage?' 'Yes, much.'

83.5 Write sentences about these people. Use **much** and **a lot**.

- James loves films. (go to the cinema) He goes to the cinema a lot.
- Nicola thinks TV is boring. (watch TV) She doesn't watch TV much.
- Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis) She
- Mark doesn't like driving. (use his car) He
- Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out)
- Sue has been all over the world. (travel)

(a) little (a) few

A

(a) **little** + *uncountable noun*:

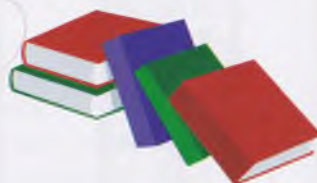
- (a) **little water**
- (a) **little time**
- (a) **little money**
- (a) **little soup**



a little water

(a) **few** + *plural noun*:

- (a) **few books**
- (a) **few questions**
- (a) **few people**
- (a) **few days**



a few books

B

a little = some but not much

- ☐ She didn't eat anything, but she drank **a little water**.
- ☐ I speak **a little Spanish**.
(= some Spanish but not much)
- ☐ A: Can you speak Spanish?
B: **A little**.

a few = some but not many

- ☐ Excuse me, I have to make **a few phone calls**.
- ☐ We're going away for **a few days**.
- ☐ I speak **a few words** of Spanish.
- ☐ A: Are there any shops near here?
B: Yes, **a few**.

C

~~a~~ **little** (without **a**) = nearly no or nearly nothing

- ☐ There was **little food** in the fridge.
It was nearly empty.

You can say **very little**:

- ☐ Dan is very thin because he eats **very little**. (= nearly nothing)

~~a~~ **few** (without **a**) = nearly no

- ☐ There were **few people** in the theatre.
It was nearly empty.

You can say **very few**:

- ☐ Your English is very good. You make **very few mistakes**.

D

Compare **little** and **a little**:

- ☐ They have **a little** money, so they're not poor. (= they have some money)
- ☐ They have **little** money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)

I have a little money.



I have little money.

Compare **few** and **a few**:

- ☐ I have **a few** friends, so I'm not lonely. (= I have some friends)
- ☐ I'm sad and I'm lonely. I have **few** friends. (= nearly no friends)

I have a few friends.



I have few friends.



84.1 Answer the questions with **a little** or **a few**.

- 1 'Do you have any money?' 'Yes, a little.'
- 2 'Do you have any envelopes?' 'Yes, _____.'
- 3 'Do you want sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, _____, please.'
- 4 'Did you take any photos when you were on holiday?' 'Yes, _____.'
- 5 'Does your friend speak English?' 'Yes, _____.'
- 6 'Are there any good restaurants in this town?' 'Yes, _____.'

84.2 Write **a little** or **a few** + these words:

chairs days fresh air friends milk Russian times ~~years~~

- 1 Mark speaks Italian well. He lived in Italy for a few years.
- 2 Can I have _____ in my coffee, please?
- 3 'When did Amy go away?' '_____ ago.'
- 4 'Do you speak any foreign languages?' 'I can speak _____.'
- 5 'Are you going out alone?' 'No, I'm going with _____.'
- 6 'Have you ever been to Mexico?' 'Yes, _____.'
- 7 There wasn't much furniture in the room – just a table and _____.
- 8 I'm going out for a walk. I need _____.

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use **very little** or **very few** + these words:

coffee hotels ~~mistakes~~ people rain time work

- 1 Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.
- 2 I drink _____. I prefer tea.
- 3 The weather here is very dry in summer. There is _____.
- 4 It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are _____.
- 5 Hurry up. We have _____.
- 6 The town is very quiet at night. _____ go out.
- 7 Some people in the office are very lazy. They do _____.

84.4 Write **little** / **a little** or **few** / **a few**.

- 1 There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.
- 2 'When did Sarah go out?' '_____ minutes ago.'
- 3 I can't decide now. I need _____ time to think about it.
- 4 There was _____ traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
- 5 The bus service isn't very good at night – there are _____ buses after 9 o'clock.
- 6 'Would you like some soup?' 'Yes, _____, please.'
- 7 I'd like to practise my English more, but I have _____ opportunity.

84.5 Right or wrong? Change the sentences where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is correct.

- 1 We're going away for a few days next week. for a few days
- 2 Everybody needs little luck. _____
- 3 I can't talk to you now – I have few things to do. _____
- 4 I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much. _____
- 5 Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? _____
- 6 There were little people on the bus – it was nearly empty. _____
- 7 Mark is a very private person. Few people know him well. _____

old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)

A adjective + noun (nice day / blue eyes etc.)

adjective + noun

It's a nice	day today.
Laura has brown	eyes .
There's a very old	bridge in this village.
Do you like Italian	food ?
I don't speak any foreign	languages .
There are some beautiful yellow	flowers in the garden.

The adjective is *before* the noun:

- ☐ They live in a **modern house**. (*not* a house modern)
- ☐ Have you met any **famous people**? (*not* people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same:

a **different place** **different** places (*not* differents)

B be (am/is/was etc.) + adjective

- ☐ The weather **is nice** today.
- ☐ These flowers **are** very **beautiful**.
- ☐ **Are you cold**? Shall I close the window?
- ☐ **I'm hungry**. Can I have something to eat?
- ☐ The film **wasn't** very **good**. It **was boring**.
- ☐ Please **be quiet**. I'm reading.



C look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective



- ☐ A: You **look tired**.
B: Yes, I **feel tired**.
- ☐ Joe told me about his new job. It **sounds** very **interesting**.
- ☐ I'm not going to eat this fish. It doesn't **smell good**.

Compare:

He	is	
	feels	tired.
	looks	

They	are	
	look	happy.
	sound	

It	is	
	smells	good.
	tastes	

85.1 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 (new / live in / house / they / a) They live in a new house.
- 2 (like / jacket / I / that / green) I like that green jacket.
- 3 (music / like / do / classical / you?) Do you like classical music?
- 4 (had / wonderful / a / I / holiday) I had a wonderful holiday.
- 5 (went to / restaurant / a / Japanese / we) We went to a Japanese restaurant.

85.2 The words in the box are adjectives (**black/foreign** etc.) or nouns (**air/job** etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air	clouds	foreign	holiday	job	languages	sharp
black	dangerous	fresh	hot	knife	long	water

- 1 Do you speak any foreign languages ?
- 2 Look at those clouds . It's going to rain.
- 3 Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a holiday .
- 4 I would like to have a shower, but there's no hot water .
- 5 Can you open the window? We need some fresh air .
- 6 I need a sharp knife to cut these onions.
- 7 Fire-fighting is a dangerous job .

85.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

feel(s)	look(s)	sound(s)	+	happy	ill	nice
look(s)	smell(s)	taste(s)		horrible	new	surprised

1 You sound happy .



2 It looks new .



3 I feel surprised .



4 You look tired .



5 They smell nice .



6 It tastes horrible .



85.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use **feel/look** etc.

A	B
1 You look tired.	Do I? I <u>don't feel tired</u> . (feel)
2 This is a new coat.	Is it? It doesn't <u>look new</u> . (look)
3 I'm American.	Are you? You <u>sound American</u> . (sound)
4 You look cold.	Do I? I <u>feel cold</u> . (feel)
5 These bags are heavy.	Are they? They <u>look heavy</u> . (look)
6 That soup looks good.	Maybe, but it <u>tastes horrible</u> . (taste)

quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)

A

He ate his dinner very **quickly**.**Suddenly** the shelf fell down.**Quickly** and **suddenly** are adverbs.adjective + **-ly** → adverb:

adjective	quick	bad	sudden	careful	heavy	
adverb	quickly	badly	suddenly	carefully	heavily	etc.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): easy → easily heavy → heavily

B

Adverbs tell you *how* something happens or *how* somebody does something:

- ☐ The train **stopped suddenly**.
- ☐ I **opened** the door **slowly**.
- ☐ Please **listen carefully**.
- ☐ I **understand** you **perfectly**.

It's **raining heavily**.

Compare:

adjective

- ☐ Sue is very **quiet**.
- ☐ **Be careful!**
- ☐ It was **a bad game**.
- ☐ I **felt nervous**.
(= I was nervous)

adverb

- ☐ Sue **speaks** very **quietly**. (*not speaks very quiet*)
- ☐ **Listen carefully!** (*not listen careful*)
- ☐ Our team **played badly**. (*not played bad*)
- ☐ I **waited nervously**.

C

hard fast late earlyThese words are adjectives *and* adverbs:

- ☐ Sue's job **is** very **hard**.
- ☐ Ben **is** **a fast runner**.
- ☐ The bus **was late/early**.

- ☐ Sue **works** very **hard**. (*not hardly*)
- ☐ Ben can **run fast**.
- ☐ I **went** to bed **late/early**.

D

good (adjective) → **well** (adverb)

- ☐ Your English **is** very **good**.
- ☐ It was **a good game**.

- ☐ You **speak** English very **well**. (*not very good*)
- ☐ Our team **played well**.

But **well** is also an adjective (= not ill, in good health):

- ☐ 'How are you?' 'I'm very **well**, thank you. And you?'

Exercises

86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with these adverbs:

angrily badly dangerously fast ~~heavily~~ quietly



- 1 It's raining heavily
- 2 He sings very 5 She can run very
- 3 They came in 6 He was driving

86.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come know sleep win
explain ~~listen~~ think work

+

~~carefully~~ clearly hard well
carefully easily quickly well

- 1 I'm going to tell you something very important, so please listen carefully
- 2 They At the end of the day they're always tired.
- 3 I'm tired this morning. I didn't last night.
- 4 You play tennis much better than me. When we play, you always
- 5 before you answer the question.
- 6 I've met Alice a few times, but I don't her very
- 7 Our teacher doesn't things very We never understand him.
- 8 Helen! I need your help. !

86.3 Which is right?

- 1 Don't eat so ~~quick~~/quickly. It's not good for you. (quickly is right)
- 2 Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
- 3 Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
- 4 Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
- 5 Sam is a very careful/carefully driver.
- 6 Amy is studying hard/hardly for her examinations.
- 7 'Where's Anna?' 'She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly.'
- 8 Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
- 9 Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
- 10 Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?
- 11 I don't remember much about the accident. Everything happened quick/quickly.

86.4 Write good or well.

- 1 Your English is very good You speak it very well
- 2 Jackie did very in her exams.
- 3 The party was very I enjoyed it very much.
- 4 Mark has a difficult job, but he does it
- 5 How are your parents? Are they ?
- 6 Did you have a holiday? Was the weather ?

old/older expensive / more expensive

A



Older / heavier / more expensive are *comparative* forms.
The comparative is **-er (older)** or **more ... (more expensive)**.

B

older/heavier etc.

Short words (1 syllable) → **-er**:

old → **older** slow → **slower** cheap → **cheaper**
nice → **nicer** late → **later** big → **bigger**

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): big → **bigger** hot → **hotter** thin → **thinner**Words ending in **-y** → **-ier**:

easy → **easier** heavy → **heavier** early → **earlier**

- ☐ Rome is **old**, but Athens is **older**. (*not* more old)
- ☐ Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (*not* more cheap)
- ☐ Helen wants a **bigger** car.
- ☐ This coat is OK, but I think the other one is **nicer**.
- ☐ Don't take the bus. It's **easier** to take a taxi. (*not* more easy)

far → **further**:

- ☐ A: How far is it to the station? A mile?
- ☐ B: No, it's **further**. About two miles.

C

more ...

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → **more ...**:

careful → **more careful** polite → **more polite**
expensive → **more expensive** interesting → **more interesting**

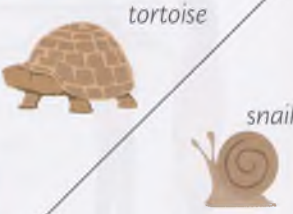
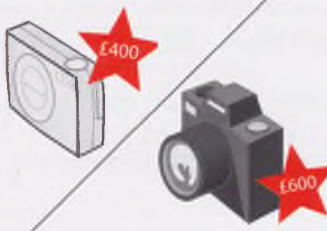
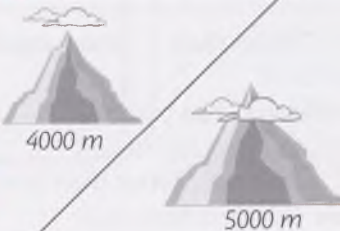
- ☐ You must be **more careful**.
- ☐ I don't like my job. I want to do something **more interesting**.
- ☐ Is it **more expensive** to go by car or by train?

D

good/well → **better** bad → **worse**

- ☐ The weather wasn't very **good** yesterday, but it's **better** today.
- ☐ 'Do you feel **better** today?' 'No, I feel **worse**.'
- ☐ Which is **worse** – a headache or a toothache?

87.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (**older** / **more interesting** etc.).

① heavy  heavier	② big 	③ slow  tortoise snail
④ expensive 	⑤ high  4000 m 5000 m	⑥ dangerous  SLOW !

87.2 Write the comparative.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------|------------|--|
| 1 old | older | 6 good | |
| 2 strong | | 7 large | |
| 3 happy | | 8 serious | |
| 4 modern | | 9 pretty | |
| 5 important | | 10 crowded | |

87.3 Write the opposite.

- | | | | |
|-----------|-------|----------|--|
| 1 younger | older | 4 better | |
| 2 colder | | 5 nearer | |
| 3 cheaper | | 6 easier | |

87.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

- Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a **bigger** one.
- My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something **more interesting**.
- You're not very tall. Your brother is
- David doesn't work very hard. I work
- My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is
- Your idea isn't very good. My idea is
- These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are
- My bag isn't very heavy. Your bag is
- I'm not very interested in art. I'm in history.
- It isn't very warm today. It was yesterday.
- These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted
- Britain isn't very big. France is
- London isn't very beautiful. Paris is
- This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a one?
- People today aren't very polite. In the past they were
- The weather isn't too bad today. Often it is much

older than ... more expensive than ...

A

She's **taller than** him.

Hotel Prices (per room per night)	
Europa Hotel	£150
Grand Hotel	£130
Royal Hotel	£120
Hotel	£115

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.We use **than** after comparatives (**older than ... / more expensive than ...** etc.):

- ☐ Athens is **older than** Rome.
- ☐ Are oranges **more expensive than** bananas?
- ☐ It's **easier** to take a taxi **than** to take the bus.
- ☐ 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. **Better than** yesterday.'
- ☐ The restaurant is **more crowded than** usual.

B

We usually say: **than me / than him / than her / than us / than them.**

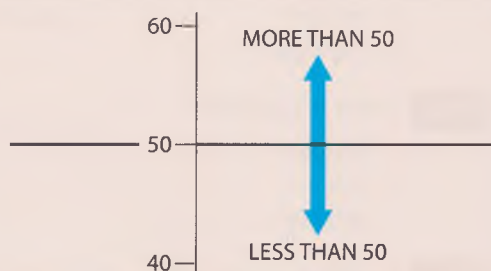
You can say:

- ☐ I can run faster **than him**. or I can run faster **than he can**.
- ☐ You are a better singer **than me**. or You are a better singer **than I am**.
- ☐ I got up earlier **than her**. or I got up earlier **than she did**.

C

more/less than ...

- ☐ A: How much did your shoes cost? £60?
- ☐ B: No, **more than** that. (= **more than** £60)
- ☐ The film was very short – **less than** an hour.
- ☐ They have **more money than** they need.
- ☐ You go out **more than** me.



D

a bit older / much older etc.Box A is **a bit bigger** than Box B.Box C is **much bigger** than Box D.

a bit much	bigger	than ...
	older	
	better	
	more difficult	
	more expensive	

- ☐ Canada is **much bigger** than France.
- ☐ Sue is **a bit older** than Joe – she's 25 and he's 24.
- ☐ The hotel was **much more expensive** than I expected.
- ☐ You go out **much more** than me.

Exercises

88.1 Write sentences about Kate and Ben. Use **than**.



Kate

- 1 I'm 26.
- 2 I'm not a very good swimmer.
- 3 I'm 1 metre 68 tall.
- 4 I start work at 8 o'clock.
- 5 I don't work very hard.
- 6 I don't have much money.
- 7 I'm a very good driver.
- 8 I'm not very patient.
- 9 I'm not a very good dancer.
- 10 I'm very intelligent.
- 11 I speak French very well.
- 12 I don't go to the cinema very much.



Ben

- 1 I'm 24.
- 2 I'm a very good swimmer.
- 3 I'm 1 metre 63 tall.
- 4 I start work at 8.30.
- 5 I work very hard.
- 6 I have a lot of money.
- 7 I'm not a very good driver.
- 8 I'm very patient.
- 9 I'm a good dancer.
- 10 I'm not very intelligent.
- 11 I don't speak French very well.
- 12 I go to the cinema a lot.

- | | |
|--|-------------------|
| 1 Kate <u>is older than Ben</u> | 7 Kate is a |
| 2 Ben <u>is a better swimmer than Kate</u> | 8 Ben |
| 3 Kate is | 9 Ben |
| 4 Kate starts Ben. | 10 Kate |
| 5 Ben | 11 Kate |
| 6 Ben has | 12 Ben |

88.2 Complete the sentences. Use **than**.

- 1 He isn't very tall. You're taller than him (OR taller than he is)
- 2 She isn't very old. You're
- 3 I don't work very hard. You work
- 4 He doesn't watch TV very much. You
- 5 I'm not a very good cook. You
- 6 We don't know many people. You
- 7 They don't have much money. You
- 8 I can't run very fast. You can
- 9 She hasn't been here very long. You
- 10 They didn't get up very early. You
- 11 He wasn't very surprised. You

88.3 Complete the sentences with **a bit** or **much** + comparative (**older/better** etc.).

- 1 Emma is 25. Joe is 24 $\frac{1}{2}$.
Emma is a bit older than Joe
- 2 Jack's mother is 52. His father is 69.
Jack's mother
- 3 My camera cost £120. Yours cost £112.
My camera
- 4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.
I feel
- 5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was 10 degrees.
It's
- 6 Sarah is an excellent tennis player. I'm not a very good player.
Sarah

not as ... as

A

not as ... as

She's old, but she's **not as old as** he is.Box A **isn't as big as** Box B.

- ☐ Rome **is not as old as** Athens.
(= Athens is **older**)
- ☐ The Grand Hotel **isn't as expensive as** the Europa.
(= the Europa is **more expensive**)
- ☐ I **don't** play tennis **as often as** you.
(= you play **more often**)
- ☐ The weather is better than it was yesterday. It **isn't as cold**.
(= as cold **as it was yesterday**)

B

not as much as ... / not as many as ...

- ☐ I don't have **as much money as** you. (= you've got **more money**)
- ☐ I don't know **as many people as** you. (= you know **more people**)
- ☐ I don't go out **as much as** you. (= you go out **more**)

C

Compare **not as ... as** and **than**:

- ☐ Rome is **not as old as** Athens.
Athens is **older than** Rome. (*not older as Rome*)
- ☐ Tennis **isn't as popular as** football.
Football is **more popular than** tennis.
- ☐ I **don't** go out **as much as** you.
You go out **more than** me.

D

We usually say: as **me** / as **him** / as **her** etc.

You can say:

- ☐ She's not as old **as him**. or She's not as old **as he is**.
- ☐ You don't work as hard **as me**. or You don't work as hard **as I do**.

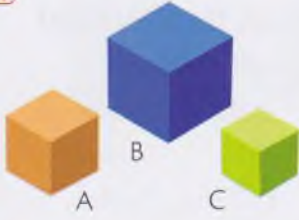
E

We say **the same as** ... :

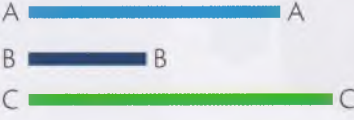
- ☐ The weather today is **the same as** yesterday.
- ☐ My hair is **the same colour as** yours.
- ☐ I arrived at **the same time as** Tom.

89.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.

1



2



3



4



5



6



- 1 A is bigger than C, but not as big as B.
- 2 A is B, but not C.
- 3 C is A, but
- 4 A is, but
- 5 B has got
- 6 C works

89.2 Write sentences with **as ... as ...**.

- 1 Athens is older than Rome. Rome isn't as old as Athens.
- 2 My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn't
- 3 You got up earlier than me. I didn't
- 4 We played better than them. They
- 5 I've been here longer than you. You
- 6 She's more nervous than him. He

89.3 Write **as** or **than**.

- 1 Athens is older than Rome.
- 2 I don't watch TV as much you.
- 3 You eat more me.
- 4 I'm more tired today I was yesterday.
- 5 Joe isn't as intelligent he thinks.
- 6 Belgium is smaller Switzerland.
- 7 Brazil isn't as big Canada.
- 8 I can't wait longer an hour.

89.4 Complete the sentences about Julia, Andy and Laura. Use **the same age** / **the same street** etc.



I'm 22.
I live in Hill Street.
I got up at 7.15.
I don't have a car.

Julia



I'm 24.
I live in Baker Street.
I got up at 7.15.
My car is dark blue.

Andy



I'm 24.
I live in Hill Street.
I got up at 7.45.
I have a car. It's dark blue.

Laura

- 1 (age) Andy is the same age as Laura.
- 2 (street) Julia lives
- 3 (time) Julia got up
- 4 (colour) Andy's

the oldest the most expensive

A



Box A is **bigger than** Box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is **the biggest** box.

HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON

(Per room per night)

Europa Hotel	£150	Grosvenor	£110
Grand Hotel	£130	Bennets	£100
Royal	£120	Carlton	£98
Astoria	£115	Star	£85
Palace	£115	Station	£75

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** all the other hotels in the city.

The Europa Hotel is **the most expensive** hotel in the city.

Bigger and **more expensive** etc. are *comparative* forms (→ Unit 87).

Biggest and **most expensive** etc. are *superlative* forms.

B

The superlative form is **-est (oldest)** or **most ... (most expensive)**.

Short words (**old/cheap/nice** etc.) → **the -est**:

old → **the oldest** cheap → **the cheapest** nice → **the nicest**
 but good → **the best** bad → **the worst**

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): big → **the biggest** hot → **the hottest**

Words ending in **-y (easy/heavy** etc.) → **the -iest**:

easy → **the easiest** heavy → **the heaviest** pretty → **the prettiest**

Long words (**careful/expensive/interesting** etc.) → **the most ...**:

careful → **the most careful** interesting → **the most interesting**

C

We say **the oldest ... / the most expensive ...** etc. (with **the**):

- ☐ The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.
(= it is **older than** all the other buildings)
- ☐ What is **the longest** river in the world?
- ☐ Money is important, but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.
- ☐ Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

D

You can use **the oldest / the best / the most expensive** etc. without a noun:

- ☐ Luke is a good player, but he isn't **the best** in the team.
(**the best** = the best player)

E

You can use *superlative* + **I've ever ... / you've ever ...** etc.:

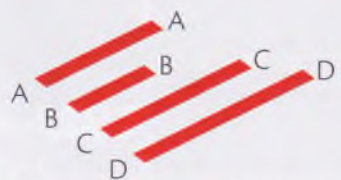
- ☐ The film was very bad. I think it's **the worst** film **I've ever seen**.
- ☐ What is **the most unusual** thing **you've ever done**?

90.1 Write sentences with comparatives (**older** etc.) and superlatives (**the oldest** etc.).

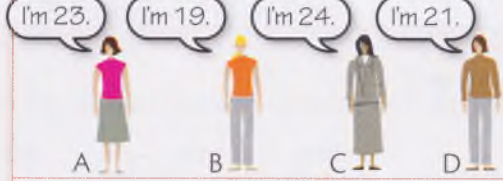
1



2



3



4



5

Restaurant A, Excellent
 Restaurant B, Not bad
 Restaurant C, Good but not wonderful
 Restaurant D, Awful

big/small

(A/D)

A is bigger than D.

(A)

A is the biggest.

(B)

B is the smallest.

long/short

(C/A)

C is A.

(D)

D is

(B)

B

young/old

(D/C)

D

(B)

.....

(C)

.....

expensive/cheap

(D/A)

.....

(C)

.....

(A)

.....

good/bad

(A/C)

.....

(A)

.....

(D)

.....

90.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (**the oldest** etc.).

- This building is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.
- It was a very happy day. It was of my life.
- It's a very good film. It's I've ever seen.
- She's a very popular singer. She's in the country.
- It was a very bad mistake. It was I've ever made.
- It's a very pretty village. It's I've ever seen.
- It was a very cold day. It was of the year.
- He's a very boring person. He's I've ever met.

90.3 Write sentences with a superlative (**the longest** etc.). Choose from the boxes.

~~Sydney~~
 Everest
 Brazil

Alaska
 the Nile
 Jupiter

high
 large
 long

country
~~city~~
 mountain

river
 state
 planet

Africa
~~Australia~~
 the USA

South America
 the world
 the solar system

- Sydney is the largest city in Australia.
- Everest
-
-
-
-

enough

A



She isn't going to take a taxi.
She hasn't got **enough money**.



He can't reach the shelf.
He isn't **tall enough**.

B

enough + noun (**enough money** / **enough people** etc.)

- ☐ A: Is there **enough milk** in your coffee?
B: Yes, thank you.
- ☐ We wanted to play football, but we didn't have **enough players**.
- ☐ Why don't you buy a car? You've got **enough money**. (*not money enough*)

enough without a noun

- ☐ I've got some money, but not **enough** to buy a car.
(= I need more money to buy a car)
- ☐ A: Would you like some more to eat?
B: No, thanks. I've had **enough**.
- ☐ You're always at home. You don't go out **enough**.

C

adjective + enough (**good enough** / **tall enough** etc.)

- ☐ A: Shall we sit outside?
B: No, it isn't **warm enough**. (*not enough warm*)
- ☐ Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
- ☐ Don't buy that coat. It's nice, but it isn't **long enough**. (= it's too short)

Remember:

enough + noun but **adjective + enough**

enough money	tall enough
enough time	good enough
enough people	old enough

D

We say:

enough for somebody/something

enough to do something

enough for somebody/something
to do something

- ☐ This pullover isn't **big enough for me**.
- ☐ I haven't got **enough money for a new car**.
- ☐ I haven't got **enough money to buy** a new car.
(*not for buy*)
- ☐ Is your English **good enough to have** a conversation?
(*not for have*)
- ☐ There aren't **enough chairs for everybody to sit** down.

91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **enough** + these words:

chairs ~~money~~ paint wind



- 1 She hasn't got enough money.
- 2 There aren't
- 3 She hasn't got
- 4 There isn't

91.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these adjectives + **enough**:

big long strong ~~tall~~



- 1 He isn't tall enough.
- 2 The car
- 3 His legs aren't
- 4 He

91.3 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with these words:

big eat ~~loud~~ ~~milk~~ old practise space time tired

- 1 'Is there enough milk in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'
- 2 Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
- 3 He can leave school if he wants – he's
- 4 When I visited New York last year, I didn't have to see all the things I wanted to see.
- 5 This house isn't for a large family.
- 6 Tina is very thin. She doesn't
- 7 My office is very small. There isn't
- 8 It's late, but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not
- 9 Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't

91.4 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with these words:

- 1 We haven't got enough money to buy a new car. (money/buy)
- 2 This knife isn't tomatoes. (sharp/cut)
- 3 The water wasn't swimming. (warm/go)
- 4 Have we got sandwiches? (bread/make)
- 5 We played well, but not the game. (well/win)
- 6 I don't have newspapers. (time/read)

A



His shoes are **too big** for him.



There is **too much** sugar in it.

B

too + adjective / adverb (**too big** / **too hard** etc.)

- ☐ Can you turn the radio down?
It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
- ☐ I can't work. I'm **too tired**.
- ☐ I think you work **too hard**.



C

too much / **too many** = more than you want, more than is good:

- ☐ I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)
- ☐ Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
- ☐ Emily studies all the time. I think she studies **too much**.
- ☐ Traffic is a problem in this town. There are **too many cars**.

D

Compare **too** and **not enough**:



too big

- ☐ The hat is **too big** for him.
- ☐ The music is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please?
- ☐ There's **too much sugar** in my coffee.
(= more sugar than I want)
- ☐ I don't feel very well. I ate **too much**.



not big enough

- ☐ The hat **isn't big enough** for him. (= it's **too small**)
- ☐ The music **isn't loud enough**. Can you turn it up, please?
- ☐ There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee.
(= I need more sugar)
- ☐ You're very thin. You **don't eat enough**.

E

We say:

too ... for somebody/something

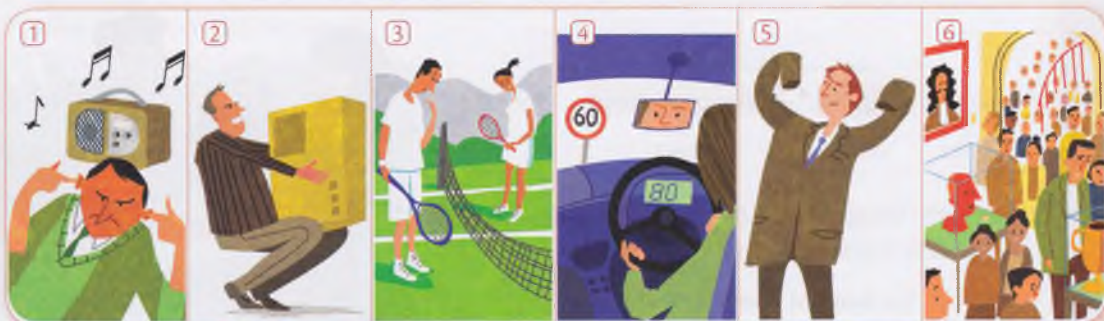
too ... to do something

too ... for somebody **to do** something

- ☐ These shoes are **too big for me**.
- ☐ It's a small house – **too small for a large family**.
- ☐ I'm **too tired to go** out. (*not for go out*)
- ☐ It's **too cold to sit** outside.
- ☐ She speaks **too fast for me to understand**.

92.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **too** + these words:

big crowded fast heavy loud low



- 1 The music is too loud.
- 2 The box is
- 3 The net is
- 4 She's driving
- 5 His jacket is
- 6 The museum is

92.2 Write **too** / **too much** / **too many** or **enough**.

- 1 You're always at home. You don't go out enough.
- 2 I don't like the weather here. There's too much rain.
- 3 I can't wait for them. I don't have time.
- 4 There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were people.
- 5 You're always tired. I think you work hard.
- 6 'Did you have to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.'
- 7 You drink coffee. It's not good for you.
- 8 You don't eat vegetables. You should eat more.
- 9 I don't like the weather here. It's cold.
- 10 Our team didn't play well. We made mistakes.
- 11 'Would you like some milk in your tea?' 'Yes, but not

92.3 Complete the sentences. Use **too** or **enough** with these words:

- 1 I couldn't work. I was too tired (tired)
- 2 Can you turn the radio up, please? It isn't loud enough (loud)
- 3 I don't want to walk home. It's (far)
- 4 Don't buy anything in that shop. It (expensive)
- 5 You can't put all your things in this bag. It (big)
- 6 I couldn't do the exercise. It (difficult)
- 7 Your work needs to be better. It (good)
- 8 I can't talk to you now. I (busy)
- 9 I thought the film was boring. It (long)

92.4 Complete the sentences. Use **too** (+ adjective) + **to ...**

- 1 (I'm not going out / cold) It's too cold to go out
- 2 (I'm not going to bed / early) It's
- 3 (they're not getting married / young) They're
- 4 (nobody goes out at night / dangerous)
It's
- 5 (don't phone Sue now / late)
It's
- 6 (I didn't say anything / surprised)
I was

He speaks English very well.
(word order 1)

A

verb + object

Sue **bought** **some new shoes** yesterday.
 subject verb object

The *verb* (**bought**) and the *object* (**some new shoes**) are usually together. We say:

- Sue **bought some new shoes** yesterday.
 (not Sue bought yesterday some new shoes)



SUE (subject)

SOME NEW SHOES (object)

verb + object

He **speaks** **English** very well. (not He speaks very well English)

I **like** **Italian food** very much. (not I like very much ...)

Did you **watch** **TV** all evening? (not ... watch all evening TV)

Paul often **wears** **a black hat**. (not Paul wears often ...)

We **invited** **a lot of people** to the party.

I **opened** **the door** slowly.

Why do you always **make** **the same mistake**?

I'm going to **borrow** **some money** from a friend.

B

where and when

We went **to a party** **last night**.
 where? when?

Place (*where?*) is usually before time (*when?*). We say:

- We went **to a party last night**. (not We went last night to a party)

place
(*where?*)

+

time
(*when? how long? how often?*)

Lisa walks **to work** **every day**. (not ... every day to work)

Will you be **at home** **this evening**? (not ... this evening at home)

I usually go **to bed** **early**. (not ... early to bed)

We arrived **at the airport** **at 7 o'clock**.

They've lived **in the same house** **for 20 years**.

Joe's father has been **in hospital** **since June**.

Exercises

93.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

- 1 Did you watch all evening TV?
- 2 Sue bought some new shoes yesterday.
- 3 I like very much this picture.
- 4 Tom started last week his new job.
- 5 I want to speak English fluently.
- 6 Jessica bought for her friend a present.
- 7 I drink every day three cups of coffee.
- 8 Don't eat your dinner too quickly!
- 9 I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds.

Did you watch TV all evening?

OK

93.2 Put the words in order.

- 1 (the door / opened / I / slowly)
- 2 (a new phone / I / last week / got)
- 3 (finished / Paul / quickly / his work)
- 4 (Emily / very well / French / doesn't speak)
- 5 (a lot of shopping / did / I / yesterday)
- 6 (London / do you know / well?)
- 7 (we / enjoyed / very much / the party)
- 8 (the problem / carefully / I / explained)
- 9 (we / at the airport / some friends / met)
- 10 (did you buy / in England / that jacket?)
- 11 (every day / do / the same thing / we)
- 12 (football / don't like / very much / I)

I opened the door slowly.

93.3 Put the words in order.

- 1 (to work / every day / walks / Lisa)
- 2 (at the hotel / I / early / arrived)
- 3 (goes / every year / to Italy / Julia)
- 4 (we / since 1998 / here / have lived)
- 5 (in London / Sue / in 1990 / was born)
Sue
- 6 (didn't go / yesterday / Paul / to work)
Paul
- 7 (to a wedding / last weekend / went / Helen)
Helen
- 8 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
I
- 9 (in September / Amy / to university / is going)
Amy
- 10 (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the garden / saw)
I
- 11 (many times / have been / my parents / to the United States)
My
- 12 (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)
I
- 13 (to the cinema / tomorrow evening / are you going?)
Are
- 14 (the children / I / took / this morning / to school)
I

Lisa walks to work every day.

Julia

We

always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)

A

These words (**always/never** etc.) go with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

always	often	ever	rarely	also	already	all
usually	sometimes	never	seldom	just	still	both

- ☐ My brother **never speaks** to me.
- ☐ She's **always** late.
- ☐ Do you **often go** to restaurants?
- ☐ I **sometimes eat** too much. (or **Sometimes** I eat too much.)
- ☐ A: Don't forget to phone Laura.
B: I've **already phoned** her.
- ☐ I've got three sisters. They're **all** married.

B

Always/never etc. go *before* the verb:

verb

always	go
often	play
never	have
etc.	etc.

- ☐ I **always drink** coffee in the morning.
(not I drink always coffee)
- ☐ Helen **often goes** to London.
(not Helen goes often)
- ☐ You **sometimes look** unhappy.
- ☐ They **usually have** dinner at 7 o'clock.
- ☐ We **rarely watch** TV. or
We **seldom watch** TV.
- ☐ Richard is a good footballer. He **also plays** tennis and volleyball.
(not He plays also tennis)
- ☐ I've got three sisters. They **all live** in London.

But **always/never** etc. go *after* **am/is/are/was/were**:

am	always
is	often
are	never
was	etc.
were	

- ☐ I **am always** tired.
(not I always am tired)
- ☐ They **are never** at home during the day.
- ☐ It **is usually** very cold here in winter.
- ☐ When I was a child, I **was often** late for school.
- ☐ A: Where's Laura?
B: She's **still** in bed.
- ☐ I've got two brothers. They're **both** doctors.

C

Always/never etc. go *between* two verbs (**have ... been / can ... find** etc.):

verb 1

verb 2

will	always	go
can		find
do	often	remember
etc.	never	etc.
have	etc.	gone
has		been
		etc.

- ☐ I **will always remember** you.
- ☐ It **doesn't often rain** here.
- ☐ Do you **usually go** to work by car?
- ☐ I **can never find** my keys.
- ☐ **Have you ever been** to Egypt?
- ☐ A: Where's Laura?
B: She's **just gone** out. (She's = She has)
- ☐ My friends **have all gone** to the cinema.

94.1 Read Paul's answers to the questions. Write sentences about Paul with **often/never** etc.



1 Do you ever play tennis? Yes, often. *Paul often plays tennis.*

2 Do you get up early? Yes, always. He

3 Are you ever late for work? No, never. He

4 Do you ever get angry? Sometimes.

5 Do you ever go swimming? Rarely.

6 Are you at home in the evenings? Yes, usually.



Paul

94.2 Write these sentences with **never/always/usually** etc.

- 1 My brother speaks to me. (never) *My brother never speaks to me.*
- 2 Susan is polite. (always) Susan
- 3 I finish work at 5 o'clock. (usually) I
- 4 Sarah has started a new job. (just) Sarah
- 5 I go to bed before midnight. (rarely)
- 6 The bus isn't late. (usually)
- 7 I don't eat fish. (often)
- 8 I will forget what you said. (never)
- 9 Have you lost your passport? (ever)
- 10 Do you work in the same place? (still)
- 11 They stay in the same hotel. (always)
- 12 Jane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually)
- 13 Is Tina here? (already)
- 14 What do you have for breakfast? (usually)
- 15 I can remember his name. (never)

94.3 Write sentences with **also**.

- 1 Do you play football? (tennis) *Yes, and I also play tennis.*
- 2 Do you speak Italian? (French) Yes, and I
- 3 Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and
- 4 Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes,
- 5 Did you buy any clothes? (some books)

94.4 Write sentences with **both** and **all**.



I live in London.
I play football.
I'm a student.
I've got a car.



I live in London.
I play football.
I'm a student.
I've got a car.

- 1 *They both live in London.*
They football.
..... students.
..... cars.



I'm married. I was born in England.
I live in New York.

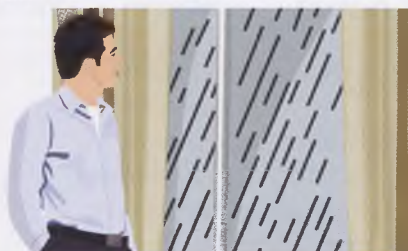
- 2 They married.
They England.

still yet already

A

still

an hour ago



An hour ago it was raining.

now

It is **still** raining now.The rain
hasn't stopped**still** = something is the same as before:

- ☐ I had a lot to eat, but I'm **still** hungry. (= I was hungry before, and I'm hungry now)
- ☐ 'Did you sell your car?' 'No, I've **still** got it.'
- ☐ 'Do you **still** live in Barcelona?' 'No, I live in Madrid now.'

B

yet

20 minutes ago



Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Ben.

now

They are **still** waiting for Ben.
Ben **hasn't** come yet.**yet** = until nowWe use **yet** in *negative* sentences (He **hasn't** come yet.) and in *questions* (**Has** he come yet?).**Yet** is usually at the end of a sentence:

- ☐ A: Where's Emma?
B: She **isn't** here **yet**. (= she will be here, but until now she hasn't come)
- ☐ A: What are you doing this evening?
B: I **don't** know **yet**. (= I will know later, but I don't know at the moment)
- ☐ A: Are you ready to go **yet**?
B: **Not yet**. In a minute. (= I will be ready, but I'm not ready at the moment)
- ☐ A: Have you finished with the newspaper **yet**?
B: No, I'm still reading it.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- ☐ She hasn't gone **yet**. = She's **still** here. (*not* she is yet here)
- ☐ I haven't finished eating **yet**. = I'm **still** eating.

C

already = earlier than expected:

- ☐ 'What time is Joe coming?' 'He's **already** here.' (= earlier than we expected)
- ☐ 'I'm going to tell you what happened.' 'That's not necessary. I **already** know.'
- ☐ Sarah isn't coming to the cinema with us. She has **already** seen the film.

95.1 You meet Tina. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with **still**.

Tina – two years ago

1 I play the piano.

2 I live in Clare Street.

3 I'm a student.

4 I've got a motorbike.

5 I go to the cinema a lot.

6 I want to be a teacher.

1 Do you still play the piano?

2 Do you

3 Are

4

5

6

95.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

before

1  → 

now

(before) They were waiting for the bus.

(still) They are still waiting.

(yet) The bus hasn't come yet.

2  → 

(before) He was

(still) He

(yet) yet.

3  → 

(before) She asleep.

(still)

(yet)

4  → 

(before) They

(still)

(yet)

95.3 Write questions with **yet**.

- 1 You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now. You ask her: Are you ready yet?
- 2 You are waiting for Helen to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask somebody: Helen
- 3 Anna did an exam and is waiting for the results. Perhaps she has her results now. You ask her: you
- 4 A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now. You ask him:

95.4 Complete the sentences. Use **already**.

1 What time is Joe coming?

2 Do they want to see the film?

3 I have to see Julia before she goes.

4 Do you need a pen?

5 Shall I pay the bill?

6 Shall I tell Paul about the meeting?

He's already here.

No, they've already seen it.

It's too late. She

No, thanks. I one.

No, it's OK. I

No, he I told him.

Give me that book! Give it to me!

A

give lend pass send show

After these verbs (**give/lend** etc.), there are two possible structures:

give something to somebody

☐ I gave **the keys** to Sarah.

give somebody something

☐ I gave **Sarah** the keys.



SARAH

B

give **something to somebody**

		something	to somebody
That's my book.	Give	it	to me.
These are Sue's keys. Can you	give	them	to her?
Can you	give	these flowers	to your mother?
I	lent	my car	to a friend of mine.
Did you	send	the money	to Kate?
We've seen these photos. You	showed	them	to us.

C

give **somebody something**

		somebody	something
	Give	me	that book. It's mine.
Tom	gave	his mother	some flowers.
I	lent	Joe	some money.
How much money did you	lend	him?	
I	sent	you	an email. Did you get it?
Nicola	showed	us	her holiday photos.
Can you	pass	me	the salt, please?

You can also say '**buy/get** somebody something':

- ☐ I **bought my mother** some flowers. (= I bought some flowers **for** my mother.)
- ☐ I'm going to the shop. Can I **get you** anything? (= get anything for you)

D

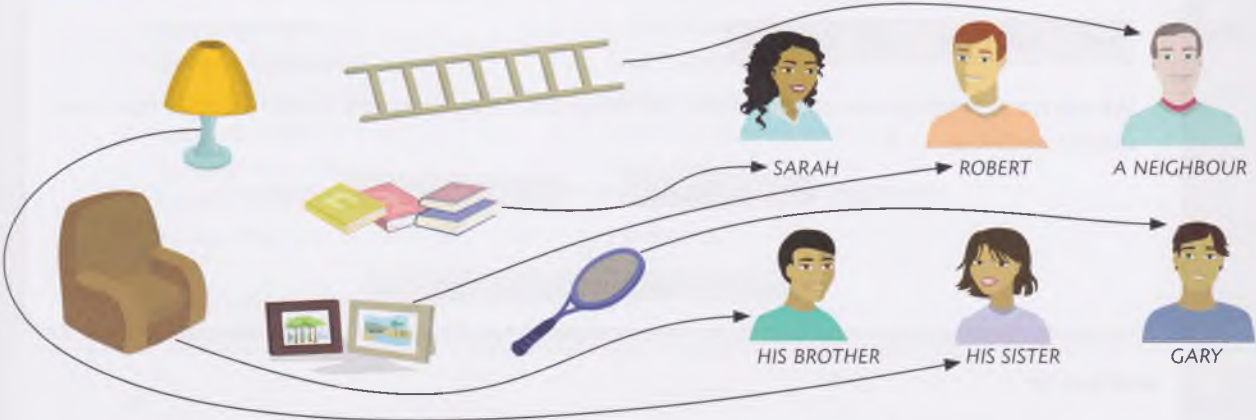
You can say:

- ☐ I **gave** the keys **to Sarah**.
- and I **gave Sarah** the keys.
(but not I gave to Sarah the keys)
- ☐ That's my book. Can you **give it to me**?
- and Can you **give me** that book?
(but not Can you give to me that book?)

We prefer the first structure (**give** something **to** somebody) with **it** or **them**:

- ☐ I gave **it to her**. (not I gave her it)
- ☐ Here are the keys. Give **them to your father**. (not Give your father them)

96.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.



Write sentences beginning **He gave ...**

- 1 What did Mark do with the armchair? *He gave it to his brother.*
- 2 What did he do with the tennis racket? He gave
- 3 What happened to the books? He
- 4 What about the lamp?
- 5 What did he do with the pictures?
- 6 And the ladder?

96.2 You gave presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.

1 PAUL 	2 JOANNA 	3 RICHARD 	4 EMMA 	5 RACHEL 	6 KEVIN
------------	--------------	---------------	------------	--------------	-------------

- 1 *I gave Paul a book.*
- 2 I gave
- 3 I
- 4
- 5
- 6

96.3 Write questions beginning **Can you give me ... ? / Can you pass me ... ?** etc.

- 1 (you want the salt) (pass) *Can you pass me the salt?*
- 2 (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you
- 3 (you want my address) (give) Can your
- 4 (you need twenty pounds) (lend)
- 5 (you want more information) (send)
- 6 (you want to see the letter) (show)

96.4 Which is right?

- 1 ~~I gave to Sarah the keys.~~ / I gave Sarah the keys. (*I gave Sarah the keys is right*)
- 2 I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
- 3 Did you send the bill me? / Did you send the bill to me?
- 4 I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
- 5 Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
- 6 This is Lisa's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
- 7 I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.

and but or so because

sentence A The car stopped. The driver got out. sentence B
 The car stopped **and** the driver got out.

and/but/or

sentence A		sentence B	
We stayed at home	and	(we)* watched television.	* It is not necessary to repeat 'we' and 'she'.
My sister is married	and	(she)* lives in London.	
He doesn't like her,	and	she doesn't like him.	
I bought a sandwich,	but	I didn't eat it.	
It's a nice house,	but	it doesn't have a garden.	
Do you want to go out,	or	are you too tired?	

In lists, we use commas (,). We use **and** before the last thing:

- ☐ I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair **and** fell asleep.
- ☐ Karen is at work, Sue has gone shopping **and** Chris is playing football.

so (the result of something)

sentence A		sentence B
It was very hot,	so	I opened the window.
Joe does a lot of sport,	so	he's very fit.
They don't like travelling,	so	they haven't been to many places.

because (the reason for something)

sentence A		sentence B
I opened the window	because	it was very hot.
Joe can't come to the party	because	he's going away.
Lisa is hungry	because	she didn't have breakfast.

Because is also possible at the beginning:

- ☐ **Because it was very hot,** I opened the window.

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:

- ☐ It was late **and** I was tired, **so** I went to bed.
- ☐ I always enjoy visiting London, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.

97.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use **and/but/or**.

~~I stayed at home.~~

~~I bought a sandwich.~~

I went to the window.

I wanted to phone you.

I jumped into the river.

I usually drive to work.

Do you want me to come with you?

I didn't have your number.

Shall I wait here?

~~I didn't eat it.~~

I went by bus this morning.

~~I watched TV.~~

I swam to the other side.

I looked out.

1 I stayed at home and watched TV.

2 I bought a sandwich, but I didn't eat it.

3 I

4

5

6

7

97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **and/but/so/because**.



1 It was very hot, so he opened the window.

2 They couldn't play tennis

3 They went to the museum,

4 Ben wasn't hungry,

5 Helen was late

6 Sue said

97.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use **and/but** etc.

1 (and) In the evening I stayed at home and studied.

2 (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.

3 (but)

4 (and)

5 (so)

6 (because)

A

When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

when I went out + **it was raining**

You can say:

- ☐ **When I went out**, it was raining. or
It was raining when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if **When ...** is at the beginning:

- ☐ **When** you're tired, don't drive.
 Don't drive **when** you're tired.
- ☐ Helen was 25 **when** she got married.
When Helen got married, she was 25.

We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after**:

- ☐ Always look both ways **before** you cross the road.
Before you cross the road, always look both ways.
- ☐ **While** I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
 It began to rain **while** I was waiting for the bus.
- ☐ He never played football again **after** he broke his leg.
After he broke his leg, he never played football again.

B

When I am ... / When I go ... etc.

Next week Sarah is going to New York.
 She has a friend, Lisa, who lives in New York,
 but Lisa is also going away – to Mexico.
 So they won't see each other in New York.

Lisa **will be** in Mexico **when** Sarah **is** in New York.The time is *future* (**next week**) but we say:

... **when** Sarah **is** in New York.
 (not when Sarah will be)



SARAH

LISA

We use the *present* (**I am / I go** etc.) with a *future meaning* after **when**:

- ☐ **When I get** home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
 (not When I will get home)
- ☐ I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later **when I have** more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**:

- ☐ Please close the window **before** you **go** out.
 (not before you will go)
- ☐ Rachel is going to stay in our flat **while** we **are** away.
 (not while we will be)
- ☐ I'll wait here **until** you **come** back.
 (not until you will come back)

Exercises

98.1 Write sentences beginning with **when**. Choose from the boxes.

When +

~~I went out~~
I'm tired
I knocked on the door
I go on holiday
the programme ended
I got to the hotel

+

I turned off the TV
I always go to the same place
there were no rooms
~~it was raining~~
there was no answer
I like to watch TV

- 1 When I went out, it was raining.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

98.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

somebody broke into the house **before they came here** **when they heard the news**
~~before they crossed the road~~ **while they were away** **they didn't believe me**
they went to live in New Zealand

- 1 They looked both ways before they crossed the road.
- 2 They were very surprised
- 3 After they got married,
- 4 Their house was damaged in a storm
- 5 Where did they live ?
- 6 While we were asleep,
- 7 When I told them what happened,

98.3 Which is right?

- 1 ~~I stay~~ / I'll stay here until you come / ~~you'll come~~ back. (I'll stay and you come are right)
- 2 I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
- 3 We must do something before it's / it will be too late.
- 4 Helen is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
- 5 Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
- 6 We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in England again.
- 7 When I come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring our holiday photos.
- 8 I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.
- 9 Let's go out for a walk before it gets / it will get dark.
- 10 I'm not ready yet. I tell / I'll tell you when I'm / I'll be ready.

98.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- 1 Can you close the window before you go out. ?
- 2 What are you going to do when ?
- 3 When I have enough money,
- 4 I'll wait for you while
- 5 When I start my new job,
- 6 Will you be here when ?

If we go ... If you see ... etc.

A



If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If at the beginning

- If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.
 If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.
 If you're hungry, have something to eat.
 If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

if in the middle

- It will be cheaper if we go by bus.
 You'll miss the train if you don't hurry.
 I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
 Is it OK if I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the **if**-part of the sentence alone:

- ☐ 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, **if I can get a ticket**.'

B

If you see Ann tomorrow ... etc.

After **if**, we use the present (*not* will). We say '**if you see ...**' (*not* if you will see):

- ☐ If you **see** Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
☐ If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (*not* if I will be)
☐ What shall we do **if it rains**? (*not* if it will rain)
☐ If I **don't feel** well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.

C

if and when

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure:

- ☐ A: Are you going out later?
☐ B: Maybe. **If I go out**, I'll close the windows.

When I go out = I'm going out (for sure):

- ☐ A: Are you going out later?
☐ B: Yes, I am. **When I go out**, I'll close the windows.

Compare **when** and **if**:

- ☐ **When** I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
☐ If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (*not* When I'm late)
☐ We're going to play tennis **if** it doesn't rain. (*not* when it doesn't rain)

Exercises

99.1 Write sentences beginning with **if**. Choose from the boxes.

If +

~~you don't hurry~~
you pass the exam
you fail the exam
you don't want this magazine
you want those pictures
you're busy now
you're hungry
you need money

+

we can have lunch now
you can have them
I can lend you some
you'll get a certificate
~~you'll be late~~
I'll throw it away
we can talk later
you can do it again

- 1 If you don't hurry, you'll be late.
- 2 If you pass
- 3 If
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

99.2 Which is right?

- 1 If I'm / ~~I'll be~~ late this evening, don't wait for me. (I'm is right)
- 2 Will you call me if I give / I'll give you my phone number?
- 3 If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
- 4 If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the evening.
- 5 I'm / I'll be surprised if Michael and Jane get / will get married.
- 6 Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

99.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- 1 I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
- 2 If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.
- 3 I don't want to disturb you if
- 4 If you go to bed early tonight,
- 5 Turn the TV off if
- 6 Tina won't pass her exams if
- 7 If I have time tomorrow,
- 8 We can go to the beach tomorrow if
- 9 I'll be surprised if

99.4 Write **if** or **when**.

- 1 If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.
- 2 I'm going to do some shopping now. I come back, we can have lunch.
- 3 I'm thinking of going to see Tom. I go, will you come with me?
- 4 you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.
- 5 Is it OK I close the window?
- 6 John is still at school. he leaves school, he wants to go to college.
- 7 Shall we have a picnic tomorrow the weather is good?
- 8 We're going to Madrid next week. We don't have anywhere to stay – we hope to find a hotel
..... we get there. I don't know what we'll do we don't find a room.

If I had ... If we went ... etc.

A

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn't have one.
He doesn't have enough money.

If he **had** the money, he **would buy** a fast car.

Usually **had** is *past*, but in this sentence **had** is *not past*. If he **had** the money = if he had the money *now* (but he doesn't have it).

If I had the money ...



DAN

If	I	had / knew / lived (etc.) ... ,	I	would ...
	you	didn't have / didn't know (etc.) ... ,	you	wouldn't ...
	it	were ... ,	it	could ...
	they	could ... ,	they	couldn't ...

You can say:

- ☐ If he **had** the money, he would buy a car.
- or He would buy a car **if he had** the money.

I'd / she'd / they'd etc. = I **would** / she **would** / they **would** etc. :

- ☐ I don't know the answer. If I **knew** the answer, I'd **tell** you.
- ☐ It's raining, so we're not going out. We'd **get** wet **if we went** out.
- ☐ Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She **wouldn't be** happy **if she lived** in the country.
- ☐ If you **didn't have** a job, what **would** you **do**? (but you *have* a job)
- ☐ I'm sorry I can't help you. I'd **help** you **if I could**. (but I *can't*)
- ☐ If we **had** a car, we **could travel** more. (but we *don't* have a car, so we *can't* travel much)

B

If (I) **was/were** ...

You can say: **if** I/he/she/it **was** or
if I/he/she/it **were**

- ☐ It's not a very nice place. I wouldn't go there **if I were you**. (or ... **if I was** you)
- ☐ It would be nice **if the weather was** better. (or ... **if the weather were** better)
- ☐ What would Tom do **if he were** here? (or ... **if he was** here)

I wouldn't go out if I were you.



C

Compare:

if I have / if it is etc.

- ☐ I must go and see Helen.
If I have time, I **will go** today.
(= maybe I'll have time, so maybe I'll go)
- ☐ I like that jacket.
I'll buy it **if it isn't** too expensive.
(= maybe it will not be too expensive)
- ☐ I'll **help** you **if I can**. (= maybe I can)

if I had / if it was etc.

- ☐ I must go and see Helen.
If I had time, I **would go** today.
(= I don't have time today, so I will not go)
- ☐ I like this jacket, but it's very expensive.
I'd buy it **if it wasn't** so expensive.
(= it is expensive, so I'm not going to buy it)
- ☐ I'd **help** you **if I could**, but I can't.

100.1 Complete the sentences.

- I don't know the answer. If I knew the answer, I'd tell you.
- I have a car. I couldn't travel very much if I didn't have a car.
- I don't want to go out. If I to go out, I'd go.
- We don't have a key. If we a key, we could get into the house.
- I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I hungry.
- Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she it.
- He can't speak any foreign languages. If he speak a foreign language, perhaps he would get a better job.
- You don't try hard enough. If you harder, you would have more success.
- I have a lot to do today. If I so much to do, we could go out.

100.2 Put the verb in the correct form.

- If he had the money, he would buy a fast car. (he/have)
- Jane likes living in a city. She wouldn't be happy if she lived in the country. (she/not/be)
- If I wanted to learn Italian, to Italy. (I go)
- I haven't told Helen what happened. She'd be angry if (she/know)
- If a map, I could show you where I live. (we/have)
- What would you do if a lot of money? (you/win)
- It's not a very good hotel. there if I were you. (I/not/stay)
- If nearer London, we would go there more often. (we/live)
- It's a shame you have to go now. nice if you had more time. (it/be)
- I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if better. (the salary/be)
- I don't know anything about cars. If the car broke down, what to do. (I/not/know)
- If you could change one thing in the world, what ? (you/change)

100.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.

we (have) a bigger house	it (be) a bit cheaper
we (buy) a bigger house	the air (be) cleaner
we (have) some pictures on the wall	I (watch) it
every day (be) the same	I (be) bored

- I'd buy that jacket if it was a bit cheaper
- If there was a good film on TV tonight,
- This room would be nicer if
- If there wasn't so much traffic,
- Life would be boring if
- If I had nothing to do,
- We could invite all our friends to stay if
- If we had more money,

100.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

- I'd be happier if I could get a better job
- If I could go anywhere in the world,
- I wouldn't be very happy if
- I'd buy if
- If I saw an accident in the street,
- The world would be a better place if

a person **who** ... a thing **that/which** ...
(relative clauses 1)

A

I can speak six languages.

I met a woman. **She** can speak six languages.

..... 2 sentences

she → who

..... 1 sentence

I met **a woman who** can speak six languages.

JACK

Jack was wearing a hat. **It** was too big for him.

..... 2 sentences

it → **that or which**

..... 1 sentence

Jack was wearing **a hat that** was too big for him.

or

Jack was wearing **a hat which** was too big for him.

B

who is for people (not things):

A thief is a person	who steals things.
Do you know anybody	who can play the piano?
The man	who phoned
The people	who work in the office

didn't give his name.
are very friendly.

C

that is for things or people:

An airplane is a machine	that flies.
Emma lives in a house	that is 400 years old.
The people	that work in the office
	are very friendly.

You can use **that** for people, but **who** is more usual.

D

which is for things (not people):

An airplane is a machine	which flies. (not a machine who ...)
Emma lives in a house	which is 400 years old.

Do not use **which** for people:

- ☐ Do you remember **the woman who** was playing the piano at the party?
(not the woman which ...)

101.1 Choose from the boxes and write sentences: **A ... is a person who ...**. Use a dictionary if necessary.

a thief	a dentist
a butcher	a fool
a musician	a genius
a patient	a liar

doesn't tell the truth	is ill in hospital
takes care of your teeth	steals things
is very intelligent	does stupid things
plays a musical instrument	sells meat

- 1 A thief is a person who steals things.
- 2 A butcher is a person
- 3 A musician
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

101.2 Make one sentence from two.

- 1 (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.)
The man who phoned didn't give his name.
- 2 (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
The woman a yellow dress.
- 3 (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)
Most of the students
- 4 (A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)
The

101.3 Write **who** or **which**.

- 1 I met a woman who can speak six languages.
- 2 What's the name of the man has just started work in your office?
- 3 What's the name of the river flows through the town?
- 4 Where is the picture was hanging on the wall?
- 5 Do you know anybody wants to buy a car?
- 6 You always ask questions are difficult to answer.
- 7 I have a friend is very good at repairing cars.
- 8 I think everybody went to the party enjoyed it very much.
- 9 Why does he always wear clothes are too small for him?

101.4 Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

- 1 A thief is a person which steals things. a person who steals
- 2 An airplane is a machine that flies. OK
- 3 A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee.
- 4 What's happened to the money that was on the table?
- 5 I don't like people which never stop talking.
- 6 I know somebody that can help you.
- 7 I know somebody who works in that shop.
- 8 Correct the sentences who are wrong.
- 9 My neighbour bought a car who cost £40,000.

A



The man is carrying a bag. } 2 sentences
It's very heavy.

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy.

..... 1 sentence



KATE

Kate won some money. } 2 sentences
What is she going to do with it?

What is Kate going to do with **the money (that) she won**?

..... 1 sentence

You can say:

- ☐ The bag **that** he is carrying ... or The bag he is carrying ... (with or without **that**)
- ☐ ... the money **that** Kate won? or ... the money Kate won?

You do not need **that/who/which** when it is the *object*:

subject	verb	object	
The man	was carrying	a bag	→ the bag (that) the man was carrying
Kate	won	some money	→ the money (that) Kate won
You	wanted	some books	→ the books (that) you wanted
We	met	some people	→ the people (who) we met

- ☐ Did you find **the books you wanted**? (or ... the books **that** you wanted?)
- ☐ **The people we met** were very friendly. (or The people **who** we met ...)
- ☐ **Everything I said** was true. (or Everything **that** I said ...)

We say:

- ☐ The film **we saw** was very good. (not The film we saw it was ...)

B

Sometimes there is a *preposition* (**to/in/at** etc.) after the verb:

Eve is talking to a man.	→ Do you know the man Eve is talking to ?
We stayed at a hotel.	→ The hotel we stayed at was near the station.
I told you about some books.	→ These are the books I told you about .

We say:

... the books **I told you about**. (not the books I told you about them)

You can say '(a place) **where** ...':

- ☐ **The hotel where** we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at ...)

C

You must use **who/that/which** when it is the *subject* (→ Unit 101):

- ☐ I met a woman **who can speak** six languages. (**who** is the subject)
- ☐ Jack was wearing a hat **that was** too big for him. (**that** is the subject)

Exercises

102.1 Make one sentence from two.

- 1 (Helen took some pictures. Have you seen them?)
Have you seen the pictures Helen took?
- 2 (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)
I've lost the
- 3 (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
I like the
- 4 (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
Where are the ?
- 5 (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
I
- 6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
How ?

102.2 Make one sentence from two.

- 1 (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
The bag I was carrying was very heavy.
- 2 (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
The
- 3 (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)
The shoes
- 4 (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)
The

102.3 You ask your friend some questions. Complete the sentences.

- 1 Your friend stayed at a hotel. You ask:
What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ?
- 2 Your friend was talking to some people. You ask:
Who are the people ?
- 3 Your friend was looking for some keys. You ask:
Did you find the ?
- 4 Your friend is going to a party. You ask:
Where is the ?
- 5 Your friend was talking about a film. You ask:
What's the name of ?
- 6 Your friend is listening to some music. You ask:
What's that ?
- 7 Your friend applied for a job. You ask:
Did you get ?

102.4 Complete the questions. Use where.

- 1 John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:
Did you like the hotel where you stayed ?
- 2 Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:
What's the name of the restaurant ?
- 3 Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:
How big is the ?
- 4 Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
Where exactly is ?

A

at



at

8 o'clock
10.30
midnight etc.

- ☐ I start work **at 8 o'clock**.
☐ The shops close **at 5.30**.

on



on

Sunday(s) / Monday(s) etc.
25 April / 6 June etc.
New Year's Day etc.

- ☐ Bye! I'll see you **on Friday**.
☐ What do you usually do **on Sundays**?
☐ The concert is **on 22 November**.

in



in

April/June etc.
2013/1988 etc.
summer/spring etc.

- ☐ I'm going on holiday **in October**.
☐ Emma was born **in 1995**.
☐ The park is beautiful **in spring**.

B

We say:

at the weekend
at night
at Christmas
at the end of ...
at the moment

- ☐ Are you going away **at the weekend**?
☐ I can't sleep **at night**.
☐ Where will you be **at Christmas**? (*but on Christmas Day*)
☐ I'm going on holiday **at the end of** October.
☐ Are you busy **at the moment**?

C

in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening

- ☐ I always feel good **in the morning**.
☐ Do you often go out **in the evening**?

*but***on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night** etc. :

- ☐ I'm meeting Jackie **on Monday morning**.
☐ Are you doing anything **on Saturday night**?

D

We do *not* use **at/on/in** before:

this ... (**this morning / this week** etc.)
last ... (**last August / last week** etc.)
next ... (**next Monday / next week** etc.)
every ... (**every day / every week** etc.)

- ☐ Are you going out **this evening**?
☐ We go on holiday **every summer**. **Last summer** we went to Canada.
☐ I'm leaving **next Monday**.
(*not on next Monday*)

E

in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years etc.

now



in five minutes

- ☐ Hurry! The train leaves **in five minutes**.
(= it leaves five minutes from now)
☐ Bye! I'll see you **in a few days**.
(= a few days from now)

Exercises

103.1 Write at/on/in.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 <u>on</u> 6 June | 7 24 September | 13 Friday morning |
| 2 <u>in</u> the evening | 8 Thursday | 14 Saturday night |
| 3 half past two | 9 11.45 | 15 night |
| 4 Wednesday | 10 Christmas Day | 16 the end of the day |
| 5 2007 | 11 Christmas | 17 the weekend |
| 6 September | 12 the morning | 18 winter |

103.2 Write at/on/in.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Bye! See you <u>on</u> Friday. | 11 I often go away the weekend. |
| 2 Where were you 28 February? | 12 I'm starting my new job 3 July. |
| 3 I got up 8 o'clock this morning. | 13 We often go to the beach summer. |
| 4 I like getting up early the morning. | 14 George isn't here the moment. |
| 5 My sister got married May. | 15 Jane's birthday is December. |
| 6 Jessica and I first met 2006. | 16 Do you work Saturdays? |
| 7 Did you go out Tuesday? | 17 The company started 1999. |
| 8 Did you go out Tuesday evening? | 18 I like to look at the stars night. |
| 9 Do you often go out the evening? | 19 I'll send you the money the end of the month. |
| 10 Let's meet 7.30 tomorrow evening. | |

103.3 Look at Lisa's diary for next week and complete the sentences.



- Lisa is going to the cinema on Wednesday evening.
- She has to phone Chris
- She isn't doing anything special
- She's got a driving lesson
- She's going to a party
- She's meeting Sam

103.4 Write sentences with in ...

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 It's 8.25 now. The train leaves at 8.30. | <u>The train leaves in five minutes.</u> |
| 2 It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday. | I'll days. |
| 3 Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June. | My |
| 4 It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30. | Tom |

103.5 Write at/on/in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 I'm going <u>on</u> Friday. | 7 What are you doing the weekend? |
| 2 I'm going next Friday. (already complete) | 8 I phone Robert every Sunday. |
| 3 I always feel tired the evening. | 9 Shall we play tennis next Sunday? |
| 4 Will you be at home this evening? | 10 I can't go to the party Sunday. |
| 5 We went to France last summer. | 11 I'm going out. I'll be back an hour. |
| 6 Laura was born 1997. | 12 I don't often go out night. |

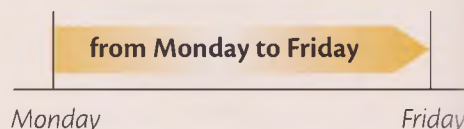
from ... to until since for

A from ... to ...

- ☐ We lived in Japan **from** 2003 **to** 2010.
☐ I work **from** Monday **to** Friday.

You can also say **from ... until ...**:

- ☐ We lived in Japan **from** 2003 **until** 2010.



B until ...

until

Friday
December
3 o'clock
I come back

- ☐ They're going away tomorrow.
They'll be away **until Friday**.
☐ I went to bed early, but I wasn't tired.
I read a book **until 3 o'clock**.
☐ Wait here **until I come back**.

until Friday

Friday

You can also say **till** (= **until**):

- ☐ Wait here **till** I come back.

Compare:

- ☐ 'How long will you be away?' 'Until Monday.'
☐ 'When are you coming back?' 'On Monday.'

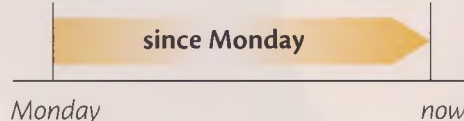
C since + a time in the past (to now)

We use **since** after the *present perfect* (**have been** / **have done** etc.):

since

Monday
1998
2.30
I arrived

- ☐ Joe is in hospital. He has been
in hospital **since Monday**.
(= from Monday to now)
☐ Sue and Dave have been
married **since 1998**.
(= from 1998 to now)
☐ It has been raining **since I arrived**.



Compare:

- ☐ We lived in Japan **from** 2003 **to** 2010.
We lived in Japan **until** 2010.
☐ Now we live in Canada. We came to Canada **in** 2010.
We have lived in Canada **since** 2010. (= from 2010 until now)

We use **for** (*not since*) + a period of time (**three days** / **ten years** etc.):

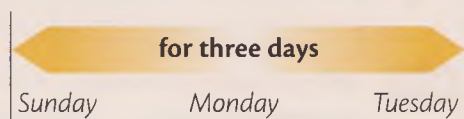
- ☐ Joe has been in hospital **for three days**. (*not since three days*)

D for + a period of time

for

three days
ten years
five minutes
a long time

- ☐ Gary stayed with us **for three days**.
☐ I'm going away **for a few weeks**.
☐ I'm going away **for the weekend**.
☐ They've been married **for ten years**.



104.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use **from ... to** / **until** / **since**.

ALEX	KAREN	CLARE	ADAM
			
I live in England now. I lived in Canada before. I came to England in 2009.	I live in Switzerland now. I lived in France before. I came to Switzerland in 2011.	I work in a hotel now. I worked in a restaurant before. I started work in the hotel in 2012.	I'm a journalist now. I was a teacher before. I started work as a journalist in 2008.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 (Alex / Canada / 2001 → 2009) | Alex lived <u>in Canada from 2001 to 2009</u> |
| 2 (Alex / Canada / → 2009) | Alex lived in Canada 2009. |
| 3 (Alex / England / 2009 →) | Alex has lived in England |
| 4 (Karen / France / → 2011) | Karen lived in |
| 5 (Karen / Switzerland / 2011 →) | Karen has lived in |
| 6 (Clare / a restaurant / 2010 → 2012) | Clare worked 2010 |
| 7 (Clare / a hotel / 2012 →) | Clare has worked |
| 8 (Adam / a teacher / 2002 → 2008) | Adam was a |
| 9 (Adam / a journalist / 2008 →) | Adam has been |

Now write sentences with **for**.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---|
| 10 (Alex / Canada) | <u>Alex lived in Canada for eight years</u> |
| 11 (Alex / England) | Alex has lived in England |
| 12 (Karen / Switzerland) | Karen has |
| 13 (Clare / a restaurant) | Clare worked |
| 14 (Clare / a hotel) | Clare |
| 15 (Adam / a teacher) | Adam |
| 16 (Adam / a journalist) | Adam |

104.2 Write **until/since/for**.

- Sue and Dave have been married since 1998.
- I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed 10 o'clock.
- We waited for Sue half an hour, but she didn't come.
- 'Have you just arrived?' 'No, I've been here half past seven.'
- 'How long did you stay at the party last night?' '..... midnight.'
- Dan and I are good friends. We have known each other ten years.
- I'm tired. I'm going to lie down a few minutes.
- Don't open the door of the train the train stops.
- This is my house. I've lived here I was seven years old.
- Jack has gone away. He'll be away Wednesday.
- Next week I'm going to Paris three days.
- I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work six.
- 'How long have you known Anna?' '..... we were at school together.'
- Where have you been? I've been waiting for you twenty minutes.

before after during while

A

before, during and after



before the film



during the film



after the film

- ☐ Everybody feels nervous **before** exams.
- ☐ I fell asleep **during** the film.
- ☐ We were tired **after** our visit to the museum.

B

before, while and after



before we played



while we were playing



after we played

- ☐ Don't forget to close the window **before** you go out.
- ☐ I often fall asleep **while** I'm reading.
- ☐ They went home **after** they did the shopping.

C

during while and for

We use **during** + *noun* (during **the film**). We use **while** + *verb* (while I'm reading):

- ☐ We didn't speak **during** the meal.

but We didn't speak **while** we were eating (not during we were eating)

Use **for** (not during) + *a period of time* (**three days** / **two hours** / **a year** etc.):

- ☐ We played tennis **for** two hours. (not during two hours)
- ☐ I lived in London **for** a year. (not during a year)

D

You can use **before/after** + *-ing* (**before going** / **after eating** etc.):

- ☐ I always have breakfast **before going** to work. (= before I go to work)
- ☐ **After doing** the shopping, they went home. (= after they did)

We say **before going** (not before to go), **after doing** (not after to do) etc.:

- ☐ **Before eating** the apple, I washed it carefully. (not before to eat)
- ☐ I started work **after reading** the newspaper. (not after to read)

105.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

after
before

during
while

+

lunch
the concert
the course

the end
~~the exam~~
the night

they went to Australia
you're waiting

- Everybody was nervous before the exam.
- I usually work four hours in the morning, and another three hours
- The film was really boring. We left
- Anna went to evening classes to learn German. She learnt a lot
- My aunt and uncle lived in London
- A: Somebody broke a window Did you hear anything?
B: No, I was asleep all the time.
- Would you like to sit down
- A: Are you going home?
B: Yes, I have to get up early tomorrow.

105.2 Write **during/while/for**.

- We didn't speak while we were eating.
- We didn't speak during the meal.
- Gary called you were out.
- Amy went to Italy and stayed in Rome five days.
- I didn't check my email I was away.
- The students looked very bored the lesson.
- I fell out of bed I was asleep.
- Last night I watched TV three hours.
- I don't usually watch TV the day.
- Do you ever watch TV you are having dinner?

105.3 Complete the sentences. Use **-ing (doing, having etc.)**.

- After doing the shopping, they went home.
- I felt sick after too much chocolate.
- I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully before it.
- I felt awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after a shower.
- After my work, I left the office and went home.
- Before to a foreign country, it's good to try and learn a little of the language.

105.4 Write sentences with **before + -ing** and **after + -ing**.

- They did the shopping. Then they went home.
After doing the shopping, they went home.
- John left school. Then he worked in a bookshop for two years.
John worked
- I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.
Before
- We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
After
- Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out.
Let's

in at on (places 1)

A

in



in a room
in a shop
in a car
in the water



in a garden
in a town
in the city centre
in Brazil

- ☐ 'Where's David?' 'In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London.'
- ☐ What's **in that box** / **in that bag** / **in that cupboard**?
- ☐ Rachel works **in a shop** / **in a bank** / **in a factory**.
- ☐ I went for a swim **in the river** / **in the pool** / **in the sea**.
- ☐ Milan is **in the north of Italy**. Naples is **in the south**.
- ☐ I live **in a big city**, but I'd like to live in the country.

B

at



at the bus stop



at the door



at the traffic lights



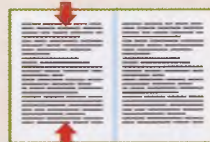
at her desk

- ☐ There's somebody **at the bus stop** / **at the door**.
- ☐ The car is waiting **at the traffic lights**.
- ☐ Vicky is working **at her desk**.

at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of ...):

- ☐ Write your name **at the top of the page**.
- ☐ My house is **at the end of the street**.

at the top (of the page)



at the bottom (of the page)

C

on



on a shelf
on a plate
on a balcony
on the floor
etc.

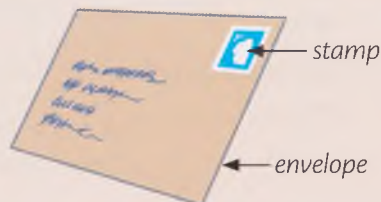


on a wall
on a door
on the ceiling
etc.

- ☐ There are some books **on the shelf** and some pictures **on the wall**.
- ☐ There are a lot of apples **on those trees**.
- ☐ Don't sit **on the grass**. It's wet.
- ☐ There is a stamp **on the envelope**.

on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motorbike:

- ☐ Who is that man **on the motorbike**?



stamp

envelope

106.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **in/at/on**.

① (the kitchen)	② (the box)	③ (the box)	④ (the wall)
⑤ (the bus stop)	⑥ (the field)	⑦ (the balcony)	⑧ (the pool)
⑨ (the window)	⑩ (the ceiling)	⑪ (the table)	⑫ (the table)

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 Where is he? <u>In the kitchen.</u> | 7 Where are they standing? |
| 2 Where are the shoes? | 8 Where is she swimming? |
| 3 Where is the pen? | 9 Where is he standing? |
| 4 Where is the clock? | 10 Where is the spider? |
| 5 Where is the bus? | 11 Where is he sitting? |
| 6 Where are the horses? | 12 Where is she sitting? |

106.2 Write **in/at/on**.

- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- What do you have in your bag?
- Look! There's a man on the roof. What's he doing?
- There are a lot of fish in this river.
- Our house is number 45 – the number is on the door.
- 'Is the hospital near here?' 'Yes, turn left at the traffic lights.'
- It's difficult to park in the centre of town. It's better to take the bus.
- My sister lives in Brussels.
- There's a small park at the top of the hill.
- I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody at the door.
- Munich is a large city in the south of Germany.
- There are a few shops at the end of the street.
- It's difficult to carry a lot of things on a bike.
- I looked at the list of names. My name was at the bottom.
- There is a mirror on the wall in the living room.

in at on (places 2)

A

in

in bed
 in hospital
 in the sky
 in the world
 in a newspaper / in a book
 in a photo(graph) / in a picture
 in a car / in a taxi
 in the middle (of ...)

- ☐ 'Where's Kate?' 'She's **in bed**.'
- ☐ David's father is ill. He's **in hospital**.
- ☐ I like to look at the stars **in the sky** at night.
- ☐ What's the largest city **in the world**?
- ☐ I read about the accident **in the newspaper**.
- ☐ You look sad **in this picture**.
- ☐ Did you come here **in your car**?
- ☐ There's a big tree **in the middle** of the garden.

B

at

at home
 at work / at school
 at university / at college
 at the station / at the airport
 at Lisa's (house) / at my sister's (house) /
 at the doctor's / at the hairdresser's
 etc.
 at a concert / at a party / at a football
 match etc.

- ☐ Will you be **at home** this evening?
- ☐ 'Where's Kate?' 'She's **at work**'
- ☐ Helen is studying law **at university**.
- ☐ I'll meet you **at the station**, OK?
- ☐ A: Where were you yesterday?
 B: **At my sister's**.
- ☐ I saw Tom **at the doctor's**.
- ☐ There weren't many people **at the party**.

Often it is possible to use **in** or **at** for buildings (hotels, restaurants etc.):

- ☐ We stayed **at** a nice hotel. or We stayed **in** a nice hotel.

C

on



on a bus



on the first floor



on the way from A to B

on a bus / on a train / on a plane /
 on a ship
 on the ground floor / on the first floor
 etc.
 on the way (to ...) / on the way home

- ☐ Did you come here **on the bus**?
- ☐ The office is **on the first floor**.
- ☐ I met Anna **on the way** to work / **on the way** home.

107.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **in/at/on**.

① (hospital)



② (the airport)



③ (bed)



④ (a ship)



⑤ (the sky)



⑥ (a party)



⑦ (the doctor's)



⑧ (the second floor)



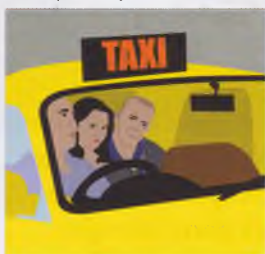
⑨ (work)



⑩ (a plane)



⑪ (a taxi)



⑫ (a wedding)



- 1 Where is she? In hospital.
- 2 Where are they?
- 3 Where is he?
- 4 Where are they?
- 5 Where are the stars?
- 6 Where are they?
- 7 Where is Steve?
- 8 Where is the restaurant?
- 9 Where is she?
- 10 Where are they?
- 11 Where are they?
- 12 Where are they?

107.2 Write **in/at/on**.

- 1 Helen is studying law at university.
- 2 There was a big table in the middle of the room.
- 3 What is the longest river in the world?
- 4 Were there many people at the concert last night?
- 5 Will you be at home tomorrow afternoon?
- 6 Who is the man in this photo? Do you know him?
- 7 Where are your children? Are they at school?
- 8 Gary is coming by train. I'm going to meet him at the station.
- 9 Charlie is in hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
- 10 How many pages are there in this book?
- 11 'Are you hungry after your journey?' 'No, I had something to eat on the train.'
- 12 I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down on the way here.
- 13 'Is Tom here?' 'No, he's at his friend's house.'
- 14 Don't believe everything you see in the newspaper!
- 15 I walked to work, but I came home on the bus.

A

to

go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ...



- ☐ We're **going to London** on Sunday.
- ☐ I want to **go to Italy** next year.
- ☐ We **walked from** my house **to the centre of town**.
- ☐ What time do you **go to bed**?



- ☐ The bus is **going to the airport**.
- ☐ Karen didn't **go to work** yesterday.
- ☐ I **went to a party** last night.
- ☐ You must **come to our house**.

in/at (→ Units 106–107)

be/stay/do something (etc.) in ...



- ☐ Piccadilly Circus **is in London**.
- ☐ My brother **lives in Italy**.
- ☐ The main shops **are in the centre of town**.
- ☐ I like **reading in bed**.

be/stay/do something (etc.) at ...



- ☐ The bus **is at the airport**.
- ☐ Sarah **wasn't at work** yesterday.
- ☐ I **met a lot of people at the party**.
- ☐ Helen **stayed at her brother's house**.

B

home

go/come/walk (etc.) home (without to):

- ☐ I'm tired. I'm **going home**.
(not to home)
- ☐ Did you **walk home**?

be/stay/do something (etc.) at home:

- ☐ I'm **staying at home** tonight.
- ☐ Dan doesn't work in an office.
He **works at home**.

C

arrive and get

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy / arrive in Paris etc.):

- ☐ They **arrived in this country** last week. (not arrived to this country)

arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work etc.):

- ☐ What time did you **arrive at the hotel**? (not arrive to the hotel)

get to (a place):

- ☐ What time did you **get to the hotel**?
- ☐ What time did you **get to Paris**?

get home / arrive home (no preposition):

- ☐ I was tired when I **got home**. or I was tired when I **arrived home**.

108.1 Write **to** or **in**.

- 1 I like reading in bed.
- 2 We're going Italy next month.
- 3 Sue is on holiday Italy at the moment.
- 4 I have to go the hospital tomorrow.
- 5 I was tired, so I stayed bed late.
- 6 What time do you usually go bed?
- 7 Does this bus go the centre?
- 8 Would you like to live another country?

108.2 Write **to** or **at** if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

- 1 Paula didn't go to work yesterday.
- 2 I'm tired. I'm going - home. (*already complete*)
- 3 Tina is not very well. She has gone the doctor.
- 4 Would you like to come a party on Saturday?
- 5 'Is Lisa home?' 'No, she's gone work.'
- 6 There were 20,000 people the football match.
- 7 Why did you go home early last night?
- 8 A boy jumped into the river and swam the other side.
- 9 There were a lot of people waiting the bus stop.
- 10 We had a good meal a restaurant, and then we went back the hotel.

108.3 Write **to**, **at** or **in** if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

- 1 I'm not going out this afternoon. I'm staying at home.
- 2 We're going a concert tomorrow evening.
- 3 I went New York last year.
- 4 How long did you stay New York?
- 5 Next year we hope to go Canada to visit some friends.
- 6 Do you want to go the cinema this evening?
- 7 Did you park your car the station?
- 8 After the accident three people were taken hospital.
- 9 How often do you go the dentist?
- 10 'Is Sarah here?' 'No, she's Helen's.'
- 11 My house is the end of the street on the left.
- 12 I went Maria's house, but she wasn't home.
- 13 There were no taxis, so we had to walk home.
- 14 'Who did you meet the party?' 'I didn't go the party.'

108.4 Write **to**, **at** or **in** if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

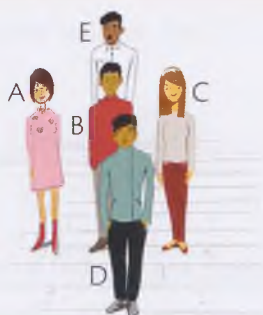
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 What time do you usually get work? | 4 When did you arrive London? |
| 2 What time do you usually get home? | 5 What time does the train get Paris? |
| 3 What time did you arrive the party? | 6 We arrived home very late. |

108.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use **to/in/at**.

- 1 At 3 o'clock this morning I was in bed
- 2 Yesterday I went
- 3 At 11 o'clock yesterday morning I was
- 4 One day I'd like to go
- 5 I don't like going
- 6 At 9 o'clock yesterday evening I was

under, behind, opposite etc.

A next to / beside / between / in front of / behind



A is **next to** B. or A is **beside** B.
B is **between** A and C.
D is **in front of** B.
E is **behind** B.

also

A is **on the left**.
C is **on the right**.
B is **in the middle** (of the group).

B opposite / in front of



A is sitting **in front of** B.
A is sitting **opposite** C.
C is sitting **opposite** A.

C by (= next to / beside)



by the window

- ☐ Our house is **by the sea**. (= beside the sea)
- ☐ Who is that man standing **by the window**?
- ☐ If you feel cold, why don't you sit **by the fire**?

D under



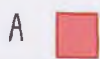
under the table



under a tree

- ☐ The cat is **under the table**.
- ☐ The girl is standing **under a tree**.
- ☐ I'm wearing a jacket **under my coat**.

E above and below



A is **above the line**.
(= higher than the line)



B is **below the line**.
(= lower than the line)



The pictures are **above the shelves**.

The shelves are **below the pictures**.

109.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.



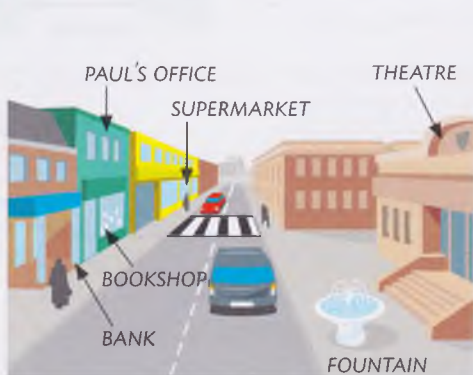
- 1 Carl is standing behind Frank.
- 2 Frank is sitting next to Emma.
- 3 Emma is sitting next to Becky.
- 4 Emma is sitting next to Daniela and Frank.
- 5 Daniela is sitting next to Emma.
- 6 Frank is sitting next to Carl.
- 7 Alan is standing behind Daniela.
- 8 Alan is standing to the left.
- 9 Becky is standing in the middle.

109.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



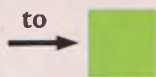
- 1 The cat is under the table.
- 2 There is a big tree in front of the house.
- 3 The plane is flying above the clouds.
- 4 She is standing next to the piano.
- 5 The cinema is on the right.
- 6 She's standing next to the fridge.
- 7 The switch is below the window.
- 8 The cupboard is above the sink.
- 9 There are some shoes under the bed.
- 10 The plant is next to the piano.
- 11 Paul is sitting opposite Fiona.
- 12 In Britain people drive on the left.

109.3 Write sentences about the picture.

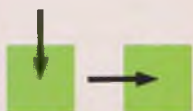
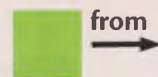


- 1 (next to) The bank is next to the bookshop.
- 2 (in front of) The theatre in front of the fountain.
- 3 (opposite) The fountain is opposite the theatre.
- 4 (next to) The office is next to the supermarket.
- 5 (above) The fountain is above the ground.
- 6 (between) The fountain is between the bank and the theatre.

up, over, through etc.

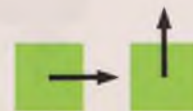


- ☐ Jane is going **to** France next week.
- ☐ We walked **from** the hotel **to** the station.
- ☐ A lot of English words come **from** Latin.



into (in)

- ☐ We jumped **into** the water.
- ☐ A man came **out of** the house and got **into** a car.
- ☐ Why are you looking **out of** the window?
- ☐ I took the old batteries **out of** the radio.



out of

We say **put** something **in** ... (*not usually into*):
☐ I **put** new batteries **in** the radio.

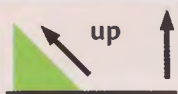


on

- ☐ Don't put your feet **on** the table.
- ☐ Please take your feet **off** the table.
- ☐ I'm going to hang some pictures **on** the wall.
- ☐ Be careful! Don't fall **off** your bike.
- ☐ We got **on** the bus in Princes Street.

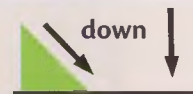


off



up

- ☐ We walked **up** the hill to the house.
- ☐ Be careful! Don't fall **down** the stairs.

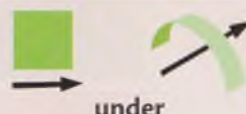


down

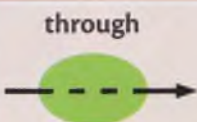


over

- ☐ The plane flew **over** the mountains.
- ☐ I jumped **over** the wall into the garden.
- ☐ Some people say it is unlucky to walk **under** a ladder.

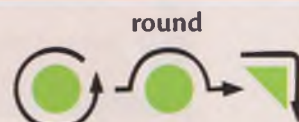


under



through

- ☐ A bird flew into the room **through** a window.
- ☐ The old road goes **through** the village.
- ☐ The new road goes **round** the village.
- ☐ The bus stop is just **round** the corner.
- ☐ I walked **round** the town and took some photographs.



round



through

You can also use **around** (= round):
☐ We walked **around** the town.



round the town



along

- ☐ I was walking **along** the road with my dog.
- ☐ Let's go for a walk **along** the river.
- ☐ The dog swam **across** the river.

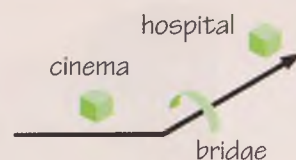


across



past

- ☐ They walked **past** me without speaking.
- ☐ A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
 B: Go along this road, **past** the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left.



bridge

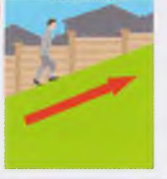
Exercises

Unit
110

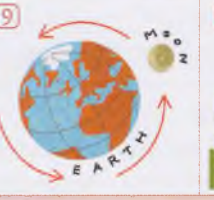
- 110.1** Somebody asks you how to get to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning **Go ...**.

Excuse me, where is ... ?

Go ...

 Go past the church.	 Go ... the bridge.	 ... the hill.	 ... the steps.	 ... this street.
 ...	 ...	 ...	 ...	 ...

- 110.2** Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 The dog swam <u>across</u> the river. | 6 Suddenly a car came the corner. |
| 2 A book fell the shelf. | 7 They drove the village. |
| 3 A plane flew the village. | 8 They got the train. |
| 4 A woman got the car. | 9 The moon travels the earth. |
| 5 A girl ran the road. | 10 They got the house a window. |

- 110.3** Complete the sentences. Use **over/from/into** etc.

- I looked the window and watched the people in the street.
- My house is very near here. It's just the corner.
- 'Where's my phone?' 'You put it your bag.'
- How far is it here the airport?
- We walked the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
- You can put your coat the back of the chair.
- In tennis, you have to hit the ball the net.
- Silvia took a key her bag and opened the door.

on at by with about

A

on

on holiday
on television
on the radio
on the phone
on fire
on time (= not late)

- ☐ Jane isn't at work this week. She's **on holiday**.
- ☐ We watched the news **on TV**.
- ☐ We listened to the news **on the radio**.
- ☐ I spoke to Rachel **on the phone** last night.
- ☐ The house is **on fire**! Call the fire brigade.
- ☐ 'Was the train late?' 'No, it was **on time**.'

B

at

at (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometres an hour / at 100 degrees etc. :

- ☐ Lisa got married **at 21**. (*or... at the age of 21.*)
- ☐ A car uses more petrol **at 120 kilometres an hour** than **at 90**.
- ☐ Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius**.

C

by

by car / by bus / by plane / by bike etc. :

- ☐ Do you like travelling **by train**?
- ☐ Jane usually goes to work **by bike**.

but on foot:

- ☐ You can't get there **by car**. You have to go **on foot**. (= you have to walk)

a book **by** ... / a painting **by** ... / a piece of music **by** ... etc. :

- ☐ Have you read any books **by Charles Dickens**?
- ☐ **Who** is that painting **by**? Picasso?

by after the passive (→ Unit 21):

- ☐ I was bitten **by a dog**.



D

with/without

- ☐ Did you stay at a hotel or **with friends**?
- ☐ Wait for me. Please don't go **without me**.
- ☐ Do you like your coffee **with** or **without milk**?
- ☐ I cut the paper **with a pair of scissors**.

a man **with** a beard / a woman **with** glasses etc. :

- ☐ Do you know that man **with the beard**?
- ☐ I'd like to have a house **with a big garden**.



E

about

talk/speak/think/hear/know about ... :

- ☐ Some people **talk about their work** all the time.
- ☐ I don't **know much about cars**.

a book / a question / a programme / information (etc.) **about** ... :

- ☐ There was **a programme about** volcanoes on TV last night. Did you see it?

Exercises

111.1 Complete the sentences. Use **on** + these words:

holiday the phone the radio TV time

- 1 We heard the news on the radio.
- 2 Please don't be late. Try to be here
- 3 I won't be here next week. I'm going
- 4 'Did you see Linda?' 'No, but I talked to her
- 5 'What's this evening?' 'Nothing that I want to watch.'

111.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **at/by/with** etc.



- 1 I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.
- 2 She usually goes to work car.
- 3 Who is the woman short hair?
- 4 They are talking the weather.
- 5 The car is fire.
- 6 She's listening to some music Mozart.
- 7 The plane is flying 600 miles an hour.
- 8 They're holiday.
- 9 Do you know the man sunglasses?
- 10 He's reading a book grammar
..... Vera P. Bull.

111.3 Complete the sentences. Use **at/by/with** etc.

- 1 In tennis, you hit the ball a racket.
- 2 It's cold today. Don't go out a coat.
- 3 *Hamlet, Othello* and *Macbeth* are plays William Shakespeare.
- 4 Do you know anything computers?
- 5 My grandmother died the age of 98.
- 6 How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles plane?
- 7 I didn't go to the football match, but I watched it TV.
- 8 My house is the one the red door on the right.
- 9 These trains are very fast. They can travel very high speeds.
- 10 I don't use my car very often. I prefer to go bike.
- 11 Can you give me some information hotels in this town?
- 12 I was arrested two policemen and taken to the police station.
- 13 The buses here are very good. They're nearly always time.
- 14 What would you like to drink your meal?
- 15 We travelled from Paris to Moscow train.
- 16 The museum has some paintings Rembrandt.

afraid of ... , good at ... etc. of/at/for etc. (prepositions) + -ing

A afraid of ... / good at ... etc. (adjective + preposition)



afraid of ... / scared of ...

angry with somebody
angry about something

different from ...
or **different to ...**

fed up with ...

full of ...

good at ...

interested in ...

married to ...

nice/kind of somebody to ...
be **nice/kind to** somebody

sorry about a situation
sorry for/about doing something

be/feel **sorry for** somebody

- ☐ Are you **afraid of** dogs?
- ☐ Why are you **angry with** me? What have I done?
- ☐ Are you **angry about** last night? (= something that happened last night)
- ☐ Lisa is very **different from** (or **to**) her sister.
- ☐ I'm **fed up with** my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
- ☐ The room was **full of people**.
- ☐ Are you **good at** maths?
- ☐ I'm not **interested in** sport.
- ☐ Sue is **married to** a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
- ☐ It was **kind of** you to help us. Thank you very much.
- ☐ David is very friendly. He's always very **nice to** me.
- ☐ I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm **sorry about** that.
- ☐ I'm **sorry for/about** not phoning you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)
- ☐ I feel **sorry for** them. They are in a very difficult situation.

B of/at/for (etc.) + -ing

After a preposition (**of/at/for** etc.), a verb ends in **-ing**:

I'm not very good at	telling	stories.
Are you fed up with	doing	the same thing every day?
I'm sorry for	not phoning	you yesterday.
Thank you for	helping	me.
Mark is thinking of	buying	a new car.
Tom left without	saying	goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)
After	doing	the shopping, they went home.

112.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **of/with/in** etc.



- 1 He's afraid of dogs.
- 2 She's interested in science.
- 3 She's married to a footballer.
- 4 She's very good at languages.
- 5 He's fed up with the weather.
- 6 A: Can I help you?
B: Thanks, that's very kind of you.

112.2 Complete the sentences with **in/of/with** etc.

- 1 I'm not interested in sport.
- 2 I'm not very good at sport.
- 3 I like Sarah. She's always very kind to me.
- 4 I'm sorry about your broken window. It was an accident.
- 5 He's very brave. He isn't scared of anything.
- 6 It was very nice of Jane to let us stay in her apartment.
- 7 Life today is very different from life 50 years ago.
- 8 Are you interested in politics?
- 9 I feel sorry for her, but I can't help her.
- 10 Chris was angry about what happened.
- 11 These boxes are very heavy. They are full of books.
- 12 I'm sorry about getting angry with you yesterday.

112.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm not very good at telling stories. (good/tell)
- 2 I wanted to go to the cinema, but Paula wasn't interested in. (interested/go)
- 3 Sue isn't very up in the morning. (good/get)
- 4 Let's go! I'm fed up. (fed up / wait)
- 5 I'm wake you up in the middle of the night. (sorry/wake)
- 6 Sorry I'm late! thank you. (thank you / wait)

112.4 Complete the sentences. Use **without -ing**.

- 1 (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye) Tom left without saying goodbye.
- 2 (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak)
Sue walked without speaking.
- 3 (Don't do anything / ask me first)
Don't ask me first.
- 4 (I went out / I didn't lock the door)
I went out without locking the door.

112.5 Write sentences about yourself.

- 1 (interested) I'm interested in sport.
- 2 (scared) I'm scared of spiders.
- 3 (not very good) I'm not very good at swimming.
- 4 (not interested) I'm not interested in history.
- 5 (fed up) I'm fed up with my homework.

listen to ... , look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)

A

ask (somebody) **for** ...**belong to** ...**happen to** ...**listen to** ...**talk to** somebody (**about** ...)**speak to** somebody (**about** ...)**thank** somebody **for** ...**think about** ... *or* **think of** ...**wait for** ...

- ☐ Don't **ask** me **for** money. I don't have any.
- ☐ This house doesn't **belong to** me. (= it's not mine)
- ☐ I can't find my phone. What's **happened to** it?
- ☐ **Listen to** this music. It's great.
- ☐ Did you **talk to** Paul **about** the problem?
- ☐ I'd like to **speak to** the manager, please.
- ☐ **Thank** you very much **for** your help.
- ☐ He never **thinks about** (*or of*) other people.
- ☐ Mark is **thinking of** (*or about*) buying a car.
- ☐ **Wait for** me. I'm nearly ready.

Note that we say **call/phone/text/email** somebody (no preposition):

- ☐ I have to **phone my parents** today.
(*not* phone to my parents)
- ☐ Shall I **text you** or **email you**?



B

look at / look for / look after**look at** ...

- ☐ He's **looking at** his watch.
- ☐ **Look at** these flowers! They're beautiful.
- ☐ Why are you **looking at** me like that?

look for ...

(= try to find)



- ☐ She's lost her key. She's **looking for** it.
- ☐ I'm **looking for** Sarah. Have you seen her?

look after ...

(= take care of, keep safe)

- ☐ When Emily is at work, a friend of hers **looks after** her children.
- ☐ Don't lose this book. **Look after** it.
(= Keep it safe.)

C

dependWe say **depend on** ... :

- ☐ A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
B: Sometimes. It **depends on** the restaurant. (*not* it depends of)

You can say **it depends what/where/how** (etc.) with or without **on**:

- ☐ A: Do you want to come out with us?
B: It **depends where** you're going. *or* It **depends on where** you're going.

Exercises

113.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **to/for/at** etc.



- 1 She's looking at her watch.
- 2 He's listening to the radio.
- 3 They're waiting for a taxi.
- 4 Paul is talking to Jane.
- 5 They're looking at a picture.
- 6 Sue is looking for Tom.

113.2 Complete the sentences with **to/for/about** etc. Two sentences are already complete, and no word is necessary.

- 1 Thank you very much for your help.
- 2 This isn't my umbrella. It belongs to a friend of mine.
- 3 I saw Steve, but I didn't speak to him.
- 4 Don't forget to phone to your mother tonight.
- 5 Thank you for the present. It was lovely.
- 6 What happened about Ella last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
- 7 We're thinking of going to Australia next year.
- 8 We asked the waiter for coffee, but he brought us tea.
- 9 'Do you like reading books?' 'It depends on the book.'
- 10 John was talking, but nobody was listening to what he was saying.
- 11 We waited for Karen until 2 o'clock, but she didn't come.
- 12 I texted to Lisa to tell her I would be late.
- 13 He's alone all day. He never talks to anybody.
- 14 'How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?' 'It depends on the type of room.'
- 15 Catherine is thinking of changing her job.

113.3 Complete these sentences. Use **at/for/after**.

- 1 I looked at the letter, but I didn't read it carefully.
- 2 When you are ill, you need somebody to look after you.
- 3 Excuse me, I'm looking for Hill Street. Is it near here?
- 4 Bye! Have a great holiday and look after yourself.
- 5 I want to take a picture of you. Please look at the camera and smile.
- 6 Ben is looking for a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

113.4 Answer these questions with **It depends ...**

- 1 Do you want to go out with us?
- 2 Do you like eating in restaurants?
- 3 Do you enjoy watching TV?
- 4 Can you do something for me?
- 5 Are you going away this weekend?
- 6 Can you lend me some money?

It depends where you're going.

It depends on the restaurant.

It depends

It

go in, fall off, run away etc.
(phrasal verbs 1)

A phrasal verb is a verb (go/look/be etc.) + in/out/up/down etc.

in



- ☐ I waited outside the shop. I didn't **go in**.
- ☐ Sarah opened the door of the car and **got in**. (= into the car)

out



- ☐ I went to the window and **looked out**.
- ☐ The car stopped and a woman **got out**. (= out of the car)

on



- ☐ The bus came, and I **got on**.

off



- ☐ Be careful! Don't **fall off**.

up



- ☐ He **stood up** and left the room.
- ☐ I usually **get up** early. (= get out of bed)
- ☐ We **looked up** at the stars in the sky.

down



- ☐ The picture **fell down**.
- ☐ Would you like to **sit down**?
- ☐ **Lie down** on the floor.

away or off



- ☐ The thief **ran away**. (or ... **ran off**)
- ☐ Emma got into the car and **drove away**. (or ... **drove off**)

back



- ☐ Go away and don't **come back**!
- ☐ We went out for dinner and then **went back** to our hotel.

be/go away (= in/to another place)

- ☐ Tom has **gone away** for a few days.

be back

- ☐ Tom is away. He'll **be back** on Monday.

over



- ☐ The wall wasn't very high, so we **climbed over**.
- ☐ **Turn over** and look at the next page.

round (or around)



- ☐ Somebody shouted my name, so I **looked round** (or **around**).
- ☐ We went for a long walk. After an hour we **turned round** (or **around**) and went back.

Exercises

114.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these verbs + **in/out/up** etc.

got got ~~looked~~ looked rode sat turned went



- 1 I went to the window and looked out.
- 2 The door was open, so we
- 3 He heard a plane, so he
- 4 She got on her bike and
- 5 I said hello, and he
- 6 The bus stopped, and she
- 7 There was a free seat, so she
- 8 A car stopped, and two men

114.2 Complete the sentences. Use **out/away/back** etc.

- 1 'What happened to the picture on the wall?' 'It fell down.'
- 2 Wait a minute. Don't go I want to ask you something.
- 3 Lisa heard a noise behind her, so she looked to see what it was.
- 4 I'm going now to do some shopping. I'll be at 5 o'clock.
- 5 I'm feeling very tired. I'm going to lie on the sofa.
- 6 When you have read this page, turn and read the other side.
- 7 Mark is from Canada. He lives in London now, but he wants to go to Canada.
- 8 We haven't got a key to the house, so we can't get
- 9 I was very tired this morning. I couldn't get
- 10 A: When are you going ?
B: On the 5th. And I'm coming on the 24th.

114.3 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 6 (page 250). Complete the sentences. Choose a verb from the box + **on/off/up** etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form.

break fall give hold speak ~~wake~~
carry get go slow take

+ **on/off/up/down/over**

- 1 I went to sleep at 10 o'clock and woke up at 8 o'clock the next morning.
- 2 'It's time to go.' '..... a minute. I'm not ready yet.'
- 3 The train and finally stopped.
- 4 I like flying, but I'm always nervous when the plane
- 5 How are your children? How are they at school?
- 6 It's difficult to hear you. Can you a little?
- 7 This car isn't very good. It has many times.
- 8 When babies try to walk, they sometimes
- 9 The hotel isn't far from here. If you along this road, you'll see it on the left.
- 10 I tried to find a job, but I It was impossible.
- 11 The fire alarm and everyone had to leave the building.

put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)

A

Sometimes a phrasal verb (**put on** / **take off** etc.) has an *object*. For example:

verb object
put on your coat



You can say:

put on your coat
or **put** your coat **on**

But **it/them** (pronouns) always go before **on/off** etc.:

put **it on** (not put on it)

- ☐ It was cold, so I **put on** my coat.
or ... I **put** my coat **on**.
- ☐ Here's your coat. **Put it on**.

verb object
take off your shoes



You can say:

take off your shoes
or **take** your shoes **off**

take **them off** (not take off them)

- ☐ I'm going to **take off** my shoes.
or ... **take** my shoes **off**.
- ☐ Your shoes are dirty. **Take them off**.

B

Some more phrasal verbs + *object*:

turn on / **turn off** (lights, machines, taps etc.):

- ☐ It was dark, so I **turned on** the light.
or ... I **turned** the light **on**.
- ☐ I don't want to watch this programme.
You can **turn it off**.



also **switch on** / **switch off** (lights, machines etc.):

- ☐ I **switched on** the light and **switched off** the television.



pick up / **put down**:

- ☐ Those are my keys on the floor.
Can you **pick them up** for me?
- ☐ I stopped reading and **put** my book **down**.
or ... **put down** my book.



bring back / **take back** / **give back** / **put back**:

- ☐ You can take my umbrella, but please **bring it back**.
- ☐ I **took** my new sweater **back** to the shop. It was too small for me.
- ☐ I've got Rachel's keys. I have to **give them back** to her.
- ☐ I read the letter and then **put it back** in the envelope.



Exercises

115.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?



- 1 He turned on the light 4 She
2 She 5 He
3 He 6 She

115.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

1	I turned on the radio.	<u>I turned the radio on.</u>	<u>I turned it on.</u>
2	He put on his jacket.	He	He
3	She	She took her glasses off.	.....
4	I picked up the phone.	.....	.....
5	They gave back the key.	.....	.....
6	.....	We turned the lights off.	.....

115.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with **it** or **them**.

bring back pick up switch off take back turn on

- 1 I wanted to watch something on TV, so I turned it on
2 My new lamp doesn't work. I'm going to to the shop.
3 There were some gloves on the floor, so I and put them on the table.
4 The heating was on but it was too warm, so I
5 Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to

115.4 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 7 (page 251). Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box. Sometimes you will also need to use **it/them/me**.

fill in knock down look up show round turn down
give up knock over put out throw away try on

- 1 They knocked a lot of houses down when they built the new road.
2 That music is very loud. Can you turn it down ?
3 I a glass and broke it.
4 'What does this word mean?' 'Why don't you ?'
5 I want to keep these magazines. Please don't
6 I a pair of shoes in the shop, but I didn't buy them.
7 I visited a school last week. One of the teachers
8 'Do you play the piano?' 'No, I started to learn, but I after a month.'
9 Somebody gave me a form and told me to
10 Smoking isn't allowed here. Please your cigarette



THE FIRST PART OF THE HISTORY OF THE
LIFE OF THE LATE KING OF GREAT
BRITAIN, CHARLES THE SECOND.
BY JOHN HUGHES, ESQ.
IN TWO VOLUMES.
LONDON, Printed by J. H. St. John, at the
Sign of the Crown, in Pall-mall, 1764.

THE SECOND PART OF THE HISTORY OF THE
LIFE OF THE LATE KING OF GREAT
BRITAIN, CHARLES THE SECOND.
BY JOHN HUGHES, ESQ.
IN TWO VOLUMES.
LONDON, Printed by J. H. St. John, at the
Sign of the Crown, in Pall-mall, 1764.

THE THIRD PART OF THE HISTORY OF THE
LIFE OF THE LATE KING OF GREAT
BRITAIN, CHARLES THE SECOND.
BY JOHN HUGHES, ESQ.
IN TWO VOLUMES.
LONDON, Printed by J. H. St. John, at the
Sign of the Crown, in Pall-mall, 1764.

Appendix 1

Active and passive

1.1

Present and past

	active	passive
present simple	☐ We make butter from milk. ☐ Somebody cleans these rooms every day. ☐ People never invite me to parties. ☐ How do they make butter?	☐ Butter is made from milk. ☐ These rooms are cleaned every day. ☐ I am never invited to parties. ☐ How is butter made ?
past simple	☐ Somebody stole my car last week. ☐ Somebody stole my keys yesterday. ☐ They didn't invite me to the party. ☐ When did they build these houses?	☐ My car was stolen last week. ☐ My keys were stolen yesterday. ☐ I wasn't invited to the party. ☐ When were these houses built ?
present continuous	☐ They are building a new airport at the moment. (= it isn't finished) ☐ They are building some new houses near the river.	☐ A new airport is being built at the moment. ☐ Some new houses are being built near the river.
past continuous	☐ When I was here a few years ago, they were building a new airport. (= it wasn't finished at that time)	☐ When I was here a few years ago, a new airport was being built .
present perfect	☐ Look! They have painted the door. ☐ These shirts are clean. Somebody has washed them. ☐ Somebody has stolen my car.	☐ Look! The door has been painted . ☐ These shirts are clean. They have been washed . ☐ My car has been stolen .
past perfect	☐ Tina said that somebody had stolen her car.	☐ Tina said that her car had been stolen .

1.2

will / can / must / have to etc.

active	passive
☐ Somebody will clean the office tomorrow. ☐ Somebody must clean the office. ☐ I think they'll invite you to the party. ☐ They can't repair my watch. ☐ You should wash this sweater by hand. ☐ They are going to build a new airport. ☐ Somebody has to wash these clothes. ☐ They had to take the injured man to hospital.	☐ The office will be cleaned tomorrow. ☐ The office must be cleaned . ☐ I think you'll be invited to the party. ☐ My watch can't be repaired . ☐ This sweater should be washed by hand. ☐ A new airport is going to be built . ☐ These clothes have to be washed . ☐ The injured man had to be taken to hospital.

Appendix 2

List of irregular verbs (→ Unit 24)

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple</i>	<i>past participle</i>
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple</i>	<i>past participle</i>
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read (reed)*	read (red)*	read (red)*
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

* pronunciation

Some verbs can be regular (-ed) or irregular (-t):

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple / past participle</i>
burn	burned or burnt
dream	dreamed or dreamt

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple / past participle</i>
learn	learned or learnt
smell	smelled or smelt

Appendix 3

Irregular verbs in groups

The past simple and past participle are the same:

The past simple and past participle are different:

1	cost → cost	let → let
	cut → cut	put → put
	hit → hit	shut → shut
	hurt → hurt	

1	break → broke	broken
	choose → chose	chosen
	speak → spoke	spoken
	steal → stole	stolen
	wake → woke	woken

2	lend → lent	lose → lost
	send → sent	shoot → shot
	spend → spent	get → got
	build → built	light → lit
		sit → sat

2	drive → drove	driven
	ride → rode	ridden
	rise → rose	risen
	write → wrote	written

burn → burnt	keep → kept
learn → learnt	sleep → slept
smell → smelt	

beat → beat	beaten
bite → bit	bitten
hide → hid	hidden

feel → felt
leave → left
meet → met
dream → dreamt (dremt)*
mean → meant (ment)*

3	eat → ate	eaten
	fall → fell	fallen
	forget → forgot	forgotten
	give → gave	given
	see → saw	seen
	take → took	taken

3	bring → brought (brort)*
	buy → bought (bort)*
	fight → fought (fort)*
	think → thought (thort)*
	catch → caught (kort)*
	teach → taught (tort)*

4	blow → blew	blown
	grow → grew	grown
	know → knew	known
	throw → threw	thrown
	fly → flew	flown
	draw → drew	drawn
	show → showed	shown

4	sell → sold
	tell → told

find → found
have → had
hear → heard
hold → held
read → read (red)*
say → said (sed)*

pay → paid
make → made

stand → stood
understand → understood

5	begin → began	begun
	drink → drank	drunk
	swim → swam	swum
	ring → rang	rung
	sing → sang	sung
	run → ran	run

6	come → came	come
	become → became	become

* pronunciation

Appendix 4

Short forms (**he's** / **I'd** / **don't** etc.)

4.1 In spoken English we usually pronounce '**I am**' as one word. The short form (**I'm**) is a way of writing this:

I am → **I'm**
it is → **it's**
they have → **they've**
 etc.

- ☐ **I'm** feeling tired this morning.
- ☐ 'Do you like this jacket?' 'Yes, **it's** nice.'
- ☐ 'Where are your friends?' '**They've** gone home.'

When we write short forms, we use ' (an *apostrophe*):

~~I am~~ → **I'm** ~~he is~~ → **he's** ~~you have~~ → **you've** ~~she will~~ → **she'll**

4.2 We use these forms with **I/he/she** etc.:

am	→	'm	I'm						
is	→	's		he's	she's	it's			
are	→	're					we're	you're	they're
have	→	've	I've				we've	you've	they've
has	→	's		he's	she's	it's			
had	→	'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd
will	→	'll	I'll	he'll	she'll		we'll	you'll	they'll
would	→	'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd

- ☐ **I've** got some new shoes.
- ☐ **We'll** probably go out this evening.
- ☐ **It's** 10 o'clock. **You're** late again.

's = is or has:

- ☐ **She's** going out this evening. (**she's** going = she **is** going)
- ☐ **She's** gone out. (**she's** gone = she **has** gone)

'd = would or had:

- ☐ A: What would you like to eat?
 B: **I'd** like a salad, please. (**I'd** like = I **would** like)
- ☐ I told the police that **I'd** lost my passport. (**I'd** lost = I **had** lost)

Do not use **'m/'s/'d** etc. at the end of a sentence (→ Unit 40):

- ☐ 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I **am**.' (*not* Yes, I'm.)
- ☐ She isn't tired, but he **is**. (*not* he's)

4.3 We use short forms with **I/you/he/she** etc., but you can use short forms (especially **'s**) with other words too:

- ☐ **Who's** your favourite singer? (= who **is**)
- ☐ **What's** the time? (= what **is**)
- ☐ **There's** a big tree in the garden. (= there **is**)
- ☐ **My sister's** working in London. (= my sister **is** working)
- ☐ **Paul's** gone out. (= Paul **has** gone out)
- ☐ **What colour's** your car? (= What colour **is** your car?)

4.4 Negative short forms (→ Unit 43):

isn't	(= is not)	don't	(= do not)	can't	(= cannot)
aren't	(= are not)	doesn't	(= does not)	couldn't	(= could not)
wasn't	(= was not)	didn't	(= did not)	won't	(= will not)
weren't	(= were not)			wouldn't	(= would not)
hasn't	(= has not)			shouldn't	(= should not)
haven't	(= have not)			mustn't	(= must not)
hadn't	(= had not)				

- ☐ We went to her house, but she **wasn't** at home.
- ☐ 'Where's David?' 'I **don't** know. I **haven't** seen him.'
- ☐ You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- ☐ I **won't** be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 's (apostrophe + s)

's can mean different things:

(1) 's = **is** or **has** (→ section 4.2 of this appendix)

- ☐ It's raining. (= It **is** raining)
- ☐ It's stopped raining. (= It **has** stopped)

(2) let's = let **us** (→ Units 35, 53)

- ☐ It's a lovely day. **Let's** go out. (= Let **us** go out.)

(3) Kate's camera = her camera

my brother's car = his car

the manager's office = his/her office etc.

(→ Unit 64)

Compare:

- ☐ **Kate's** camera was very expensive. (**Kate's** camera = **her** camera)
- ☐ **Kate's** a very good photographer. (**Kate's** = Kate **is**)
- ☐ **Kate's** got a new camera. (Kate's got = Kate **has** got)

Appendix 5

Spelling

5.1

Words + **-s** and **-es** (birds/watches etc.)

noun + **s** (plural) (→ Unit 66)

bird → **birds**

mistake → **mistakes**

hotel → **hotels**

verb + **s** (he/she/it **-s**) (→ Unit 5)

think → **thinks**

live → **lives**

remember → **remembers**

but

+ **es** after **-s** / **-sh** / **-ch** / **-x**

bus → **buses**

pass → **passes**

address → **addresses**

dish → **dishes**

wash → **washes**

finish → **finishes**

watch → **watches**

teach → **teaches**

sandwich → **sandwiches**

box → **boxes**

also

potato → **potatoes**

tomato → **tomatoes**

do → **does**

go → **goes**

-f / **-fe** → **-ves**

shelf → **shelves**

knife → **knives**

but roof → **roofs**

5.2

Words ending in **-y** (baby → **babies** / study → **studied** etc.)

-y → **-ies**

study → **studies** (*not* studys)

family → **families** (*not* familys)

story → **stories**

city → **cities**

baby → **babies**

try → **tries**

marry → **marries**

fly → **flies**

-y → **-ied** (→ Unit 11)

study → **studied** (*not* studyed)

try → **tried**

marry → **married**

copy → **copied**

-y → **-ier/-iest** (→ Units 87, 90)

easy → **easier/easiest** (*not* easier/easyest)

happy → **happier/happiest**

lucky → **luckier/luckiest**

heavy → **heavier/heaviest**

funny → **funnier/funniest**

-y → **-ily** (→ Unit 86)

easy → **easily** (*not* easily)

happy → **happily**

heavy → **heavily**

lucky → **luckily**

y does not change to **i** if the ending is **-ay/-ey/-oy/-uy**:

holiday → **holidays** (*not* holidaiies)

enjoy → **enjoys/enjoyed**

stay → **stays/stayed**

buy → **buys**

key → **keys**

but

say → **said**

pay → **paid**

(*irregular verbs*)

5.3 -ing

Verbs that end in **-e** (make/write/drive etc.) → ~~x~~ing:

make → making write → writing come → coming dance → dancing

Verbs that end in **-ie** → -ying:

lie → lying die → dying tie → tying

5.4 stop → stopped, big → bigger etc.

Vowels and consonants:

Vowel letters: a e i o u

Consonant letters: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a *vowel* + a *consonant*. For example: **stop, big, get**.

Before **-ing/-ed/-er/-est, p/g/t** etc. become **pp/gg/tt** etc.

For example:

	V+C				
stop	ST	O P	p → pp	stopping	stopped
run	R	U N	n → nn	running	
get	G	E T	t → tt	getting	
swim	SW	I M	m → mm	swimming	
big	B	I G	g → gg	bigger	biggest
hot	H	O T	t → tt	hotter	hottest
thin	TH	I N	n → nn	thinner	thinnest

V = vowel

C = consonant

This does *not* happen

(1) if the word ends in *two* consonant letters (C + C):

	C+C			
help	HE	L P	helping	helped
work	WO	R K	working	worked
fast	FA	S T	faster	fastest

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

	V+V+C			
need	N	E E D	needing	needed
wait	W	A I T	waiting	waited
cheap	CH	E A P	cheaper	cheapest

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is *not* stressed:

	stress		
happen	HAP -pen	→	happening/happened (not happenned)
visit	VIS -it	→	visiting/visited
remember	re- MEM -ber	→	remembering/remembered
<i>but</i>			
prefer	pre- FER	(stress at the end)	→ preferring/preferred
begin	be- GIN	(stress at the end)	→ beginning

(4) if the word ends in **-y** or **-w**. (At the end of words, **y** and **w** are not consonants.)

enjoy → enjoying/enjoyed snow → snowing/snowed few → fewer/fewest

Appendix 6

Phrasal verbs (**take off** / **give up** etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (→ Unit 114).

on

carry on = *continue*

☐ Don't stop working. **Carry on.** (= continue working)

☐ A: Excuse me, where is the station?

B: **Carry on** along this road and turn right at the lights. (= Continue along ...)

also **go on** / **walk on** / **drive on** etc. = *continue going/walking/driving* etc.

☐ Don't stop here. **Drive on.**

come on = *be quick*

☐ **Come on!** Everybody is waiting for you.

get on = *manage (in a job, at school, in an exam etc.)*

☐ How was your exam? How did you **get on**?

(= how did you do?)

hold on = *wait*

☐ Can you **hold on** a minute? (= can you wait?)



off

take off = *leave the ground (for planes)*

☐ The plane **took off** 20 minutes late, but arrived on time.

go off = *explode (a bomb etc.) or ring (an alarm, an alarm clock etc.)*

☐ A bomb **went off** and caused a lot of damage.

☐ A car alarm **goes off** if somebody tries to break into the car.

TAKE OFF



GO OFF

up

give up = *stop trying*

☐ I know it's difficult, but don't **give up**.
(= don't stop trying)

grow up = *become an adult*

☐ What does your son want to do when he **grows up**?

hurry up = *do something more quickly*

☐ **Hurry up!** We haven't got much time.

speak up = *speak more loudly*

☐ I can't hear you. Can you **speak up**, please?

wake up = *stop sleeping*

☐ I often **wake up** in the middle of the night.

wash up = *wash the plates etc. after a meal*

☐ Do you want me to **wash up**?
(or ... to do the washing-up?)



GROW UP



WAKE UP



WASH UP

down

slow down = *go more slowly*

☐ You're driving too fast. **Slow down!**

break down = *stop working (for cars, machines etc.)*

☐ Sue was very late because her car **broke down**.



BREAK DOWN

over

fall over = *lose your balance*

☐ I **fell over** because my shoes were too big for me.



FALL OVER

Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / give up your job etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (→ Unit 115).

in/out **fill in / fill out** a form = *complete a form*

- ☐ Can you **fill in this form**, please? or
- Can you **fill out this form**, please?



out **put out** a fire, a cigarette etc.

- ☐ The fire brigade arrived and **put the fire out**.

cross out a mistake, a word etc.

- ☐ If you make a mistake, **cross it out**.

PUT OUT



CROSS OUT

on **try on** clothes = *put on clothes to see if they fit you*

- ☐ (in a shop) This is a nice jacket. Shall I **try it on**?

up **give up** something = *stop doing it*

- ☐ Sue **gave up her job** when her baby was born. (= she stopped working)
- ☐ 'Are you still learning Italian?' 'No, I **gave it up**.'

look up a word in a dictionary etc.

- ☐ I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I **looked it up** in a dictionary.

turn up the TV, radio, music, heating etc. = *make it louder or warmer*

- ☐ Can you **turn the radio up**? I can't hear it.

wake up somebody who is sleeping

- ☐ I have to get up early tomorrow. Can you **wake me up** at 6.30?

down **knock down** a building = *demolish it*

- ☐ They are going to **knock down** the school and build a new one.

turn down the TV, radio, music, heating etc.

= *make it more quiet or less warm*

- ☐ The music is too loud. Can you **turn it down**?

KNOCK
DOWN



over **knock over** a cup, a glass, a person etc.

- ☐ Be careful. Don't **knock your cup over**.
- ☐ There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was **knocked over** by a car. (or A man was **knocked down** by a car.)



KNOCK OVER



KNOCK OVER OR
KNOCK DOWN

away **throw away** rubbish, things you don't want

- ☐ These apples are bad. Shall I **throw them away**?
- ☐ Don't **throw away that picture**. I want it.

put something **away** = *put it in the place where you usually keep it*

- ☐ After they finished playing, the children **put their toys away**.

THROW AWAY



back **pay** somebody **back** = *give back money that you borrowed*

- ☐ Thank you for lending me the money. I'll **pay you back** next week.

round/ **show** somebody **round/around** = *take somebody on a tour of a place*

- ☐ We visited a factory last week. The manager **showed us round**.

Additional exercises

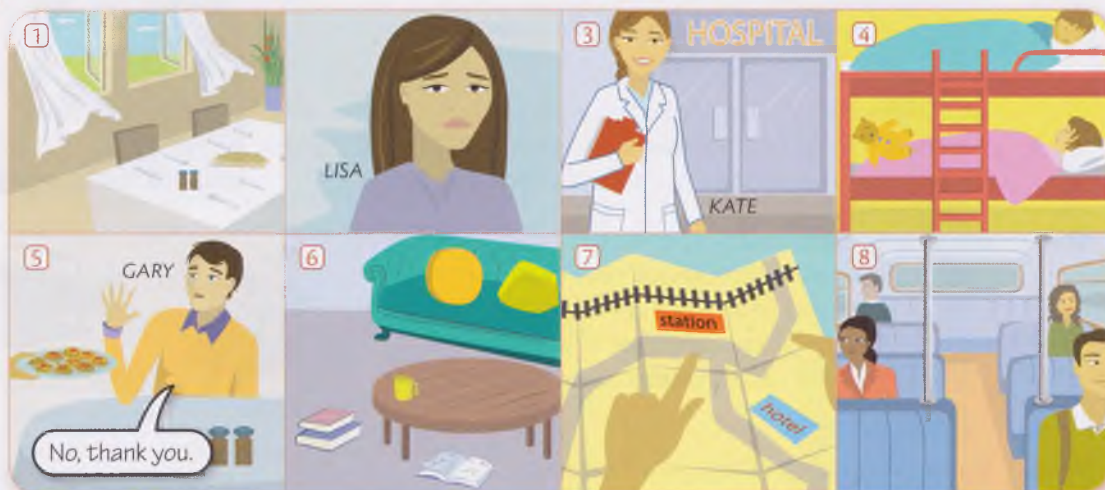
List of exercises:

1–2	am/is/are	Units 1–2
3	present continuous	Units 3–4
4	present simple	Units 5–7
5–7	present simple, am/is/are and have (got)	Units 1–2, 5–7, 9
8–9	present continuous and present simple	Units 3–8
10–13	was/were and past simple	Units 10–12
14	past simple and past continuous	Units 11–14
15	present and past	Units 3–14
16–18	present perfect	Units 15–19
19–22	present perfect and past simple	Units 18–20
23	present, past and present perfect	Units 3–20
24–27	passive	Units 21–22
28	future	Units 25–28
29	past, present and future	Units 3–20, 25–28
30–31	past, present and future	Units 3–22, 25–28, 52, 54, 98, 105
32	-ing and to ...	Units 51–55, 105, 112
33–34	a and the	Units 65, 69–73
35	prepositions	Units 103–108, 111

am/is/are

Units 1–2

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + **is/Isn't/are/aren't**.



~~The windows~~
~~Lisa~~
 Kate
 The children
 Gary
 The books
 The hotel
 The bus

on the table
 hungry
 asleep
~~open~~
 full
 near the station
 a doctor
~~happy~~

- 1 The windows are open.
- 2 Lisa isn't happy.
- 3 Kate
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 'Are you hungry?' 'No, but I'm thirsty.'
- 2 ' How are your parents?' 'They're fine.'
- 3 'Is Anna at home?' 'No, at work.'
- 4 '..... my keys?' 'On your desk.'
- 5 Where is Paul from? American or British?
- 6 very hot today. The temperature is 38 degrees.
- 7 'Are you a teacher?' 'No, a student.'
- 8 '..... your umbrella?' 'Green.'
- 9 Where's your car? in the car park?
- 10 '..... tired?' 'No, I'm fine.'
- 11 'These shoes are nice. How?' 'Sixty pounds.'

present continuous (I'm working / are you working? etc.)

Units 3-4

3 Use the words in brackets to write sentences.

- 1 A: Where are your parents?
B: They're watching TV. (they / watch / TV)
- 2 A: Paula is going out.
B: Where's she going? (where / she / go?)
- 3 A: Where's David?
B: (he / have / a shower)
- 4 A: ? (the children / play?)
B: No, they're asleep.
- 5 A: ? (it / rain?)
B: No, not at the moment.
- 6 A: Where are Sue and Steve?
B: (they / come / now)
- 7 A: ? (why / you / stand / here?)
B: (I / wait / for somebody)

present simple (I work / she doesn't work / do you work? etc.)

Units 5-7

4 Complete the sentences. Use the present simple.

- 1 Sue always gets to work early. (Sue / always / get)
- 2 We don't watch TV very often. (we / not / watch)
- 3 How often do you wash your hair? (you / wash)
- 4 I want to go to the cinema, but to go. (Sam / not / want)
- 5 to go out tonight? (you / want)
- 6 near here? (Helen / live)
- 7 a lot of people. (Sarah / know)
- 8 I enjoy travelling, but very much. (I / not / travel)
- 9 What time in the morning? (you / usually / get up)
- 10 My parents are usually at home in the evening.
..... very often. (they / not / go out)
- 11 work at five o'clock. (Tom / always / finish)
- 12 A: What ? (Jessica / do)
B: in a hotel. (she / work)

present simple, am/is/are and have (got)

Units 1–2, 5–7, 9

5 Read the questions and Clare's answers. Then write sentences about Clare.

- 1 Are you married?
- 2 Do you live in London?
- 3 Are you a student?
- 4 Have you got a car?
- 5 Do you go out a lot?
- 6 Have you got a lot of friends?
- 7 Do you like London?
- 8 Do you like dancing?
- 9 Are you interested in sport?

- No.
Yes.
Yes.
No.
Yes.
Yes.
No.
Yes.
No.

Clare



- 1 *She isn't married.*
- 2 *She lives in London.*
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9

6 Complete the questions.

- 1 *What's your name* ?
..... married?
Where ?
..... any children?
How ?

Ben.
Yes, I am.
In Barton Road.
Yes, a daughter.
She's three.



- 2 ?
..... ?
..... your job?
..... a car?
..... to work by car?

I'm 29.
I work in a supermarket.
No, I hate it.
Yes, I have.
No, I usually go by bus.



- 3 *Who is this man* ?
..... ?
..... ?
..... in London?



That's my brother.
Michael.
He's a travel agent.
No, in Manchester.

7 Write sentences from these words. All the sentences are present.

- 1 Sarah often / tennis *Sarah often plays tennis.*
- 2 my parents / a new car *My parents have got a new car.*
- 3 my shoes / dirty *My shoes are dirty.*
- 4 Sonia / 32 years old Sonia
- 5 I / two sisters
- 6 we often / TV in the evening
- 7 Amy never / a hat
- 8 a bicycle / two wheels
- 9 these flowers / beautiful
- 10 Emma / German very well

present continuous (I'm working) and present simple (I work)

Units 3–8

8 Complete the sentences.

1 Please be quiet. I'm working (I/work).

2 Do you often go (you/often/go) to the cinema?

3 What are you cooking (you/cook)?

4 Jack plays (play) the piano very well.

5 I am going (I/go) now. Goodbye!

6 It is raining (it/rain). Can I take this umbrella?

7 I do not watch (I/not/watch) TV very much.

8 Excuse me, are you looking (we/look) for the museum.

9 What's this word? How do you pronounce (you/pronounce) it?

9 Which is right?

- 1 'Are you speaking / Do you speak English?' 'Yes, a little.' (Do you speak is right)
- 2 Sometimes we're going / we go away at weekends.
- 3 It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
- 4 (You meet Kate in the street.) Hello, Kate. Where are you going / do you go?
- 5 How often are you going / do you go on holiday?
- 6 Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes books for children.
- 7 I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
- 8 'Where are Mark and Laura?' 'They're watching / They watch TV in the living room.'
- 9 Helen is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
- 10 What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
- 11 Joe isn't at home at the moment. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
- 12 'Would you like some tea?' 'No, thank you. I'm not drinking / I don't drink tea.'

was/were and past simple (I worked / did you work? etc.)

Units 10–12

10 Complete the sentences. Use one word only.

- 1 I got up early and had a shower.
- 2 Tom was tired last night, so he to bed early.
- 3 I this key on the floor. Is it yours?
- 4 Kate got married when she 23.
- 5 Helen is learning to drive. She her first lesson yesterday.
- 6 'I've got a new job.' 'Yes, I know. David me.'
- 7 'Where did you buy that book?' 'It was a present. Amy it to me.'
- 8 We hungry, so we had something to eat.
- 9 'Did you enjoy the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.'
- 10 'Did Andy come to your party?' 'No, we him, but he didn't come.'

11 Look at the questions and Joe's answers. Write sentences about Joe when he was a child.

When you were a child ...

- Were you tall?
- Did you like school?
- Were you good at sport?
- Did you play football?
- Did you work hard at school?
- Did you have a lot of friends?
- Did you have a bike?
- Were you a quiet child?

Joe



- No.
- Yes.
- Yes.
- Yes.
- No.
- Yes.
- No.
- No.

1 He wasn't tall.

2 He liked school.

3 He

4

5

6

7

8

12 Complete the questions.

- 1 Did you have a nice holiday?
- 2 Where did you go ?
- 3 there?
- 4 Amsterdam?
- 5 ?
- 6 good?
- 7 back?

Yes, it was great, thanks.
To Amsterdam.
Five days.
Yes, very much.
I have friends in Amsterdam, so I stayed with them.
Yes, it was warm and sunny.
Yesterday.

13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative or question).

- 1 It was a good party. I enjoyed it. (I / enjoy)
- 2 ' Did you do the shopping?' (you / do) 'No, I didn't have time.' (I / have)
- 3 'Did you phone Adam?' 'No, I'm afraid ' (I / forget)
- 4 I like your new watch. Where it? (you / get)
- 5 I saw Lucy at the party, but to her. (I / speak)
- 6 A: a nice weekend? (you / have)
B: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
- 7 Paul wasn't well yesterday, so to work. (he / go)
- 8 'Is Mary here?' 'Yes, five minutes ago.' (she / arrive)
- 9 Where before he moved here? (Robert / live)
- 10 The restaurant wasn't expensive. very much. (the meal / cost)

past simple (I worked) and past continuous (I was working)

Units 11–14

14 Complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous.



It was raining (rain) when we
went (go) out.



When I arrived at the office, Lisa and Paul
..... (work) at their desks.



I (open) the window
because it was hot.



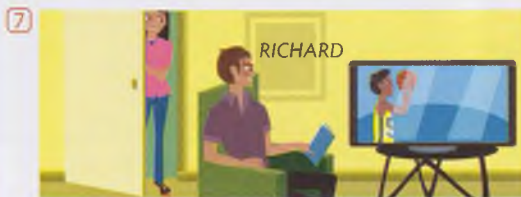
The doorbell (ring) when
Sue (cook).



I (hear) a noise outside,
so I (look) out of the
window.



Tom (look)
out of the window when the accident
..... (happen).



Richard had a book in his hand, but he
..... (not/read) it. He
..... (watch) TV.



Catherine bought a magazine, but she
..... (not/read) it.
She didn't have time.



I (finish) my meal,
..... (pay) the bill and
..... (leave) the restaurant.



I (see) Kate this morning.
I (walk) along the street
and she (wait) for the bus.

present and past

Units 3–14

15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:

present simple (**I work/drive** etc.)

present continuous (**I am working/driving** etc.)

past simple (**I worked/drove** etc.)

past continuous (**I was working/driving** etc.)

- 1 You can turn off the television. I 'm not watching (not/watch) it.
- 2 Last night Jenny fell (fall) asleep while she was reading (read).
- 3 Listen! Somebody (play) the piano.
- 4 'Have you got my key?' 'No, I (give) it back to you.'
- 5 David is very lazy. He (not/like) hard work.
- 6 Where (your parents / go) for their holidays last year?
- 7 I (see) Laura yesterday. She (drive) her new car.
- 8 A: (you/watch) TV much?
B: No, I haven't got a TV.
- 9 A: What (you/do) at 6 o'clock last Sunday morning?
B: I was in bed asleep.
- 10 Andy isn't at home very much. He (go) away a lot.
- 11 I (try) to find a job at the moment. It's not easy.
- 12 I'm tired this morning. I (not/sleep) very well last night.

present perfect (I have done / she has been etc.)

Units 15–19

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

①

Goodbye, Tom!

5 minutes later

Is Tom at home?

No, he's just gone out.

②

Who's that man?

I don't know.
I 've never seen him before.

③

Are you still watching the film?

No, it just

The End

④

I'm looking for my glasses.

Here they are!
I them!

5 Bookshop

Is this a good book?

I don't know. I it.

6

I'm looking for Jessica. her?

Yes, she was here a few minutes ago.

7

More coffee?

No, thanks. I enough.

8

..... to Sweden?

Yes, I went there a few years ago.

9

Hi. We to the cinema.

later

10

Enjoy the party!

Where are Steve and Jane?

later

to a party.

11

PAUL

Paul was asleep in the armchair. He up.

12

Since 2010,

How long here?

13

ALAN

Do you know Alan?

Yes, we each other for a long time.

14

The weather is horrible here. It all day.

17 Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).

- 1 Mark and Sarah are married. They have been married for five years.
- 2 David has been watching TV since 5 o'clock.
- 3 Joe is at work. He at work since 8.30.
- 4 'Have you just arrived in London?' 'No, I've been here five days.'
- 5 I've known Helen we were at school together.
- 6 'My brother lives in Los Angeles.' 'Really? How long there?'
- 7 George has had the same job 20 years.
- 8 Some friends of ours are staying with us at the moment. They here since Monday.

18 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.

- 1 I've never ridden a horse.
- 2 I've been to London many times.
- 3 I've just
- 4 I've (once / twice / a few times / many times)
- 5 I haven't yet.
- 6 I've never
- 7 I've since
- 8 I've for

present perfect (I have done etc.) and past simple (I did etc.)

Units 18–20

19 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).

- 1 A: Do you like London?
B: I don't know. I haven't been there.
- 2 A: Have you seen Kate?
B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.
- 3 A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new?
B: Yes, I it last week.
- 4 A: Are you tired this morning?
B: Yes, I to bed late last night.
- 5 A: Do you want this newspaper, or can I have it?
B: You can have it. I it.
- 6 A: Are you enjoying your new job?
B: I yet. My first day is next Monday.
- 7 A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it?
B: No, but it nice yesterday.
- 8 A: Was Helen at the party on Saturday?
B: I don't think so. I her there.
- 9 A: Is your son still at school?
B: No, he school two years ago.
- 10 A: Is Silvia married?
B: Yes, she married for five years.
- 11 A: Have you heard of George Washington?
B: Of course. He the first President of the United States.
- 12 A: How long does it take to make a pizza?
B: I don't know. I a pizza.

20

Write sentences with the present perfect or past simple.

- 1 A: Have you been to Thailand?
B: Yes, I went there last year. (I / go / there / last year)
- 2 A: Do you like London?
B: I don't know. I've never been there. (I / never / there)
- 3 A: What time is Paul going out?
B: (he / already / go)
- 4 A: Has Catherine gone home?
B: Yes, (she / leave / at 4 o'clock)
- 5 A: New York is my favourite city.
B: Is it?? (how many times / you / there?)
- 6 A: What are you doing this weekend?
B: I don't know. (I / not / decide / yet)
- 7 A: I can't find my address book. Have you seen it?
B: (it / on the table / last night)
- 8 A: Do you know the Japanese restaurant in Leeson Street?
B: Yes, (I / eat / there a few times)
- 9 A: Paula and Sue are here.
B: Are they?? (what time / they / arrive?)

21

Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences.

- 1 A: Have you been to France?
B: Yes, many times.
A: When the last time?
B: Two years ago.



- 2 A: Is this your car?
B: Yes, it is.
A: How long it?
B: It's new. I it yesterday.



- 3 A: Where do you live?
B: In Harold Street.
A: How long there?
B: Five years. Before that in Mill Road.
A: How long in Mill Road?
B: About three years.



- 4 A: What do you do?
B: I work in a shop.
A: How long there?
B: Nearly two years.
A: What before that?
B: I a taxi driver.



22 Write sentences about yourself.

- 1 (yesterday morning) I was late for work yesterday morning.
- 2 (last night)
- 3 (yesterday afternoon)
- 4 (... days ago)
- 5 (last week)
- 6 (last year)

present, past and present perfect

Units 3–20

23 Which is right?

- 1 ' Is Sue working? (C) ' 'No, she's on holiday.'
A Does Sue work? B Is working Sue? C Is Sue working? D Does work Sue?
- 2 'Where?' 'In a village near London.'
A lives your uncle B does your uncle live C your uncle lives D does live your uncle
- 3 I speak Italian, but French.
A I speak not B I'm not speaking C I doesn't speak D I don't speak
- 4 'Where's Tom?' '..... a shower at the moment.'
A He's having B He have C He has D He has had
- 5 Why angry with me yesterday?
A were you B was you C you were D have you been
- 6 My favourite film is *Cleo's Dream*. it four times.
A I'm seeing B I see C I was seeing D I've seen
- 7 I out last night. I was too tired.
A don't go B didn't went C didn't go D haven't gone
- 8 Tina is from Chicago. She there all her life.
A is living B has lived C lives D lived
- 9 My friend for me when I arrived.
A waited B has waited C was waiting D has been waiting
- 10 'How long English?' 'Six months.'
A do you learn B are you learning C you are learning D have you been learning
- 11 Paul is Canadian, but he lives in France. He has been there
A for three years B since three years C three years ago D during three years
- 12 'What time?' 'About an hour ago.'
A has Lisa phoned B Lisa has phoned C did Lisa phone D is Lisa phoning
- 13 What when you saw her?
A did Sue wear B was Sue wearing C has Sue worn D was wearing Sue
- 14 'Can you drive?' 'No, a car, but I want to learn.'
A I never drive B I'm never driving C I've never driven D I was never driving
- 15 I saw Helen at the station when I was going to work this morning, but she me.
A didn't see B don't see C hasn't seen D didn't saw

Units 21–22, Appendix 1

passive

24 Complete the sentences.

1



These houses were built (build) 20 years ago. Before that there was a cinema here, but the building (damage) in a fire and had to (knock down).

2



This bridge (build) in 1955. It (use) by hundreds of people every day. At the moment the bridge (paint).

3



This street (call) Wilton Street. It used to (call) James Street, but the name (change) a few years ago.

4



This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles (make) here since 1971. It's the largest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles (produce) here every year.

25 Complete the sentences.

- 1 We were invited (invite) to the party, but we didn't go.
- 2 The museum is very popular. Every year it (visit) by thousands of people.
- 3 Many buildings (damage) in the storm last week.
- 4 A new road is going to (build) next year.
- 5 'Where's your jacket?' 'It (clean). It will be ready tomorrow.'
- 6 She's famous now, but in a few years her name will (forget).
- 7 'Shall I do the washing-up?' 'No, it (already/do).'
- 8 Milk should (keep) in a fridge.
- 9 (you/ever/bite) by a snake?
- 10 My bag (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

- 1 Somebody has stolen my keys. My keys have been stolen.
- 2 Somebody stole my car last week. My car
- 3 Somebody has eaten all the bananas. All the
- 4 Somebody will repair the machine. The
- 5 Somebody is watching us. We
- 6 Somebody has to do the housework. The

27 Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

- 1 They are building (build) a new airport at the moment.
- 2 These shirts are clean now. They have been washed (wash).
- 3 'How did you fall?' 'Somebody (push) me.'
- 4 'How did you fall?' 'I (push).'
- 5 I can't find my bag. Somebody (take) it!
- 6 My watch is broken. It (repair) at the moment.
- 7 Who (invent) the camera?
- 8 When (the camera/invent)?
- 9 These shirts are clean now. They (wash).
- 10 These shirts are clean now. I (wash) them.
- 11 The letter was for me, so why (they/send) it to you?
- 12 The information will (send) to you as soon as possible.

future

Units 25–28

28 Which is the best alternative?

- 1 We're having (B) a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
A We have B We're having C We'll have
- 2 Do you know about Karen? her job. She told me last week.
A She leaves B She's going to leave C She'll leave
- 3 There's a programme on TV that I want to watch. in five minutes.
A It starts B It's starting C It will start
- 4 The weather is nice now, but I think later.
A it rains B it's raining C it will rain
- 5 'What next weekend?' 'Nothing. I've got no plans.'
A do you do B are you doing C will you do
- 6 'When you see Tina, can you ask her to phone me?' 'OK, her.'
A I ask B I'm going to ask C I'll ask
- 7 'What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?' '..... tea, please.'
A I have B I'm going to have C I'll have
- 8 Don't take that magazine away. it.
A I read B I'm going to read C I'll read
- 9 Rachel is ill, so to the party tomorrow night.
A she doesn't come B she isn't coming C she won't come
- 10 I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time ?
A does her train arrive B is her train going to arrive C is her train arriving
- 11 'Will you be at home tomorrow evening?' 'No.'
A I go out B I'm going out C I'll go out
- 12 '..... you tomorrow?' 'Yes, OK.'
A Do I phone B Am I going to phone C Shall I phone

past, present and future

Units 3–20, 25–28

29 Complete the sentences.

- 1 A: Did you go (you/go) out last night?
 B: No, (I/stay) at home.
 A: What (you/do)?
 B: (I/watch) TV.
 A: (you/go) out tomorrow night?
 B: Yes, (I/go) to the cinema.
 A: Which film (you/see)?
 B: (I/not/know). (I/not/decide) yet.

- 2 A: Are you on holiday here?
 B: Yes, we are.
 A: How long (you/be) here?
 B: (we/arrive) yesterday.
 A: And how long (you/stay)?
 B: Until the end of next week.
 A: And (you/like) it here?
 B: Yes, (we/have) a wonderful time.



- 3 A: (I/go) out with Chris and Steve this evening.
 (you/want) to come with us?
 B: Yes, where (you/go)?
 A: To the Italian restaurant in North Street. (you/ever/eat) there?
 B: Yes, (I/be) there two or three times. In fact I
 (go) there last night, but I'd love to go again!

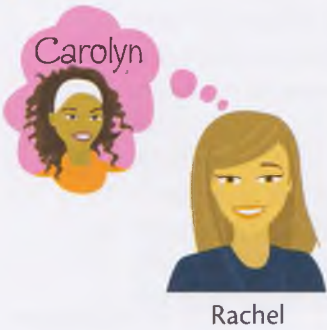
- 4 A: (I/lose) my glasses again.
 (you/see) them?
 B: (you/wear) them
 when (I/come) in.
 A: Well, (I/not/wear)
 them now, so where are they?
 B: (you/look) in the kitchen?
 A: No, (I/go) and look now.



past, present and future

Units 3–22, 25–28, 52, 54, 98, 105

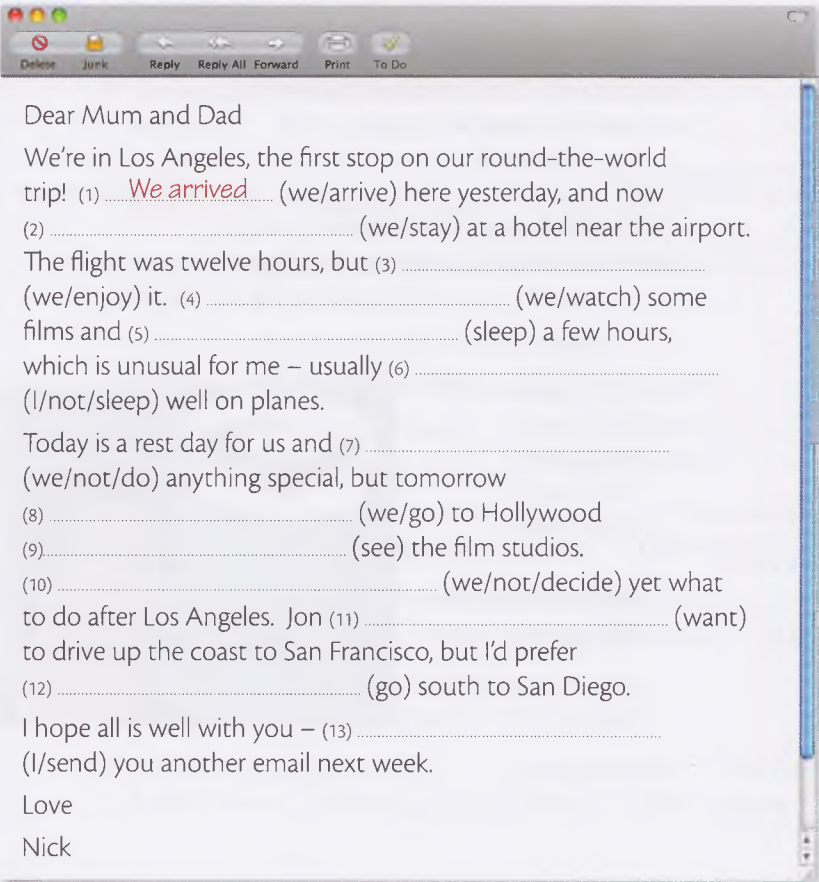
30 Rachel is talking about her best friend, Carolyn. Put the verbs in the correct form.



Carolyn is my best friend. I remember very well the first time (1) (we/meet). It was our first day at secondary school, and (2) (we/sit) next to each other for the first lesson. (3) (we/not/know) any other students in our class, and so (4) (we/become) friends. We found that (5) (we/like) the same things, especially music and sport, and so (6) (we/spend) a lot of time together.

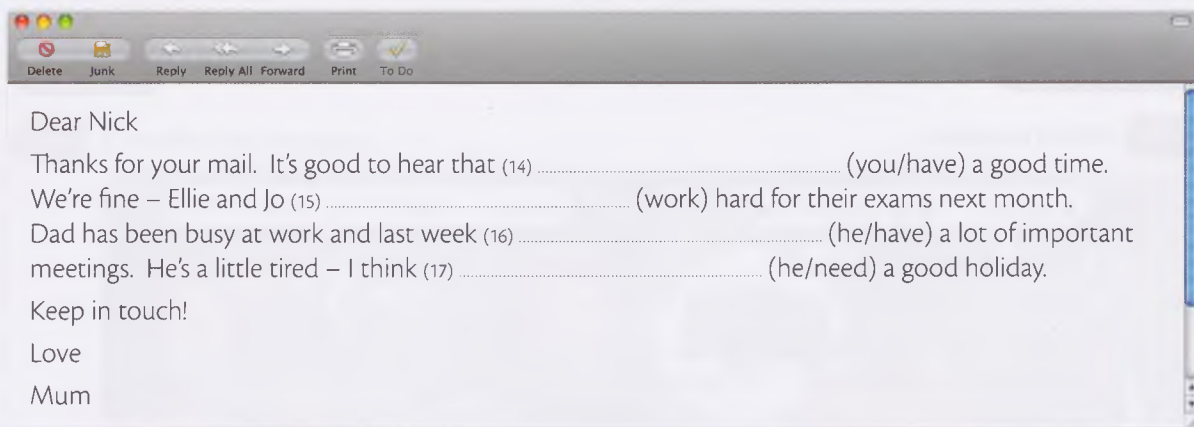
(7) (we/leave) school five years ago, but (8) (we/meet) as often as we can. For the last six months Carolyn (9) (be) in Mexico – at the moment (10) (she/work) in a school as a teaching assistant. (11) (she/come) back to England next month, and when (12) (she/come) back, (13) (we/have) lots of things to talk about. (14) (it/be) really nice to see her again.

31 Nick and his friend Jon are travelling round the world. Read the emails between Nick and his parents, and put the verbs in the correct form.

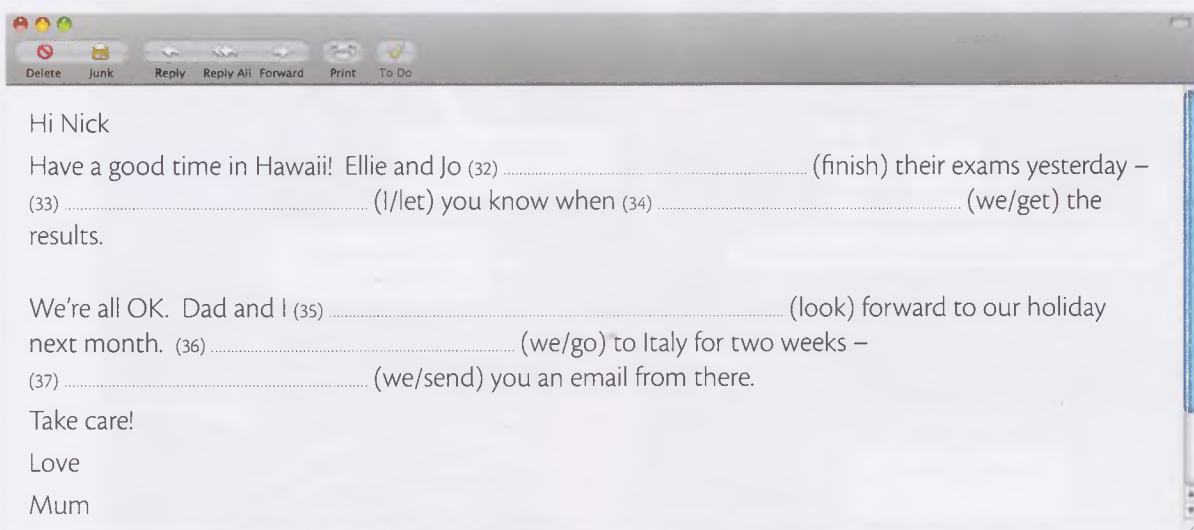
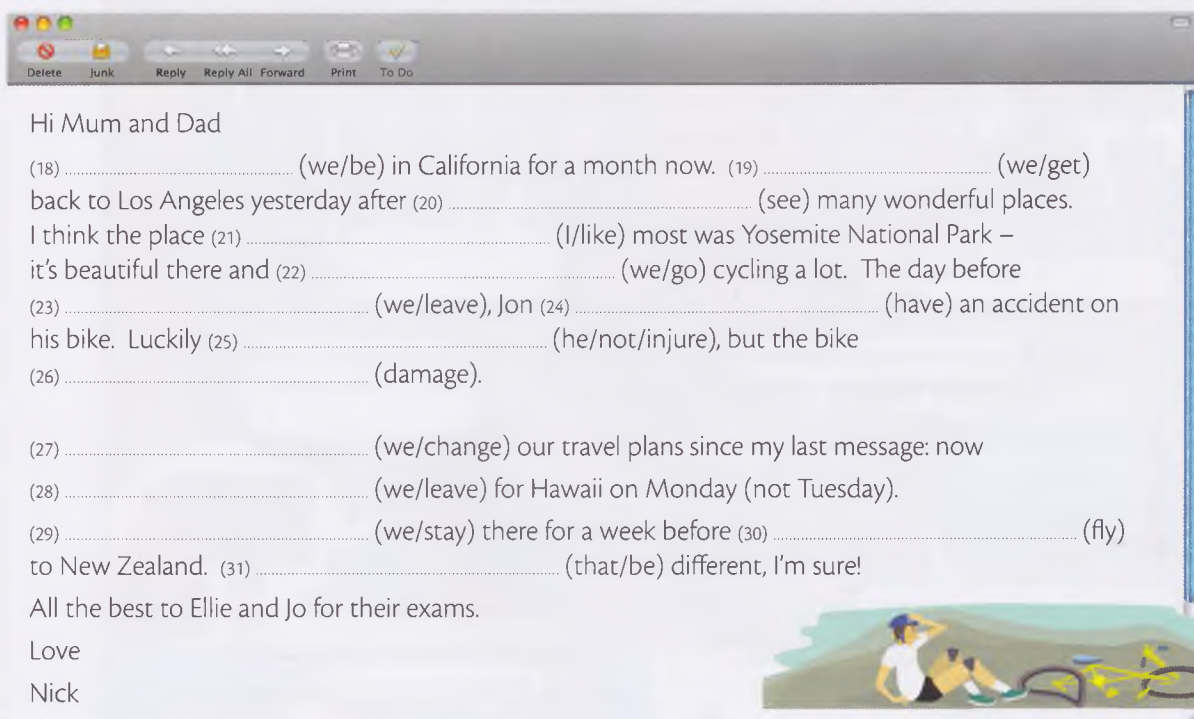


Nick





A month later ...



-ing and to ...

Units 51–55, 105, 112

32

Which is correct?

- 1 Don't forget to switch (B) off the light before you go out.
A switch B to switch C switching
- 2 It's late. I must now.
A go B to go C going
- 3 I'm sorry, but I don't have time to you now.
A for talking B to talk C talking
- 4 Gary is always in the kitchen. He enjoys
A cook B to cook C cooking
- 5 We've decided away for a few days.
A go B to go C going
- 6 You're making too much noise. Can you please stop ?
A shout B to shout C shouting
- 7 Would you like and eat with us on Sunday?
A come B to come C coming
- 8 That bag is too heavy for you. Let me you.
A help B to help C helping
- 9 There's a swimming pool near my house. I go every day.
A to swim B to swimming C swimming
- 10 I need to go shopping some food.
A to buy B for buy C for buying
- 11 I'd love a car like yours.
A have B to have C having
- 12 Could you me with this bag, please?
A help B to help C helping
- 13 I don't mind here, but I'd prefer to sit by the window.
A sit B to sit C sitting
- 14 Do you want you?
A that I help B me to help C me helping
- 15 You should think carefully before an important decision.
A make B to make C making
- 16 I wasn't feeling very well, but the medicine made me better.
A feel B to feel C feeling
- 17 Shall I phone the restaurant a table?
A for reserve B for reserving C to reserve
- 18 Tom looked at me without anything.
A say B saying C to say

a and the

Units 65, 69–73

33 Complete the sentences.

1 Can you pass the sugar, please?

2 Have you got _____?
No, I can't drive.

3 Do you have any milk?
Yes, there's some in _____.

4 What do you do?
I'm _____.

5 I don't feel very well.
I don't want to go to _____.

6 What did you do last night?
I went to _____.

7 Shall we walk home?
No, let's get _____.

8 Can you play _____?
Yes, but not very well.

9 I'm interested in _____.

10 What's the difference between those cars?
Nothing, they're _____.

34 Write **a/an** or **the** if necessary. If **a/an/the** are not necessary, leave an empty space (-).

- 1 Who is the best player in your team?
- 2 I don't watch - TV very often.
- 3 'Is there a bank near here?' 'Yes, at the end of this street.'
- 4 I can't ride - horse.
- 5 - sky is very clear tonight.
- 6 Do you live here, or are you - tourist?
- 7 What did you have for - lunch?
- 8 Who was - first President of - United States?
- 9 I'm not feeling very good. I've got - headache.
- 10 I'm sorry, but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember - names.
- 11 What time is - next train to London?
- 12 Kate doesn't often send - emails. She prefers to call people.
- 13 'Where's Sue?' 'She's in - garden.'
- 14 Excuse me, I'm looking for - Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
- 15 Gary was ill - last week, so he didn't go to - work.
- 16 Everest is - highest mountain in - world.
- 17 I usually listen to - radio while I'm having - breakfast.
- 18 I like - sport. My favourite sport is - basketball.
- 19 Emily is - doctor. Her husband is - art teacher.
- 20 My apartment is on - second floor. Turn left at - top of - stairs, and it's on - right.
- 21 After - dinner, we watched - TV.
- 22 Last year we had - wonderful holiday in - south of - France.

prepositions

Units 103–108, 111

35 Write a preposition (**in/for/by** etc.).

- 1 Helen is studying law at university.
- 2 What is the longest river - Europe?
- 3 Is there anything - TV this evening?
- 4 We arrived - the hotel after midnight.
- 5 'Where's Mark?' 'He's - holiday.'
- 6 Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still - bed.
- 7 Lisa is away. She's been away - Monday.
- 8 The next meeting is - 15 April.
- 9 I usually go to work - car.
- 10 There's too much sugar - my coffee.
- 11 Joe lived in London - six months. He didn't like it very much.
- 12 Were there a lot of people - the party?
- 13 What are you doing - the moment? Are you working?
- 14 I don't know any of the people - this photo.
- 15 The train was very slow. It stopped - every station.
- 16 I like this room. I like the pictures - the walls.
- 17 'Did you buy that picture?' 'No, it was given to me - a friend of mine.'
- 18 I'm going away - a few days. I'll be back - Thursday.
- 19 Silvia has gone - Italy. She's - Milan at the moment.
- 20 Emma left school - sixteen and got a job - a shop.

Study guide

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use this study guide.

You have to decide which alternative (A, B, C etc.) is right. SOMETIMES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS CORRECT.

If you don't know (or if you are not sure) which alternatives are correct, study the unit (or units) on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

The key to this study guide is on page 313.

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
Present		
1.1	 Can you close the window, please? A I cold B I'm cold C I have cold D It has cold	1
1.2	Lisa in politics. A isn't interested B not interested C doesn't interested D doesn't interest	1
1.3	'.....?' 'No, she's out.' A Is at home your mother B Does your mother at home C Is your mother at home D Are your mother at home	2
1.4	These shoes are nice. A How much are they? B How many are they? C How much they are? D How much is they?	2
1.5	Look, there's Sarah. a brown coat. A She wearing B She has wearing C She is wearing D She's wearing	3, 23
1.6	You can turn off the television. it. A I'm not watch B I'm not watching C I not watching D I don't watching	3, 23
1.7	'..... today?' 'No, he's at home.' A Is working Ben B Is work Ben C Is Ben work D Is Ben working	4, 23
1.8	Look, there's Emily! A Where she is going? B Where she go? C Where's she going? D Where she going?	4, 23
1.9	The earth round the sun. A going B go C goes D does go E is go	5, 23
1.10	We away at weekends. A often go B go often C often going D are often go	5, 23, 94
1.11	We TV very often. A not watch B doesn't watch C don't watch D don't watching E watch not	6, 23
1.12	'..... play the guitar?' 'Yes, but I'm not very good.' A Do you play B Are you play C Does you play D Do you playing E Play you	7, 23
1.13	I don't understand this sentence. What ? A mean this word B means this word C does mean this word D does this word mean E this word means	7, 23

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY
UNIT

- 1.14 Please be quiet.
A I working. B I work. C I'm working. D I'm work. 8, 23
- 1.15 Tom a shower every morning.
A has B having C is having D have 8, 58
- 1.16 What at weekends?
A do you usually B are you usually doing C are you usually do
D do you usually do E you do usually 8, 23
- 1.17 Sarah isn't feeling well. a headache.
A She have B She have got C She has D She's got 9, 58
- 1.18 They any children.
A don't have B doesn't have C no have D haven't got E hasn't got 9, 58

Past

- 2.1 The weather last week.
A is good B was good C were good D good E had good 10
- 2.2 Why late this morning?
A you was B did you C was you D you were E were you 10
- 2.3 Terry in a bank from 2005 to 2011.
A work B working C works D worked E was work 11
- 2.4 Caroline to the cinema three times last week.
A go B went C goes D got E was 11
- 2.5 I TV yesterday.
A didn't watch B didn't watched C wasn't watched
D don't watch E didn't watching 12, 23
- 2.6 'How?' 'I don't know. I didn't see it.'
A happened the accident B did happen the accident
C does the accident happen D did the accident happen
E the accident happened 12
- 2.7 What at 11.30 yesterday?
A were you doing B was you doing C you were doing
D were you do E you was doing 13
- 2.8 Jack was reading a book when his phone
A ringing B ring C rang D was ringing E was ring 14
- 2.9 I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They at the bus stop.
A waiting B waited C were waiting D was waiting E were waited 14

Present perfect

- 3.1 'Where's Rebecca?' '..... to bed.'
A She is gone B She has gone C She goes D She have gone
E She's gone 15
- 3.2 'Are Laura and Paul here?' 'No, they'
A don't arrive yet B have already arrived C haven't already arrived
D haven't arrived yet 16

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY
UNIT

- 3.3 My sister by plane. 17, 23
A has never travel **B** has never travelled **C** is never travelled
D has never been travelled **E** have never travelled
- 3.4 that woman before, but I can't remember where. 17, 23
A I see **B** I seen **C** I've saw **D** I've seen **E** I've seeing
- 3.5 'How long married?' 'Since 2007.' 18
A you are **B** you have been **C** has you been **D** are you **E** have you been
- 3.6 'Do you know Lisa?' 'Yes, her for a long time.' 18
A I knew **B** I've known **C** I know **D** I am knowing
- 3.7 Richard has been in Canada 19, 104
A for six months **B** since six months **C** six months ago **D** in six months
- 3.8 'When did Tom go out?' '.....' 19
A For ten minutes. **B** Since ten minutes. **C** Ten minutes ago.
D In ten minutes.
- 3.9 We a holiday last year. 20
A don't have **B** haven't had **C** hasn't had **D** didn't have **E** didn't had
- 3.10 Where on Sunday afternoon? I couldn't find you. 20
A you were **B** you have been **C** was you **D** have you been **E** were you

Passive

- 4.1 This house 100 years ago. 21, 23
A is built **B** is building **C** was building **D** was built **E** built
- 4.2 We to the party last week. 21, 23
A didn't invite **B** didn't invited **C** weren't invited **D** wasn't invited
E haven't been invited
- 4.3 'Where born?' 'In Cairo.' 21
A you are **B** you were **C** was you **D** are you **E** were you
- 4.4 My car is at the garage. It 22
A is being repaired **B** is repairing **C** have been repaired **D** repaired
E repairs
- 4.5 I can't find my keys. I think 22
A they've been stolen **B** they are stolen **C** they've stolen
D they're being stolen

Verb forms

- 5.1 It, so we didn't need an umbrella. 23
A wasn't rained **B** wasn't rain **C** didn't raining **D** wasn't raining
- 5.2 Somebody this window. 24
A has broke **B** has broken **C** has breaked **D** has break

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY
UNIT

Future

- 6.1 Andrew tennis tomorrow. 25
A is playing B play C plays D is play
- 6.2 out tonight? 25
A Are you going B Are you go C Do you go D Go you E Do you going
- 6.3 'What time is the concert tonight?' 'It at 7.30.' 25
A is start B is starting C starts D start E starting
- 6.4 What to the wedding next week? 26
A are you wearing B are you going to wear C do you wear
D you are going to wear
- 6.5 I think Kelly the exam. 27
A passes B will pass C will be pass D will passing
- 6.6 to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? 27
A We go B We'll go C We're going D We will going
- 6.7 '..... you tomorrow, OK?' 'OK, bye.' 28
A I phone B I phoning C I'm phoning D I'll phone
- 6.8 tomorrow, so I can't meet you. 28
A I work B I'll work C I'm working D I'll working
- 6.9 It's a nice day. for a walk? 28
A Do we go B Shall we go C Are we go D We go E Go we

Modals, imperative etc.

- 7.1 to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure. 29
A I'll go B I'm going C I may go D I might go
- 7.2 '..... here?' 'Yes, of course.' 29, 30
A Can I sit B Do I sit C May I sit D Can I to sit
- 7.3 I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel 30
A can't come B can't to come C can't coming D couldn't come
- 7.4 Before Maria came to Britain, she understand much English. 30
A can B can't C not D couldn't E doesn't
- 7.5 We walk home last night. There were no buses. 31, 33
A have to B had to C must D must to E must have
- 7.6 I go yet. I can stay a little longer. 31
A must B mustn't C must not D don't need E don't need to
- 7.7 It's a good film. You go and see it. 32
A should to B ought to C ought D should E need
- 7.8 What time go to the dentist tomorrow? 33
A you must B you have to C have you to D do you have to
- 7.9 We wait long for the bus – it came in a few minutes. 33
A don't have to B hadn't to C didn't have to D didn't had to
E mustn't

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY
UNIT

- 7.10 '..... some coffee?' 'No, thank you.'
A Are you liking **B** You like **C** Would you like **D** Do you like
- 7.11 Please Stay here with me.
A don't go **B** you no go **C** go not **D** you don't go
- 7.12 Dave in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.
A working **B** works **C** worked **D** use to work **E** used to work

There and it

- 8.1 Excuse me, a hotel near here?
A has there **B** is there **C** there is **D** is it
- 8.2 a lot of accidents on this road. It's very dangerous.
A Have **B** It has **C** There have **D** They are **E** There are
- 8.3 I was hungry when I got home, but anything to eat.
A there wasn't **B** there weren't **C** it wasn't **D** there hasn't been
- 8.4 three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
A It's **B** It has **C** There is **D** There are
- 8.5 true that you're going away?
A Is there **B** Is it **C** Is **D** Are you

Auxiliary verbs

- 9.1 I haven't got a car, but my sister
A have **B** is **C** has **D** hasn't **E** has got
- 9.2 I don't like hot weather, but Sue
A does **B** doesn't **C** do **D** does like **E** likes
- 9.3 'Nicola got married last week.' '..... Really?'
A Is she? **B** Got she? **C** Did she? **D** Has she?
- 9.4 You haven't met my mother, ?
A haven't you **B** have you **C** did you **D** you have **E** you haven't
- 9.5 Ben doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers
A too **B** either **C** neither **D** never
- 9.6 'I'd like to go to Australia.' '.....'
A So do I. **B** So am I. **C** So would I. **D** Neither do I. **E** So I would.
- 9.7 Sue much at weekends.
A don't **B** doesn't **C** don't do **D** doesn't do

Questions

- 10.1 'When ?' 'I'm not sure. More than 100 years ago.'
A did the telephone invent **B** has the telephone invented
C was invented the telephone **D** was the telephone invented
E the telephone was invented
- 10.2 'I broke my finger last week.' 'How that?'
A did you **B** you did **C** you did do **D** did you do

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY
UNIT

- 10.3 Why me last night? I was waiting for you to phone.
A didn't you phone **B** you not phone **C** you don't phone
D you didn't phone 44
- 10.4 'Who in this house?' 'I don't know.'
A lives **B** does live **C** does lives **D** living 45
- 10.5 What when you told him the story?
A said Paul **B** did Paul say **C** Paul said **D** did Paul said 45
- 10.6 'Tom's father is in hospital.' '.....'
A In which hospital he is? **B** In which hospital he is in?
C Which hospital he is in? **D** Which hospital is he in? 46
- 10.7 Did you have a good holiday?
A How was the weather like? **B** What was the weather like?
C What the weather was like? **D** Was the weather like? 46
- 10.8 taller – Joe or Gary?
A Who is **B** What is **C** Which is **D** Who has 47
- 10.9 There are four umbrellas here. is yours?
A What **B** Who **C** Which **D** How **E** Which one 47, 75
- 10.10 How long to cross the Atlantic by ship?
A is it **B** does it need **C** does it take **D** does it want 48
- 10.11 I don't remember what at the party.
A Kate was wearing **B** was wearing Kate **C** was Kate wearing 49
- 10.12 'Do you know?' 'Yes, I think so.'
A if Jack is at home **B** is Jack at home **C** whether Jack is at home
D that Jack is at home 49

Reported speech

- 11.1 I saw Steve a week ago. He said that me, but he didn't.
A he phone **B** he phones **C** he'll phone **D** he's going to phone
E he would phone 50
- 11.2 'Why did Tim go to bed so early?' 'He'
A said he was tired **B** said that he was tired **C** said me he was tired
D told me he was tired **E** told that he was tired 50

-ing and to

- 12.1 You shouldn't so hard.
A working **B** work **C** to work **D** worked 51
- 12.2 It's late. I now.
A must to go **B** have go **C** have to going **D** have to go 51
- 12.3 Tina has decided her car.
A sell **B** to sell **C** selling **D** to selling 52
- 12.4 I don't mind early.
A get up **B** to get up **C** getting up **D** to getting up 52

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY
UNIT

- 12.5 Do you like early?
A get up B to get up C getting up D to getting up 52
- 12.6 Do you want you some money?
A me lend B me lending C me to lend D that I lend 53
- 12.7 He's very funny. He makes
A me laugh B me laughing C me to laugh D that I laugh 53
- 12.8 Paula went to the shop a newspaper.
A for get B for to get C for getting D to get E get 54

Go, get, do, make and have

- 13.1 It's a nice day. Let's go
A for a swim B on a swim C to swimming D swimming 55
- 13.2 I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she better soon.
A has B makes C gets D goes 56
- 13.3 Kate the car and drove away.
A went into B went in C got in D got into 56
- 13.4 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll it.'
A do B make C get D open 57
- 13.5 I'm sorry, I a mistake.
A did B made C got D had 57
- 13.6 '..... a good time in Tokyo?' 'Yes, it was great.'
A Have you B Had you C Do you have D Did you have 58

Pronouns and possessives

- 14.1 I don't want this book. You can have
A it B them C her D him 59, 62
- 14.2 Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with?
A her B they C them D him 59, 62
- 14.3 I know Amy, but I don't know husband.
A their B his C she D her 60, 62
- 14.4 Oxford is famous for university.
A his B its C it's D their 60
- 14.5 I didn't have an umbrella, so Sarah gave me
A her B hers C her umbrella D she's 61, 62
- 14.6 I went out to meet a friend of
A mine B my C me D I E myself 61, 62
- 14.7 We had a good holiday. We enjoyed
A us B our C ours D ourself E ourselves 63
- 14.8 Kate and Helen are good friends. They know well.
A each other B them C themselves D themselves 63

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY
UNIT

Determiners and pronouns

- 16.1 'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, nice.' 74
A it's B this is C that's
- 16.2 'Is there a bank near here?' 'Yes, there's at the end of this street.' 75
A some B it C one D a one
- 16.3 This cup is dirty. Can I have ? 75
A clean one B a clean one C clean D a clean
- 16.4 I'm going shopping. I'm going to buy clothes. 76
A any B some
- 16.5 'Where's your luggage?' 'I don't have ' 76
A one B some C any
- 16.6 Tracey and Jack 77, 78
A have no children B don't have no children
C don't have any children D have any children
- 16.7 'How much money do you have?' '..... ' 77
A No. B No-one. C Any. D None.
- 16.8 There is in the room. It's empty. 78, 79
A anybody B nobody C anyone D no-one
- 16.9 'What did you say?' '..... ' 78, 79
A Nothing. B Nobody. C Anything. D Not anything.
- 16.10 I'm hungry. I want 79
A something for eat B something to eat C something for eating
- 16.11 Ben watches TV for about two hours 80
A all evening B all evenings C all the evenings D every evenings
E every evening
- 16.12 friends. 80
A Everybody need B Everybody needs C Everyone need D Everyone needs
- 16.13 children like playing. 81
A Most B The most C Most of D The most of
- 16.14 I like those pictures. 82
A both B both of C either D either of
- 16.15 I haven't read these books. 82
A neither B neither of C either D either of
- 16.16 Do you have friends? 83
A a lot of B much C many D much of E many of
- 16.17 We like films, so we go to the cinema 83
A a lot of B much C many D a lot
- 16.18 There were people in the theatre. It was nearly empty. 84
A a little B few C little D a few of
- 16.19 They have money, so they're not poor. 84
A a little B a few C few D little E little of

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY
UNIT

Adjectives and adverbs

- 17.1 I don't speak any
A foreign languages B languages foreign C languages foreigners 85
- 17.2 He ate his dinner very
A quick B quicker C quickly 86
- 17.3 You speak English very
A good B fluent C well D slow 86
- 17.4 Helen wants
A a more big car B a car more big C a car bigger D a bigger car 87
- 17.5 'Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel'
A good B worse C more bad D more worse 87
- 17.6 Athens is older Rome.
A as B than C that D of 88
- 17.7 I can run faster
A than him B that he can C than he can D as he can E as he 88
- 17.8 Tennis isn't football.
A popular as B popular than C as popular than D so popular that
E as popular as 89
- 17.9 The weather today is the same yesterday.
A as B that C than D like 89
- 17.10 The Europa Hotel is in the city.
A the more expensive hotel B the most expensive hotel
C the hotel most expensive D the hotel the more expensive
E the hotel more expensive 90
- 17.11 The film was very bad. I think it's the film I've ever seen.
A worse B baddest C most bad D worst E more worse 90
- 17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You've got
A enough money B money enough C enough of money 91
- 17.13 Is your English a conversation?
A enough good to have B good enough for have C enough good for
D good enough to have 91
- 17.14 I'm out.
A too tired for go B too much tired for going C too tired to go
D too much tired to go 92

Word order

- 18.1 Sue They're very nice.
A bought yesterday some new shoes B bought some new shoes yesterday
C yesterday bought some new shoes 93
- 18.2 coffee in the morning.
A I drink always B Always I drink C I always drink 94

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY
UNIT

- 18.3 during the day. 94
A They are at home never **B** They are never at home
C They never are at home **D** Never they are at home
- 18.4 'Where's Emma?' 'She !' 95
A isn't here yet **B** isn't here already **C** isn't here still
- 18.5 I locked the door and I gave 96
A Sarah the keys **B** to Sarah the keys **C** the keys Sarah
D the keys to Sarah

Conjunctions and clauses

- 19.1 I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when more time. 98
A I'll have **B** I had **C** I have **D** I'm going to have
- 19.2 late this evening, don't wait for me. 99
A If I'm **B** If I'll be **C** When I'm **D** When I'll be
- 19.3 I don't know the answer. If I the answer, I'd tell you. 100
A know **B** would know **C** have known **D** knew
- 19.4 I like this jacket. it if it wasn't so expensive. 100
A I buy **B** I'll buy **C** I bought **D** I'd bought **E** I'd buy
- 19.5 Emma lives in a house is 400 years old. 101
A who **B** that **C** which **D** it **E** what
- 19.6 The people work in the office are very friendly. 101
A who **B** that **C** they **D** which **E** what
- 19.7 Did you find the books ? 102
A who you wanted **B** that you wanted **C** what you wanted
D you wanted **E** you wanted it
- 19.8 I met can speak six languages. 102
A a woman who **B** a woman which **C** a woman **D** a woman she

Prepositions

- 20.1 Bye! I'll see you 103
A until Friday **B** at Friday **C** in Friday **D** on Friday
- 20.2 Hurry! The train leaves five minutes. 103
A at **B** on **C** from **D** after **E** in
- 20.3 'How long will you be away?' '..... Monday.' 104
A On **B** To **C** Until **D** Till **E** Since
- 20.4 We played tennis yesterday. We played two hours. 105
A in **B** for **C** since **D** during
- 20.5 I always have breakfast before to work. 105
A I go **B** go **C** to go **D** going
- 20.6 Write your name the top of the page. 106
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY
UNIT

- 20.7 There are a lot of apples those trees.
A at B on C in D to 106
- 20.8 What's the largest city the world?
A at B on C in D of 107
- 20.9 The office is the first floor.
A at B on C in D to 107
- 20.10 I met a lot of people the party.
A on B to C in D at 108
- 20.11 I want to go Italy next year.
A at B on C in D to 108
- 20.12 What time did you arrive the hotel?
A at B on C in D to 108
- 20.13 'Where is David in this picture?' 'He's Laura.'
A at front of B in the front of C in front of D in front from 109
- 20.14 I jumped the wall into the garden.
A on B through C across D over E above 110
- 20.15 Jane isn't at work this week. She's holiday.
A on B in C for D to E at 111
- 20.16 Do you like travelling ?
A with train B with the train C in train D on train E by train 111
- 20.17 I'm not very good telling stories.
A on B with C at D in E for 112
- 20.18 Tom left without goodbye.
A say B saying C to say D that he said 112
- 20.19 I have to phone today.
A with my parents B to my parents C at my parents D my parents 113
- 20.20 'Do you like eating in restaurants?' 'It depends the restaurant.'
A in B at C of D on E over 113

Phrasal verbs

- 21.1 The car stopped and a woman got
A off B down C out D out of 114
- 21.2 It was cold, so I
A put on my coat B put my coat on C put the coat on me
D put me the coat on 115
- 21.3 I've got Rachel's keys. I have to to her.
A give back B give them back C give back them D give it back 115

Key to Exercises

UNIT 1

1.1

- 2 they're
- 3 it isn't / it's not
- 4 that's
- 5 I'm not
- 6 you aren't / you're not

1.2

- | | |
|---------|----------------|
| 2 'm/am | 6 are |
| 3 is | 7 is ... are |
| 4 are | 8 'm/am ... is |
| 5 's/is | |

1.3

- 2 I'm / I am
- 3 He's / He is
- 4 they're / they are
- 5 It's / It is
- 6 You're / You are
- 7 She's / She is
- 8 Here's / Here is

1.4

Example answers:

- 1 My name is Robert.
- 2 I'm 25.
- 3 I'm from Australia.
- 4 I'm a gardener.
- 5 My favourite colours are black and white.
- 6 I'm interested in plants.

1.5

- 2 They're / They are cold.
- 3 He's / He is hot.
- 4 He's / He is scared.
- 5 They're / They are hungry.
- 6 She's / She is angry.

1.6

- 2 It's/It is windy today. *or* It isn't/It's not windy today.
- 3 My hands are cold. *or* My hands aren't/are not cold.
- 4 Brazil is a very big country.
- 5 Diamonds aren't/are not cheap.
- 6 Toronto isn't/is not in the US.
- 8 I'm/I am hungry. *or* I'm not/I am not hungry.
- 9 I'm/I am a good swimmer. *or* I'm not/I am not a good swimmer.
- 10 I'm/I am interested in football. *or* I'm not/I am not interested in football.

UNIT 2

2.1

- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 2 F | 6 E |
| 3 H | 7 B |
| 4 C | 8 I |
| 5 A | 9 D |

2.2

- 3 Is your job interesting?
- 4 Are the shops open today?
- 5 Where are you from?
- 6 Are you interested in sport?
- 7 Is the station near here?
- 8 Are your children at school?
- 9 Why are you late?

2.3

- 2 Where's / Where is
- 3 How old are
- 4 How much are
- 5 What's / What is
- 6 Who's / Who is
- 7 What colour are

2.4

- 2 Are you American?
- 3 How old are you?
- 4 Are you a teacher?
- 5 Are you married?
- 6 Is your wife a lawyer?
- 7 Where's/Where is she from?
- 8 What's/What is her name?
- 9 How old is she?

2.5

- 2 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.
- 3 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
- 4 Yes, they are. *or* No, they aren't. / No, they're not.
- 5 Yes, it is. *or* No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
- 6 Yes, I am. *or* No, I'm not.

UNIT 3

3.1

- 2 's/is waiting
- 3 're/are playing
- 4 He's/He is lying
- 5 They're/They are having
- 6 She's/She is sitting

3.2

- 2 's/is cooking
- 3 're/are standing
- 4 's/is swimming

- 5 're/are staying
- 6 's/is having
- 7 're/are building
- 8 'm/am going

3.3

- 3 She's/She is sitting on the floor.
- 4 She isn't/She's not reading a book.
- 5 She isn't/She's not playing the piano.
- 6 She's/She is laughing.
- 7 She's/She is wearing a hat.
- 8 She isn't/She's not drinking coffee.

3.4

- 3 I'm sitting on a chair. *or* I'm not sitting on a chair.
- 4 I'm eating. *or* I'm not eating.
- 5 It's raining. *or* It isn't raining. / It's not raining.
- 6 I'm learning English.
- 7 I'm listening to music. *or* I'm not listening to music.
- 8 The sun is shining. *or* The sun isn't shining.
- 9 I'm wearing shoes. *or* I'm not wearing shoes.
- 10 I'm not reading a newspaper.

UNIT 4

4.1

- 2 Are you going now?
- 3 Is it raining?
- 4 Are you enjoying the film?
- 5 Is that clock working?
- 6 Are you waiting for a bus?

4.2

- 2 Where is she going?
- 3 What are you eating?
- 4 Why are you crying?
- 5 What are they looking at?
- 6 Why is he laughing?

4.3

- 3 Are you listening to me?
- 4 Where are your friends going?
- 5 Are your parents watching TV?
- 6 What is Jessica cooking?
- 7 Why are you looking at me?
- 8 Is the bus coming?

Key to Exercises

4.4

- 2 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 3 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
- 5 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 6 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

UNIT 5

5.1

- 2 thinks 5 has
- 3 flies 6 finishes
- 4 dances

5.2

- 2 live 5 They go
- 3 She eats 6 He sleeps
- 4 He plays

5.3

- 2 open 7 costs
- 3 closes 8 cost
- 4 teaches 9 boils
- 5 meet 10 like ... likes
- 6 washes

5.4

- 2 I never go to the cinema.
- 3 Martina always works hard.
- 4 Children usually like chocolate.
- 5 Jackie always enjoys parties.
- 6 I often forget people's names.
- 7 Sam never watches TV.
- 8 We usually have dinner at 7.30.
- 9 Kate always wears nice clothes.

5.5

Example answers:

- 2 I sometimes read in bed.
- 3 I often get up before 7 o'clock.
- 4 I never go to work by bus.
- 5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.

UNIT 6

6.1

- 2 Anna doesn't play the piano very well.
- 3 They don't know my phone number.
- 4 We don't work very hard.
- 5 He doesn't have a bath every day.
- 6 You don't do the same thing every day.

6.2

- 2 Kate doesn't like classical music.
I like (or I don't like) classical music.
- 3 Ben and Sophie don't like boxing.
Kate likes boxing.
I like (or I don't like) boxing.
- 4 Ben and Sophie like horror movies.
Kate doesn't like horror movies.
I like (or I don't like) horror movies.

6.3

Example answers:

- 2 I never go to the theatre.
- 3 I don't ride a bike very often.
- 4 I never eat in restaurants.
- 5 I often travel by train.

6.4

- 2 doesn't use
- 3 don't go
- 4 doesn't wear
- 5 don't know
- 6 doesn't cost
- 7 don't see

6.5

- 3 don't know
- 4 doesn't talk
- 5 drinks
- 6 don't believe
- 7 like
- 8 doesn't eat

UNIT 7

7.1

- 2 Do you play tennis?
- 3 Does Lucy live near here?
- 4 Do Tom's friends play tennis? / Do his friends play tennis? / Do they play tennis?
- 5 Does your brother speak English? / Does he speak English?
- 6 Do you do yoga every morning?
- 7 Does Paul go away a lot? / Does he go away a lot? or Does Paul go away much? / Does he go away much?
- 8 Do you want to be famous?
- 9 Does Anna work hard? / Does she work hard?

7.2

- 3 How often do you watch TV?
- 4 What do you want for dinner?
- 5 Do you like football?
- 6 Does your brother like football?
- 7 What do you do in your free time?
- 8 Where does your sister work?
- 9 Do you always have breakfast?
- 10 What does this word mean?
- 11 Does it snow here in winter?
- 12 What time do you usually go to bed?
- 13 How much does it cost to phone New York?
- 14 What do you usually have for breakfast?

7.3

- 2 Do you enjoy / Do you like
- 3 do you start
- 4 Do you work
- 5 do you go
- 6 does he do
- 7 does he teach
- 8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

7.4

- 2 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 3 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 4 Yes, it does. or No, it doesn't.
- 5 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.

UNIT 8

8.1

- 2 No, she isn't.
Yes, she does.
She's playing the piano.
- 3 Yes, he does.
Yes, he is.
He's cleaning a window.
- 4 No, they aren't.
Yes, they do.
They teach.

8.2

- 2 don't 6 do
- 3 are 7 does
- 4 does 8 doesn't
- 5 's/is ... don't

8.3

- 4 is singing
- 5 She wants
- 6 do you use
- 7 you're sitting
- 8 I don't understand
- 9 I'm going ... Are you coming
- 10 does your father finish
- 11 I'm not listening
- 12 He's/He is cooking
- 13 doesn't usually drive ...
usually walks
- 14 doesn't like ... She prefers

UNIT 9

9.1

- 3 He's got a new job.
- 4 Have you got an umbrella?
- 5 We've got a lot of work to do.
- 6 I haven't got your phone number.
- 7 Has your father got a car?
- 8 How much money have we got?

9.2

- 2 I don't have many clothes.
- 3 Does Tom have a brother?
- 4 How many children do they have?
- 5 Do you have any questions?
- 6 Sam doesn't have a job.

9.3

- 2 He's got a bike. *or* He has a bike.
- 3 He hasn't got a dog. *or* He doesn't have a dog.
- 4 He's got a mobile phone. *or* He has a mobile phone.
- 5 He hasn't got a watch. *or* He doesn't have a watch.
- 6 He's got two brothers and a sister. *or* He has two brothers and a sister.
- 7 I've got a dog. / I have a dog. *or* I haven't got a dog. / I don't have a dog.
- 8 I've got a bike. / I have a bike. *or* I haven't got a bike. / I don't have a bike.
- 9 (*Example answer*) I've got a brother and a sister. *or* I have a brother and a sister.

9.4

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 3 has | 6 don't have |
| 4 don't have | 7 doesn't have |
| 5 have | |

9.5

- 2 's got / has got a lot of friends
- 3 hasn't got a key
- 4 haven't got much time
- 5 has got six legs
- 6 haven't got a job

UNIT 10

10.1

- 2 Jack and Kate were at/in the cinema.
- 3 Sue was at the station.
- 4 Mr and Mrs Hall were in/at a restaurant.
- 5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach / at the beach / at the seaside.
- 6 (*Example answer*) I was at work.

10.2

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 2 is ... was | 6 're/are |
| 3 'm/am | 7 Was |
| 4 was | 8 was |
| 5 were | 9 are ... were |

10.3

- 2 wasn't ... was
- 3 was ... were
- 4 '**Were** Kate and Ben at the party?' 'Kate **was** there, but Ben **wasn't**.' *or* 'Kate **wasn't** there, but Ben **was**.'
- 5 were
- 6 weren't ... were

10.4

- 2 Was your exam difficult?
- 3 Where were Sue and Chris last week?
- 4 How much was your new camera?
- 5 Why were you angry yesterday?
- 6 Was the weather nice last week?

UNIT 11

11.1

- 2 opened
- 3 started ... finished
- 4 wanted
- 5 happened
- 6 rained
- 7 enjoyed ... stayed
- 8 died

11.2

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 2 saw | 8 thought |
| 3 played | 9 copied |
| 4 paid | 10 knew |
| 5 visited | 11 put |
| 6 bought | 12 spoke |
| 7 went | |

11.3

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 2 got | 9 checked |
| 3 had | 10 had |
| 4 left | 11 waited |
| 5 drove | 12 departed |
| 6 got | 13 arrived |
| 7 parked | 14 took |
| 8 walked | |

11.4

- 2 lost her keys
- 3 met her friends
- 4 bought a newspaper
- 5 went to the cinema
- 6 ate an orange
- 7 had a shower
- 8 came (to see us)

11.5

- 2-6 *Example answers*
 I got up late yesterday.
 I met some friends at lunchtime.
 I went to the supermarket.
 I phoned a lot of people.
 I lost my keys.

UNIT 12

12.1

- 2 didn't work
- 3 didn't go
- 4 didn't have
- 5 didn't do

12.2

- 2 Did you enjoy the party?
- 3 Did you have a good holiday?
- 4 Did you finish work early?
- 5 Did you sleep well last night?

Key to Exercises

12.3

- 2 I got up before 7 o'clock. *or* I didn't get up before 7 o'clock.
- 3 I had a shower. *or* I didn't have a shower.
- 4 I bought a magazine. *or* I didn't buy a magazine.
- 5 I ate meat. *or* I didn't eat meat.
- 6 I went to bed before 10.30. *or* I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

12.4

- 2 did you arrive
- 3 Did you win
- 4 did you go
- 5 did it cost
- 6 Did you go to bed late
- 7 Did you have a nice time
- 8 did it happen / did that happen

12.5

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 2 bought | 6 didn't have |
| 3 Did it rain | 7 did you do |
| 4 didn't stay | 8 didn't know |
| 5 opened | |

UNIT 13

13.1

- 2 Jack and Kate were at the cinema. They were watching a film.
- 3 Tom was in his car. He was driving.
- 4 Tracey was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
- 5 Mr and Mrs Hall were in the park. They were walking.
- 6 (*Example answer*) I was in a cafe. I was having a drink with some friends.

13.2

- 2 she was playing tennis
- 3 she was reading a/the paper/newspaper
- 4 she was cooking (lunch)
- 5 she was having breakfast
- 6 she was cleaning the kitchen

13.3

- 2 What were you doing
- 3 Was it raining
- 4 Why was Sue driving
- 5 Was Tom wearing

13.4

- 2 He was carrying a bag.
- 3 He wasn't going to the dentist.
- 4 He was eating an ice cream.
- 5 He wasn't carrying an umbrella.
- 6 He wasn't going home.
- 7 He was wearing a hat.
- 8 He wasn't riding a bicycle.

UNIT 14

14.1

- 1 happened ... was painting ... fell
- 2 arrived ... got ... were waiting
- 3 was walking ... met ... was going ... was carrying ... stopped

14.2

- 2 was studying
- 3 Did Paul call ... called ... was having
- 4 didn't go
- 5 were you driving ... stopped ... wasn't driving
- 6 Did your team win ... didn't play
- 7 did you break ... were playing ... kicked ... hit
- 8 Did you see ... was wearing
- 9 were you doing
- 10 lost ... did you get ... climbed

UNIT 15

15.1

- 2 She has/She's closed the door.
- 3 They have/They've gone to bed.
- 4 It has/It's stopped raining.
- 5 He has/He's had a shower.
- 6 The picture has fallen down.

15.2

- 2 've bought / have bought
- 3 's gone / has gone
- 4 Have you seen
- 5 has broken
- 6 've told / have told
- 7 has taken
- 8 haven't seen
- 9 has she gone
- 10 've forgotten / have forgotten
- 11 's invited / has invited
- 12 Have you decided
- 13 haven't told
- 14 've finished / have finished

UNIT 16

16.1

- 2 He's/He has just got up.
- 3 They've/They have just bought a car.
- 4 The race has just started.

16.2

- 2 they've/they have already seen it.
- 3 I've/I have already phoned him.
- 4 He's/He has already gone (away).
- 5 I've/I have already read it.
- 6 She's/She has already started (it).

16.3

- 2 The bus has just gone.
- 3 The train hasn't left yet.
- 4 He hasn't opened it yet.
- 5 They've/They have just finished their dinner.
- 6 It's / It has just stopped raining.

16.4

- 2 Have you met your new neighbours yet?
- 3 Have you paid your electricity bill yet?
- 4 Has Tom/he sold his car yet?

UNIT 17

17.1

- 3 Have you ever been to Australia?
- 4 Have you ever lost your passport?
- 5 Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
- 6 Have you ever won a race?
- 7 Have you ever been to New York?
- 8 Have you ever driven a bus?
- 9 Have you ever broken your leg?

17.2

Helen:

- 2 She's/She has been to Australia once.
- 3 She's/She has never won a race.
- 4 She's/She has flown in a helicopter a few times.

You (example answers):

- 5 I've/I have never been to New York.
- 6 I've/I have played tennis many times.
- 7 I've/I have never driven a lorry.
- 8 I've/I have been late for work a few times.

17.3

2-6

She's/She has done a lot of interesting things.

She's/She has travelled all over the world. or She's/She has been all over the world.

She's/She has been married three times.

She's/She has written ten books.

She's/She has met a lot of interesting people.

17.4

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 2 been | 6 gone |
| 3 gone | 7 gone |
| 4 been | 8 been |
| 5 been | |

UNIT 18**18.1**

- 3 have been
- 4 has been
- 5 have lived / have been living
- 6 has worked / has been working
- 7 has had
- 8 have been learning

18.2

- 2 How long have they been there? or ... been in Brazil?
- 3 How long have you known her? or ... known Amy?
- 4 How long has she been learning Italian?
- 5 How long has he lived in Canada? / How long has he been living ... ?
- 6 How long have you been a teacher?
- 7 How long has it been raining?

18.3

- 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.
- 3 They have been on holiday since Sunday.
- 4 The sun has been shining all day.
- 5 She has been waiting for ten minutes.
- 6 He has had a beard since he was 20.

18.4

- 2 I know
- 3 I've known
- 4 have you been waiting
- 5 works
- 6 She has been reading
- 7 have you lived
- 8 I've had
- 9 is ... He has been

UNIT 19**19.1**

- | | |
|---------|-----------------|
| 3 for | 6 for |
| 4 since | 7 for |
| 5 since | 8 for ... since |

19.2

Example answers:

- 2 A year ago.
- 3 A few weeks ago.
- 4 Two hours ago.
- 5 Six months ago.

19.3

- 3 for 20 years
- 4 20 years ago
- 5 an hour ago
- 6 a few days ago
- 7 for six months
- 8 for a long time

19.4

- 2 Jack has been here since Tuesday.
- 3 It's been raining for an hour.
- 4 I've known Sue since 2008.
- 5 Claire and Matt have been married for six months.
- 6 Laura has been studying medicine (at university) for three years.
- 7 David has played / David has been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

19.5

Example answers

- 2 I've been in the same job for ten years.
- 3 I've been learning English for six months.
- 4 I've known Chris for a long time.
- 5 I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

UNIT 20**20.1**

- 2 I started (it)
- 3 they arrived
- 4 she went (away)
- 5 I wore it

20.2

- 3 I finished
- 4 OK
- 5 did you finish
- 6 OK
- 7 (Steve's grandmother) died
- 8 Where were you / Where did you go

20.3

- 3 played
- 4 did you go
- 5 Have you ever met
- 6 wasn't
- 7 's/has visited
- 8 switched
- 9 lived
- 10 haven't been

20.4

- 1 Did you have ... was
- 2 Have you seen ... went ... haven't seen
- 3 has worked / has been working ... was ... worked ... didn't enjoy
- 4 've/have seen ... 've/have never spoken ... Have you ever spoken ... met

UNIT 21

21.1

- 3 Glass is made from sand.
- 4 The windows are cleaned every two weeks.
- 5 This room isn't used very much.
- 6 Are we allowed to park here?
- 7 How is this word pronounced?
- 9 The house was painted last month.
- 10 My phone was stolen a few days ago.
- 11 Three people were injured in the accident.
- 12 When was this bridge built?
- 13 I wasn't woken up by the noise.
- 14 How were these windows broken?
- 15 Were you invited to Jon's party last week?

21.2

- 2 Football **is played** in most ...
- 3 Why **was the letter sent** to ... ?
- 4 ... where films **are made**.
- 5 Where **were** you born?
- 6 How many languages **are spoken** ... ?
- 7 ... but nothing **was** stolen.
- 8 When **was** the bicycle **invented**?

21.3

- 3 is made
- 4 were damaged
- 5 was given
- 6 are shown
- 7 were invited
- 8 was made
- 9 was stolen ... was found

21.4

- 2 Sarah was born in Manchester.
- 3 Her parents were born in Ireland.
- 4 I was born in ...
- 5 My mother was born in ...

UNIT 22

22.1

- 2 A bridge is being built.
- 3 The windows are being cleaned.
- 4 The grass is being cut.

22.2

- 3 The window **has been** broken.
- 4 The roof **is being** repaired.
- 5 The car **has been** damaged.
- 6 The houses **are being** knocked down.
- 7 The trees **have been** cut down.
- 8 They **have been** invited to a party.

22.3

- 3 has been repaired
- 4 was repaired
- 5 are made
- 6 were they built
- 7 Is the photocopier being used or Is anybody using the photocopier
- 8 are they called
- 9 were stolen
- 10 was damaged ... hasn't been repaired

UNIT 23

23.1

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 3 are | 7 do |
| 4 Does | 8 Is |
| 5 Do | 9 does |
| 6 Is | 10 Are |

23.2

- 2 don't
- 3 'm/am not
- 4 isn't
- 5 don't
- 6 doesn't
- 7 'm/am not
- 8 aren't / 're not

23.3

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 2 Did | 7 were |
| 3 were | 8 Has |
| 4 was | 9 did |
| 5 Has | 10 have |
| 6 did | |

23.4

- | | |
|--------|------------|
| 2 was | 6 've/have |
| 3 Have | 7 is |
| 4 are | 8 was |
| 5 were | 9 has |

23.5

- 3 eaten
- 4 enjoying
- 5 damaged
- 6 use
- 7 gone
- 8 understand
- 9 listening
- 10 pronounced
- 11 open

UNIT 24

24.1

- 3 got
- 4 brought
- 5 paid
- 6 enjoyed
- 7 bought
- 8 sat
- 9 left
- 10 happened
- 11 heard
- 12 put
- 13 caught
- 14 watched
- 15 understood

24.2

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 2 began | begun |
| 3 ate | eaten |
| 4 drank | drunk |
| 5 drove | driven |
| 6 spoke | spoken |
| 7 wrote | written |
| 8 came | come |
| 9 knew | known |
| 10 took | taken |
| 11 went | gone |
| 12 gave | given |
| 13 threw | thrown |
| 14 forgot | forgotten |

24.3

- 3 slept
- 4 saw
- 5 rained
- 6 lost ... seen
- 7 stolen
- 8 went
- 9 finished
- 10 built
- 11 learnt/learned
- 12 ridden
- 13 known
- 14 fell ... hurt
- 15 ran ... run

24.4

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 2 told | 8 spoken |
| 3 won | 9 cost |
| 4 met | 10 driven |
| 5 woken up | 11 sold |
| 6 swam | 12 flew |
| 7 thought | |

UNIT 25**25.1**

- 2 Richard is going to the cinema.
- 3 Rachel is meeting Dave.
- 4 Karen is having lunch with Will.
- 5 Sue and Tom are going to a party.

25.2

- 2 Are you working next week?
- 3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?
- 4 What time are your friends coming?
- 5 When is Lisa going on holiday?

25.3

- 3–6 *Example answers*
 I'm going away at the weekend.
 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.
 I'm meeting a friend this evening.
 I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.

25.4

- 3 She's getting
- 4 are going ... are they going
- 5 finishes
- 6 I'm not going
- 7 I'm going ... We're meeting
- 8 are you getting ... leaves
- 9 Are you coming ... does the film begin
- 10 are you doing ... I'm working

UNIT 26**26.1**

- 2 I'm going to have a bath.
- 3 I'm going to buy a car.
- 4 We're going to play football.

26.2

- 3 'm/am going to walk
- 4 's/is going to stay
- 5 'm/am going to eat
- 6 're/are going to give
- 7 's/is going to lie down

- 8 Are you going to watch
- 9 is Rachel going to do

26.3

- 2 The shelf is going to fall (down).
- 3 The car is going to turn (right).
- 4 He's / He is going to kick the ball.

26.4

- 1–3 *Example answers*
 I'm going to phone Maria this evening.
 I'm going to get up early tomorrow.
 I'm going to buy some shoes tomorrow.

UNIT 27**27.1**

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 2 she'll be | 5 she's |
| 3 she was | 6 she was |
| 4 she'll be | 7 she'll be |

27.2

- Example answers:*
 2 I'll be at home.
 3 I'll probably be in bed.
 4 I'll be at work.
 5 I don't know where I'll be.

27.3

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 2 'll/will | 5 'll/will |
| 3 won't | 6 'll/will |
| 4 won't | 7 won't |

27.4

- 3 I think we'll win the game.
- 4 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.
- 5 I think Sue will like her present.
- 6 I don't think they'll get married.
- 7 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.

27.5

- 2 are you doing
- 3 They're going
- 4 will lend
- 5 I'm going
- 6 will phone
- 7 He's working
- 8 Will you
- 9 are coming

UNIT 28**28.1**

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 2 I'll eat | 5 I'll stay |
| 3 I'll sit | 6 I'll show |
| 4 I'll do | |

28.2

- 2 I think I'll have
- 3 I don't think I'll play
- 4 I think I'll buy
- 5 I don't think I'll buy

28.3

- 2 I'll do
- 3 I watch
- 4 I'll go
- 5 is going to buy
- 6 I'll give
- 7 Are you doing ... I'm going
- 8 I'm working

28.4

- 2 Shall I turn off the TV?
- 3 Shall I make some sandwiches?
- 4 Shall I turn on the light?

28.5

- 2 where shall we go?
- 3 what shall we buy?
- 4 who shall we invite?

UNIT 29**29.1**

- 2 I might see you tomorrow.
- 3 Sarah might forget to phone.
- 4 It might snow today.
- 5 I might be late tonight.
- 6 Mark might not be here next week.
- 7 I might not have time to go out.

29.2

- 2 I might go away.
- 3 I might see her on Monday.
- 4 I might have fish.
- 5 I might get/take a taxi. or ... go by taxi.
- 6 I might buy/get a new car.

Key to Exercises

29.3

- 3 He might get up early.
- 4 He isn't/He's not working tomorrow.
- 5 He might be at home tomorrow morning.
- 6 He might watch TV.
- 7 He's going out in the afternoon.
- 8 He might go shopping.

29.4

- 1–3 *Example answers*
I might buy some new clothes.
I might go out with some friends.
I might have an egg for breakfast.

UNIT 30

30.1

- 2 Can you ski?
- 3 Can you play chess?
- 4 Can you run ten kilometres?
- 5 Can you drive (a car)?
- 6 Can you ride (a horse)?
- 7 I can/can't swim.
- 8 I can/can't ski.
- 9 I can/can't play chess.
- 10 I can/can't run ten kilometres.
- 11 I can/can't drive (a car).
- 12 I can/can't ride (a horse).

30.2

- 2 can see
- 3 can't hear
- 4 can't find
- 5 can speak

30.3

- 2 couldn't eat
- 3 can't decide
- 4 couldn't find
- 5 can't go
- 6 couldn't go

30.4

- 2 Can/Could you pass the salt (please)?
- 3 Can/Could I have these postcards (please)?
- 4 Can/Could you turn off the radio (please)?
- 5 Can/Could I borrow your newspaper (please)?
- 6 Can/Could I use your pen (please)?

UNIT 31

31.1

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 2 must meet | 5 must go |
| 3 must wash | 6 must win |
| 4 must learn | 7 must be |

31.2

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 2 I must | 5 I had to |
| 3 I had to | 6 I had to |
| 4 I must | 7 I must |

31.3

- 2 don't need to rush
- 3 mustn't lose
- 4 don't need to wait
- 5 mustn't forget
- 6 don't need to phone

31.4

- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 2 C | 4 B |
| 3 A | 5 D |

31.5

- 3 don't need to
- 4 had to
- 5 must
- 6 mustn't
- 7 must
- 8 had to
- 9 don't need to
- 10 mustn't

UNIT 32

32.1

- 2 You should go
- 3 You should eat
- 4 you should visit
- 5 you should wear
- 6 You should take

32.2

- 2 He shouldn't eat so much.
- 3 She shouldn't work so hard.
- 4 He shouldn't drive so fast.

32.3

- 2 Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
- 3 Do you think I should get another job?
- 4 Do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?

32.4

- 3 I think you should sell it.
- 4 I think she should have a holiday.
- 5 I don't think they should get married.

- 6 I don't think you should go to work.
- 7 I think he should go to the doctor.
- 8 I don't think we should stay there.

32.5

Example answers:

- 2 I think everybody should have enough food.
- 3 I think people should drive more carefully.
- 4 I don't think the police should carry guns.
- 5 I think I should take more exercise.

UNIT 33

33.1

- 2 have to do
- 3 has to read
- 4 have to speak
- 5 has to travel
- 6 have to hit

33.2

- 2 have to go
- 3 had to buy
- 4 have to change
- 5 had to answer

33.3

- 2 did he have to wait
- 3 does she have to go
- 4 did you have to pay
- 5 do you have to do

33.4

- 2 doesn't have to wait.
- 3 didn't have to get up early.
- 4 doesn't have to work (so) hard.
- 5 don't have to leave now.

33.5

- 3 have to pay
- 4 had to borrow
- 5 must stop *or* have to stop (*both are correct*)
- 6 has to meet
- 7 must tell *or* have to tell (*both are correct*)

33.6

Example answers:

- 2 I have to go to work every day.
- 3 I had to go to the dentist yesterday.
- 4 I have to go shopping tomorrow.

UNIT 34

34.1

- 2 Would you like an apple?
- 3 Would you like some coffee? / ... a cup of coffee?
- 4 Would you like some cheese? / ... a piece of cheese?
- 5 Would you like a sandwich?
- 6 Would you like some cake? / ... a piece of cake?

34.2

- 2 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
- 3 Would you like to come to a concert next week?
- 4 Would you like to borrow my umbrella?

34.3

- 2 Do you like
- 3 Would you like
- 4 would you like
- 5 Would you like
- 6 I like
- 7 would you like
- 8 Would you like
- 9 Do you like
- 10 I'd like
- 11 I'd like
- 12 do you like

UNIT 35

35.1

- 3 Don't buy
- 4 Smile
- 5 Don't sit
- 6 Have
- 7 Don't forget
- 8 Sleep
- 9 Be ... Don't drop

35.2

- 2 let's take a taxi
- 3 let's watch TV
- 4 let's go to a restaurant
- 5 let's wait a little

35.3

- 3 No, let's not go out.
- 4 No, don't close the window.
- 5 No, don't phone me (tonight).
- 6 No, let's not wait for Andy.
- 7 No, don't turn on the light.
- 8 No, let's not go by bus.

UNIT 36

36.1

- 2 He used to play football.
- 3 She used to be a taxi driver.
- 4 They used to live in the country.
- 5 He used to wear glasses.
- 6 This building used to be a hotel.

36.2

2-6

- She used to play volleyball.
She used to go out most evenings. / She used to go out a lot.
She used to play the guitar.
She used to read a lot. / She used to like reading.
She used to go away two or three times a year. / She used to travel a lot.

36.3

- 3 used to have
- 4 used to be
- 5 go / travel
- 6 used to eat
- 7 watches
- 8 used to live
- 9 get
- 10 did you use to play

UNIT 37

37.1

- 3 There's/There is a hospital.
- 4 There isn't a swimming pool.
- 5 There are two cinemas.
- 6 There isn't a university.
- 7 There aren't any big hotels.

37.2

- 3-6 *Example answers*
There is a university in ...
There are a lot of big shops.
There isn't an airport.
There aren't many factories.

37.3

- 2 There's/There is
- 3 is there
- 4 There are
- 5 are there
- 6 There isn't
- 7 Is there
- 8 Are there
- 9 There's / There is ...
- There aren't

37.4

2-6

- There are eight planets in the solar system.
There are fifteen players in a rugby team.
There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
There are thirty days in September.
There are fifty states in the USA.

37.5

- 2 It's
- 3 There's
- 4 There's ... Is it
- 5 Is there ... there's
- 6 It's
- 7 Is there

UNIT 38

38.1

- 2 There was a carpet
- 3 There were three pictures
- 4 There was a small table
- 5 There were some flowers
- 6 There were some books
- 7 There was an armchair
- 8 There was a sofa

38.2

- 3 There was
- 4 Was there
- 5 there weren't
- 6 There wasn't
- 7 Were there
- 8 There wasn't
- 9 There was
- 10 there weren't

38.3

- 2 There are
- 3 There was
- 4 There's/There is
- 5 There's been/There has been or There was
- 6 there was
- 7 there will be
- 8 there were ... there are
- 9 There have been
- 10 there will be or there are

Key to Exercises

UNIT 39

39.1

- 2 It's cold.
- 3 It's windy.
- 4 It's sunny/fine. or It's a nice day.
- 5 It's snowing.
- 6 It's cloudy.

39.2

- 2 It's / It is
- 3 Is it
- 4 is it ... it's / it is
- 5 It's / It is
- 6 Is it
- 7 is it
- 8 It's / It is
- 9 It's / It is

39.3

- 2 How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
- 3 How far is it from New York to Washington?
- 4 How far is it from your house to the airport?

39.4

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 3 It | 6 it |
| 4 It ... It | 7 It ... there |
| 5 There | 8 It |

39.5

- 2 It's nice to see you again.
- 3 It's impossible to work here.
- 4 It's easy to make friends.
- 5 It's interesting to visit different places.
- 6 It's dangerous to go out alone

UNIT 40

40.1

- | | |
|-------|--------|
| 2 is | 5 will |
| 3 can | 6 was |
| 4 has | |

40.2

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 2 'm not | 5 isn't |
| 3 weren't | 6 hasn't |
| 4 haven't | |

40.3

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 3 doesn't | 6 does |
| 4 do | 7 don't |
| 5 did | 8 didn't |

40.4

Example answers:

- 2 I like sport, but my sister doesn't.

- 3 I don't eat meat, but Jessica does.
- 4 I'm American, but my husband isn't.
- 5 I haven't been to Japan, but Jessica has.

40.5

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 2 wasn't | 7 has |
| 3 are | 8 do |
| 4 has | 9 hasn't |
| 5 can't | 10 will |
| 6 did | 11 might |

40.6

- 2 Yes, I have. or No, I haven't.
- 3 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't.
- 5 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 6 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 7 Yes, I will. or No, I won't.
- 8 Yes, I have. or No, I haven't.
- 9 Yes, I did. or No, I didn't.
- 10 Yes, I was. or No, I wasn't.

UNIT 41

41.1

- 2 Do you?
- 3 Didn't you?
- 4 Doesn't she?
- 5 Do I?
- 6 Did she?

41.2

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 3 Have you? | 8 Aren't you? |
| 4 Can't she? | 9 Did you? |
| 5 Were you? | 10 Does she? |
| 6 Didn't you? | 11 Won't you? |
| 7 Is there? | 12 Isn't it? |

41.3

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 2 aren't they | 5 don't you |
| 3 wasn't she | 6 doesn't he |
| 4 haven't you | 7 won't you |

41.4

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 2 are you | 6 didn't she |
| 3 isn't she | 7 was it |
| 4 can't you | 8 doesn't she |
| 5 do you | 9 will you |

UNIT 42

42.1

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 2 either | 5 either |
| 3 too | 6 either |
| 4 too | 7 too |

42.2

- 2 So am I.
- 3 So have I.
- 4 So do I.
- 5 So will I.
- 6 So was I.
- 7 Neither can I.
- 8 Neither did I.
- 9 Neither have I.
- 10 Neither am I.
- 11 Neither do I.

42.3

- 1 So am I.
- 2 So can I. or I can't.
- 3 Neither am I. or I am.
- 4 So do I. or I don't.
- 5 Neither do I. or I do.
- 6 So did I. or I didn't.
- 7 Neither have I. or I have.
- 8 Neither do I. or I do.
- 9 So am I. or I'm not.
- 10 Neither have I. or I have.
- 11 Neither did I. or I did.
- 12 So do I. or I don't.

UNIT 43

43.1

- 2 They aren't / They're not married.
- 3 I haven't had dinner.
- 4 It isn't cold today.
- 5 We won't be late.
- 6 You shouldn't go.

43.2

- 2 I don't like cheese.
- 3 They didn't understand.
- 4 He doesn't live here.
- 5 Don't go away!
- 6 I didn't do the shopping.

43.3

- 2 They haven't arrived.
- 3 I didn't go to the bank.
- 4 He doesn't speak German.
- 5 We weren't angry.
- 6 He won't be pleased.
- 7 Don't call me tonight.
- 8 It didn't rain yesterday.
- 9 I couldn't hear them.
- 10 I don't believe you.

43.4

- 2 'm not / am not
- 3 can't
- 4 doesn't
- 5 isn't / 's not

- 6 don't ... haven't
- 7 Don't
- 8 didn't
- 9 haven't
- 10 won't
- 11 didn't
- 12 weren't
- 13 hasn't
- 14 shouldn't / mustn't

43.5

- 3 He wasn't born in London.
- 4 He doesn't like London.
- 5 He'd like to live in the country.
- 6 He can drive.
- 7 He hasn't got a car. or He doesn't have a car.
- 8 He doesn't read newspapers.
- 9 He isn't interested in politics.
- 10 He watches TV most evenings.
- 11 He didn't watch TV last night.
- 12 He went out last night.

UNIT 44**44.1**

- 3 Were you late this morning?
- 4 Has Kate got a key? or Does Kate have a key?
- 5 Will you be here tomorrow?
- 6 Is Paul going out this evening?
- 7 Do you like your job?
- 8 Does Nicola live near here?
- 9 Did you enjoy the film?
- 10 Did you have a good holiday?

44.2

- 2 Do you use it a lot?
- 3 Did you use it yesterday?
- 4 Do you enjoy driving?
- 5 Are you a good driver?
- 6 Have you ever had an accident?

44.3

- 3 What are the children doing?
- 4 How is cheese made?
- 5 Is your sister coming to the party?
- 6 Why don't you tell the truth?
- 7 Have your guests arrived yet?
- 8 What time does your train leave?
- 9 Why didn't Emily go to work?
- 10 Was your car damaged in the accident?

44.4

- 3 What are you reading?
- 4 What time did she go (to bed)?
- 5 When are they going (on holiday)?
- 6 Where did you see him?
- 7 Why can't you come (to the party)?
- 8 Where has she gone?
- 9 How much (money) do you need?
- 10 Why doesn't she like you?
- 11 How often does it rain?
- 12 When did you do it? / ... the shopping?

UNIT 45**45.1**

- 2 What fell off the shelf?
- 3 Who wants to see me?
- 4 Who took your umbrella? / Who took it?
- 5 What made you ill?
- 6 Who is / Who's coming?

45.2

- 3 Who did you phone?
- 4 What happened last night?
- 5 Who knows the answer?
- 6 Who did the washing-up?
- 7 What did Jane do? / What did she do?
- 8 What woke you up?
- 9 Who saw the accident?
- 10 Who did you see?
- 11 Who has got your pen? / Who's got your pen? / Who has your pen?
- 12 What does this word mean? / What does it mean?

45.3

- 2 Who phoned you? What did she want?
- 3 Who did you ask? What did he say?
- 4 Who got married? Who told you?
- 5 Who did you meet? What did she tell you?
- 6 Who won? What did you do (after the game)?
- 7 Who gave you a/the book? What did Catherine give you?

UNIT 46**46.1**

- 2 What are you looking for?
- 3 Who did you go to the cinema with?
- 4 What/Who was the film about?
- 5 Who did you give the money to?
- 6 Who was the book written by?

46.2

- 2 What are they looking at?
- 3 Which restaurant is he going to?
- 4 What are they talking about?
- 5 What is she listening to?
- 6 Which bus are they waiting for?

46.3

- 2 Which hotel did you stay at?
- 3 Which (football) team does he play for?
- 4 Which school did you go to?

46.4

- 2 What is the food like?
- 3 What are the people like?
- 4 What is the weather like?

46.5

- 2 What was the film like?
- 3 What were the lessons like?
- 4 What was the hotel like?

UNIT 47**47.1**

- 3 What colour is it?
- 4 What time did you get up?
- 5 What type of music do you like?
- 6 What kind of car do you want (to buy)?

47.2

- 2 Which coat
- 3 Which film/movie
- 4 Which bus

47.3

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 3 Which | 8 Who |
| 4 What | 9 What |
| 5 Which | 10 Which |
| 6 What | 11 What |
| 7 Which | |

Key to Exercises

47.4

- 2 How far 5 How deep
- 3 How old 6 How long
- 4 How often

47.5

- 2 How heavy is this box?
- 3 How old are you?
- 4 How much did you spend?
- 5 How often do you watch TV?
- 6 How far is it from Paris to Moscow?

UNIT 48

48.1

- 2 How long does it take by car from Milan to Rome?
- 3 How long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?
- 4 How long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?

48.2

- 2 It takes ... hours to fly from ... to New York.
- 3 It takes ... years to study to be a doctor in ...
- 4 It takes ... to walk from my home to the nearest shop.
- 5 It takes ... to get from my home to the nearest airport.

48.3

- 2 How long did it take you to walk to the station?
- 3 How long did it take him to paint the bathroom?
- 4 How long did it take you to learn to ski?
- 5 How long did it take them to repair the car?

48.4

- 2 It took us 20 minutes to walk home. / ... to get home.
- 3 It took me six months to learn to drive.
- 4 It took Mark/him three hours to drive to London. / ... to get to London.
- 5 It took Lisa/her a long time to find a job. / ... to get a job.
- 6 It took me ... to ...

UNIT 49

49.1

- 2 I don't know where she is.
- 3 I don't know how old it is.
- 4 I don't know when he'll be here.
- 5 I don't know why he was angry.
- 6 I don't know how long she has lived here.

49.2

- 2 where Susan works
- 3 what Peter said
- 4 why he went home early
- 5 what time the meeting begins
- 6 how the accident happened

49.3

- 2 are you
- 3 they are
- 4 the museum is
- 5 do you want
- 6 elephants eat
- 7 it is

49.4

- 2 Do you know if/whether they are married?
- 3 Do you know if/whether Sue knows Bill?
- 4 Do you know if/whether Gary will be here tomorrow?
- 5 Do you know if/whether he passed his exam?

49.5

- 2 Do you know where Paula is?
- 3 Do you know if/whether she is working today? / ... she's working today?
- 4 Do you know what time she starts work?
- 5 Do you know if/whether the shops are open tomorrow?
- 6 Do you know where Sarah and Jack live?
- 7 Do you know if/whether they went to Jane's party?

49.6

Example answers:

- 2 Do you know what time the bus leaves?
- 3 Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?
- 4 I don't know what I'm going to do this evening.

- 5 Do you know if there's a restaurant near here?
- 6 Do you know how much it costs to rent a car?

UNIT 50

50.1

- 2 She said (that) she was very busy.
- 3 She said (that) she couldn't go to the party.
- 4 He said (that) he had to go out.
- 5 He said (that) he was learning Russian.
- 6 She said (that) she didn't feel very well.
- 7 They said (that) they would be home late. / ... they'd be ...
- 8 She said (that) she had just come back from holiday. / ... she'd just come back ...
- 9 She said (that) she was going to buy a guitar.
- 10 They said (that) they hadn't got a key. / They said (that) they didn't have a key.

50.2

- 2 She said (that) she wasn't hungry.
- 3 he said (that) he needed it.
- 4 she said (that) she didn't want to go.
- 5 She said (that) I could have it.
- 6 He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / ... he'd send ...
- 7 Nicola said (that) he had gone home. / ... he'd gone home.
- 8 He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.
- 9 She said (that) she was going to the cinema.

50.3

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 3 said | 7 said |
| 4 told | 8 told |
| 5 tell | 9 tell |
| 6 say | 10 say |

UNIT 51

51.1

- 3 phone
- 4 phone Paul

- 5 to phone Paul
- 6 to phone Paul
- 7 phone Paul
- 8 to phone Paul
- 9 phone Paul
- 10 phone Paul

51.2

- 3 get
- 4 going
- 5 watch
- 6 flying
- 7 listening
- 8 eat
- 9 waiting
- 10 wear
- 11 doing ... staying

51.3

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 4 to go | 13 having |
| 5 rain | 14 to have |
| 6 to leave | 15 hear |
| 7 help | 16 go |
| 8 studying | 17 listening |
| 9 to go | 18 to walk |
| 10 wearing | 19 to know |
| 11 to stay | 20 tell |
| 12 have | 20 borrow |

UNIT 52**52.1**

- 3 to see
- 4 to swim
- 5 cleaning
- 6 to ask
- 7 visiting
- 8 going
- 9 to be
- 10 waiting
- 11 to do
- 12 to speak
- 13 to go
- 14 crying / to cry
- 15 to work ... talking

52.2

- 2 to help
- 3 to see
- 4 reading
- 5 to lose
- 6 to send
- 7 raining
- 8 to go
- 9 watching / to watch
- 10 to wait

52.3

- 2 going to museums
- 3 to go
- 4 driving / to drive
- 5 to go (there)
- 6 travelling by train
- 7 walking

52.4

Example answers:

- 1 I enjoy cooking.
- 2 I don't like studying.
- 3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like to go to the beach.
- 4 When I'm on holiday, I like to do very little.
- 5 I don't mind travelling alone, but I prefer to travel with somebody.
- 6 I wouldn't like to live in a big city.

UNIT 53**53.1**

- 2 I want you to listen carefully.
- 3 I don't want you to be angry.
- 4 Do you want me to wait for you?
- 5 I don't want you to call me tonight.
- 6 I want you to meet Sarah.

53.2

- 2 A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.
- 3 I advised him to go to the doctor.
- 4 She asked me to help her. / ... asked me if I could help her.
- 5 I told him to come back in ten minutes.
- 6 Paul let me use his phone.
- 7 I told her not to phone before 8 o'clock. / ... not to call (me) before 8 o'clock.
- 8 Amy's mother taught her to play the piano.

53.3

- 2 to repeat
- 3 wait
- 4 to arrive
- 5 to get
- 6 go
- 7 borrow
- 8 to tell
- 9 to make (or to get)
- 10 think

UNIT 54**54.1**

2-4

I went to a coffee shop to meet a friend.

I went to the chemist to get some medicine.

I went to the market to buy some vegetables.

54.2

- 2 to read the newspaper
- 3 to open this door
- 4 to get some fresh air
- 5 to wake him up
- 6 to see who it was

54.3

Example answers:

- 2 to talk to you now
- 3 to tell her about the party
- 4 to do some shopping
- 5 to buy a motorbike

54.4

- | | |
|-------|--------|
| 2 to | 7 to |
| 3 to | 8 to |
| 4 for | 9 for |
| 5 to | 10 for |
| 6 for | 11 to |

54.5

- 2 for the film to begin
- 3 for it to arrive
- 4 for you to tell me

UNIT 55**55.1**

- 3 to
- 4 – (no preposition)
- 5 for
- 6 to
- 7 on ... to
- 8 for
- 9 on
- 10 to
- 11 – (no preposition)
- 12 on
- 13 for
- 14 on

55.2

- 2 went fishing
- 3 goes swimming
- 4 going skiing
- 5 go shopping
- 6 went jogging

Key to Exercises

55.3

- 2 to university
- 3 shopping
- 4 to sleep
- 5 home
- 6 skiing
- 7 riding
- 8 for a walk
- 9 on holiday ... to Portugal

UNIT 56

56.1

- 2 get your boots
- 3 get a doctor
- 4 get a taxi
- 5 gets the job
- 6 get some milk
- 7 get a ticket
- 8 gets a good salary
- 9 get a lot of rain
- 10 get a new laptop

56.2

- 2 getting dark
- 3 getting married
- 4 getting ready
- 5 getting late

56.3

- 2 get wet
- 5 got lost
- 3 got married
- 6 get old
- 4 gets angry
- 7 got better

56.4

- 2 got to Bristol at 11.45.
- 3 I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.
- 4 (Example answer) I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o'clock.

56.5

- 2 got off
- 4 got on
- 3 got out of

UNIT 57

57.1

- 2 do
- 7 done
- 3 make
- 8 make
- 4 made
- 9 making
- 5 did
- 10 do
- 6 do
- 11 doing

57.2

- 2 They're/They are doing (their) homework.
- 3 He's/He is doing the shopping. or He is shopping.
- 4 She's/She is making a jacket.

- 5 They're/They are doing an exam. (or ... taking an exam.)
- 6 He's/He is making the/his bed.
- 7 She's/She is doing the washing-up. or She is washing up. / She is doing the dishes. / She is washing the dishes.
- 8 He's/He is making a (shopping) list.
- 9 They're/They are making a film.
- 10 He's/He is taking a picture/photo/photograph.

57.3

- 2 make
- 8 make
- 3 do
- 9 do
- 4 done
- 10 making
- 5 made
- 11 made
- 6 doing
- 12 make ... do
- 7 did

UNIT 58

58.1

- 3 He doesn't have / He hasn't got
- 4 Gary had
- 5 Do you have / Have you got
- 6 we didn't have
- 7 She doesn't have / She hasn't got
- 8 Did you have

58.2

- 2 She's/She is having a cup of tea.
- 3 He's/He is having a rest.
- 4 They're/They are having a good time.
- 5 They're/They are having dinner.
- 6 He's/He is having a bath.

58.3

- 3 Have a nice/good trip!
- 4 Did you have a nice/good weekend?
- 5 Did you have a nice/good game (of tennis)?
- 6 Have a nice/good time! or Have a nice/good evening! or Have fun!
- 7 Did you have a nice/good holiday?

58.4

- 2 have something to eat
- 3 had a glass of water
- 4 have a walk
- 5 had an accident
- 6 have a look

UNIT 59

59.1

- 2 him
- 5 him
- 3 them
- 6 them
- 4 her
- 7 her

59.2

- 2 I ... them
- 6 she ... them
- 3 he ... her
- 7 they ... me
- 4 they ... us
- 8 she ... you
- 5 we ... him

59.3

- 2 I like him.
- 3 I don't like it.
- 4 Do you like it?
- 5 I don't like her.
- 6 Do you like them?

59.4

- 2 him
- 8 them
- 3 them
- 9 me
- 4 they
- 10 her
- 5 us
- 11 them
- 6 it
- 12 he ... it
- 7 She

59.5

- 2 Can you give it to him?
- 3 Can you give them to her?
- 4 Can you give it to me?
- 5 Can you give it to them?
- 6 Can you give them to us?

UNIT 60

60.1

- 2 her hands
- 5 their hands
- 3 our hands
- 6 your hands
- 4 his hands

60.2

- 2 They live with their parents.
- 3 We live with our parents.
- 4 Martina lives with her parents.
- 5 I live with my parents.
- 6 John lives with his parents.
- 7 Do you live with your parents?
- 8 Most children live with their parents.

60.3

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 2 their | 6 their |
| 3 his | 7 her |
| 4 his | 8 their |
| 5 her | |

60.4

- | | |
|---------|----------------|
| 2 his | 8 her |
| 3 Their | 9 their |
| 4 our | 10 my |
| 5 her | 11 Its |
| 6 my | 12 His ... his |
| 7 your | |

60.5

- 2 my key
- 3 Her husband
- 4 your coat
- 5 their homework
- 6 his name
- 7 Our house

UNIT 61

61.1

- | | |
|----------|---------|
| 2 mine | 6 yours |
| 3 ours | 7 mine |
| 4 hers | 8 his |
| 5 theirs | |

61.2

- 2 yours
- 3 my ... Mine
- 4 Yours ... mine
- 5 her
- 6 My ... hers
- 7 their
- 8 Ours

61.3

- 3 of hers
- 4 friends of ours
- 5 friend of mine
- 6 friend of his
- 7 friends of yours

61.4

- 2 Whose camera is this?
It's hers.
- 3 Whose gloves are these?
They're mine.
- 4 Whose hat is this? It's his.
- 5 Whose money is this?
It's yours.
- 6 Whose bags are these?
They're ours.

UNIT 62

62.1

- 2 Yes, I know **her**, but I can't remember **her name**.
- 3 Yes, I **know them**, but I **can't remember their** names.
- 4 Yes, I **know you**, but I **can't remember your name**.

62.2

- 2 He invited us to stay with **him** at his house.
- 3 They invited me to stay with **them at their** house.
- 4 I invited them to stay **with me at my** house.
- 5 She invited us to stay **with her at her** house.
- 6 Did you invite him **to stay with you at your** house?

62.3

- 2 I gave her my phone number, and she gave me **hers**.
- 3 He gave me his phone number, and I gave **him mine**.
- 4 We gave them **our** phone number, and they gave **us theirs**.
- 5 She gave him **her** phone number, and he gave **her his**.
- 6 You gave us **your** phone number, and we gave **you ours**.
- 7 They gave you **their** phone number, and you gave **them yours**.

62.4

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 2 them | 6 us |
| 3 him | 7 her |
| 4 our | 8 their |
| 5 yours | 9 mine |

UNIT 63

63.1

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 2 myself | 6 himself |
| 3 herself | 7 yourself |
| 4 themselves | 8 yourselves |
| 5 myself | |

63.2

- 2 When I saw him, he **was by himself**.
- 3 Don't **go out by yourself**.
- 4 I **went to the cinema by myself**.

- 5 My sister **lives by herself**.

- 6 Many people **live by themselves**.

63.3

- 2 They can't see each other.
- 3 They call each other a lot.
- 4 They don't know each other.
- 5 They're/They are sitting next to each other.
- 6 They gave each other presents / a present.

63.4

- 3 each other
- 4 yourselves
- 5 us
- 6 ourselves
- 7 each other
- 8 each other
- 9 them
- 10 themselves

UNIT 64

64.1

- 3 Helen is **Brian's** wife.
- 4 James is Sarah's **brother**.
- 5 James is **Daniel's** uncle.
- 6 Sarah is **Paul's** wife.
- 7 Helen is Daniel's **grandmother**.
- 8 Sarah is James's **sister**.
- 9 Paul is **Sarah's** husband.
- 10 Paul is Daniel's **father**.
- 11 Daniel is **James's** nephew.

64.2

- | | |
|----------|------------|
| 2 Andy's | 5 Rachel's |
| 3 Dave's | 6 Alice's |
| 4 Jane's | |

64.3

- 3 OK
- 4 Simon's phone number
- 5 My brother's job
- 6 OK
- 7 OK
- 8 Paula's favourite colour
- 9 your mother's birthday
- 10 My parents' house
- 11 OK
- 12 OK
- 13 Silvia's party
- 14 OK

UNIT 65

65.1

- | | |
|------|------|
| 2 a | 6 an |
| 3 a | 7 a |
| 4 an | 8 an |
| 5 a | 9 an |

65.2

- 2 a vegetable
- 3 a game
- 4 a tool
- 5 a mountain
- 6 a planet
- 7 a fruit
- 8 a river
- 9 a flower
- 10 a musical instrument

65.3

- 2 He's a shop assistant.
- 3 She's an architect.
- 4 He's a taxi driver.
- 5 He's an electrician.
- 6 She's a photographer.
- 7 She's a nurse.
- 8 I'm a/an ...

65.4

- 2-8
- Tom never wears **a** hat.
I can't ride **a** bike.
My brother is **an** artist.
Rebecca works in **a** bookshop.
Jane wants to learn **a** foreign language.
Mike lives in **an** old house.
This evening I'm going to **a** party.

UNIT 66

66.1

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 2 boats | 8 sandwiches |
| 3 women | 9 families |
| 4 cities | 10 feet |
| 5 umbrellas | 11 holidays |
| 6 addresses | 12 potatoes |
| 7 knives | |

66.2

- | | |
|------------|----------|
| 2 teeth | 5 fish |
| 3 people | 6 leaves |
| 4 children | |

66.3

- 3 ... with a lot of beautiful **trees**.
- 4 ... with two **men**.
- 5 OK

- 6 ... three **children**.
- 7 Most of my **friends** are **students**.
- 8 He put on his **pyjamas** ...
- 9 OK
- 10 Do you know many **people**

- 11 I like your **trousers**. Where did you get **them**?
- 12 ... full of **tourists**.
- 13 OK
- 14 **These scissors aren't** ...

66.4

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 2 are | 7 Do |
| 3 don't | 8 are |
| 4 watch | 9 them |
| 5 were | 10 some |
| 6 live | |

UNIT 67

67.1

- 3 a jug
- 4 water
- 5 toothpaste
- 6 a toothbrush
- 7 an egg
- 8 money
- 9 a wallet
- 10 sand
- 11 a bucket
- 12 an envelope

67.2

- 3 ... **a** hat.
- 4 ... **a** job?
- 5 OK
- 6 ... **an** apple ...
- 7 ... **a** party ...
- 8 ... **a** wonderful thing.
- 9 ... **an** island.
- 10 ... **a** key.
- 11 OK
- 12 ... **a** good idea.
- 13 ... **a** car?
- 14 ... **a** cup of coffee?
- 15 OK
- 16 ... **an** umbrella.

67.3

- 2 a piece of wood
- 3 a glass of water
- 4 a bar of chocolate
- 5 a cup of tea
- 6 a piece of paper
- 7 a bowl of soup
- 8 a loaf of bread
- 9 a jar of honey

UNIT 68

68.1

- 2 a newspaper (or a paper), some flowers (or a bunch of flowers) and a pen
- 3 some bananas, some eggs and some bread (or a loaf of bread)
- 4 some toothpaste, some soap (or a bar of soap) and a comb

68.2

- 2 Would you like some coffee? (or ... a cup of coffee?)
- 3 Would you like a biscuit?
- 4 Would you like some bread? (or ... a piece of bread? / a slice of bread?)
- 5 Would you like a chocolate?
- 6 Would you like some cake? (or ... a piece of cake?)

68.3

- 2 some ... some
- 3 some
- 4 a ... some
- 5 an ... some
- 6 a ... a ... some
- 7 some
- 8 some
- 9 some ... a

68.4

- 2 eyes
- 3 hair
- 4 information
- 5 chairs
- 6 furniture
- 7 job
- 8 wonderful weather

UNIT 69

69.1

- 3 a
- 4 the
- 5 an
- 6 the ... the
- 7 a ... a
- 8 a ... a
- 9 ... **a** student ... **a** journalist ... **an** apartment near **the** college ... **The** apartment is ...
- 10 ... two children, **a** boy and **a** girl. **The** boy is seven years old, and **the** girl is three ... in **a** factory ... doesn't have **a** job ...

69.2

- 2 **the** airport
- 3 **a** cup
- 4 **a** nice picture
- 5 **the** dictionary
- 6 **the** floor

69.3

- 2 ... send me **a** postcard.
- 3 What is **the** name of ...
- 4 ... **a** very big country.
- 5 What is **the** largest ...
- 6 ... **the** colour of **the** carpet.
- 7 ... **a** headache.
- 8 ... **an** old house near **the** station.
- 9 ... **the** name of **the** director of **the** film ...

UNIT 70**70.1**

- 3 ... **the** second floor.
- 4 ... **the** moon?
- 5 ... **the** best hotel in this town?
- 6 OK
- 7 ... **the** city centre?
- 8 ... **the** end of May.
- 9 OK
- 10 ... **the** first time I met her.
- 11 OK
- 12 It's easy to get information from **the** internet.
- 13 OK
- 14 ... on **the** top shelf on **the** right.
- 15 ... in **the** country about ten miles from **the** nearest town.

70.2

- 2 the same time
- 3 the same age
- 4 the same colour
- 5 the same problem

70.3

- 2 **the** guitar
- 3 breakfast
- 4 television/TV
- 5 **the** sea
- 6 **the** bottom

70.4

- 2 **the** name
- 3 **The** sky
- 4 TV

- 5 **the** police
- 6 **the** capital
- 7 lunch
- 8 **the** middle

UNIT 71**71.1**

- 2 **the** cinema
- 3 hospital
- 4 **the** airport
- 5 home
- 6 prison

71.2

- 3 school
- 4 **the** station
- 5 home
- 6 bed
- 7 **the** post office

71.3

- 2 **the** cinema
- 3 go to bed
- 4 go to prison
- 5 go to **the** dentist
- 6 go to university/college
- 7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital
(American speakers say 'go to **the** hospital', 'are taken to **the** hospital'.)

71.4

- 3 **the** doctor
- 4 OK
- 5 OK
- 6 OK
- 7 **the** bank
- 8 OK
- 9 OK
- 10 **the** city centre
- 11 **the** station
- 12 OK
(American speakers say 'in **the** hospital'.)
- 13 OK
- 14 OK
- 15 **the** theatre

UNIT 72**72.1**

- 2–8 *Example answers:*
 I don't like dogs.
 I hate museums.
 I love big cities.
 Tennis is all right.
 I love chocolate.

- I don't like computer games.
 I hate parties.

72.2

Example answers:

- 2 I'm not interested in politics.
- 3 I'm interested in sport.
- 4 I don't know much about art.
- 5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
- 6 I know a little about economics.

72.3

- 3 friends
- 4 parties
- 5 **The** shops
- 6 **the** milk
- 7 milk
- 8 basketball
- 9 buildings
- 10 **The** water
- 11 cold water
- 12 **the** salt
- 13 **the** people
- 14 Vegetables
- 15 **The** houses
- 16 **the** words
- 17 pictures
- 18 **the** pictures
- 19 English ... international business
- 20 Money ... happiness

UNIT 73**73.1**

- 3 Sweden
- 4 **The** Amazon
- 5 Asia
- 6 **The** Pacific
- 7 **The** Rhine
- 8 Kenya
- 9 **The** United States
- 10 **The** Andes
- 11 Bangkok
- 12 **The** Alps
- 13 **The** Red Sea
- 14 Jamaica
- 15 **The** Bahamas

Key to Exercises

73.2

- 3 OK
- 4 **the** Philippines
- 5 **the** south of France
- 6 **the** Regal Cinema
- 7 OK
- 8 **the** Museum of Art
- 9 OK
- 10 Belgium is smaller than **the** Netherlands.
- 11 **the** Mississippi ... **the** Nile
- 12 **the** National Gallery
- 13 **the** Park Hotel in Hudson Road
- 14 OK
- 15 **The** Rocky Mountains are in North America.
- 16 OK
- 17 **the** United States
- 18 **the** west of Ireland
- 19 OK
- 20 **The** Panama Canal joins **the** Atlantic Ocean and **the** Pacific Ocean.

UNIT 74

74.1

- 2 that house
- 3 these postcards
- 4 those birds
- 5 this seat
- 6 These plates

74.2

- 2 Is that your umbrella?
- 3 Is this your book?
- 4 Are those your books?
- 5 Is that your bicycle/bike?
- 6 Are these your keys?
- 7 Are those your keys?
- 8 Is this your watch?
- 9 Are those your glasses?
- 10 Are these your gloves?

74.3

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 2 that's | 6 this is |
| 3 This is | 7 That's |
| 4 That's | 8 that's |
| 5 that | |

UNIT 75

75.1

- 2 I don't need one
- 3 I'm going to get one
- 4 I don't have one / I haven't got one

- 5 I've just had one
- 6 there's one in Mill Road

75.2

- 2 a new one
- 3 a better one
- 4 an old one
- 5 a big one
- 6 a different one

75.3

- 2 Which ones?
The green ones.
- 3 Which one?
The one with a/the red door.
- 4 Which ones?
The ones on the top shelf.
- 5 Which one?
The black one.
- 6 Which one?
The one on the wall.
- 7 Which one?
The tall one with long hair.
- 8 Which ones?
The yellow ones.
- 9 Which one?
The one with a/the moustache and glasses.
- 10 Which ones?
The ones I took at the party last week.

UNIT 76

76.1

- | | |
|--------|-----------------|
| 2 some | 8 some |
| 3 any | 9 some |
| 4 any | 10 any ... any |
| 5 any | 11 some ... any |
| 6 some | 12 some |
| 7 any | |

76.2

- 2 some questions
- 3 any pictures
- 4 any foreign languages
- 5 some friends
- 6 some milk
- 7 any batteries
- 8 some fresh air
- 9 some cheese
- 10 any help

76.3

- 3 I have some / I've got some
- 4 I don't have any / I haven't got any / I haven't any
- 5 I didn't buy any
- 6 I bought some
- 7 I didn't drink any

76.4

- 2 something
- 3 anything
- 4 anything
- 5 Somebody/Someone
- 6 anything
- 7 anybody/anyone
- 8 something
- 9 anything
- 10 anybody/anyone

UNIT 77

77.1

- 2 There are no shops near here.
- 3 Carla has no free time. / Carla has got no free time.
- 4 There's no light in this room.
- 6 There isn't any milk in the fridge.
- 7 There aren't any buses today.
- 8 Tom doesn't have any brothers or sisters. / Tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.

77.2

- | | |
|-------|---------|
| 2 any | 8 no |
| 3 any | 9 any |
| 4 no | 10 no |
| 5 any | 11 None |
| 6 no | 12 any |
| 7 any | |

77.3

- 2 no money
- 3 any questions
- 4 no friends
- 5 no difference
- 6 any furniture
- 7 no idea
- 8 any heating
- 9 no queue

77.4

Example answers:

- | | |
|-------------|---------|
| 2 Three. | 4 None. |
| 3 Two cups. | 5 None. |

UNIT 78

78.1

- 2 There's nobody in the office.
- 3 I have nothing to do. / I've got nothing to do.
- 4 There's nothing on TV.
- 5 There was no-one at home.
- 6 We found nothing.

78.2

- 2 There wasn't anybody on the bus.
- 3 I don't have anything to read. / I haven't got anything to read.
- 4 I don't have anyone to help me. / I haven't got anyone to help me.
- 5 She didn't hear anything.
- 6 We don't have anything for dinner. / We haven't got anything for dinner.

78.3

- 3 a Nothing.
- 4 a Nobody./No-one.
- 5 a Nobody./No-one.
- 6 a Nothing.
- 7 a Nothing.
- 8 a Nobody./No-one.
- 3 b I don't want anything.
- 4 b I didn't meet anybody/anyone.
- 5 b Nobody/No-one knows the answer.
- 6 b I didn't buy anything.
- 7 b Nothing happened.
- 8 b Nobody/No-one was late.

78.4

- 3 anything
- 4 Nobody/No-one
- 5 Nothing
- 6 anything
- 7 anybody/anyone
- 8 nothing
- 9 anything
- 10 anything
- 11 nobody/no-one
- 12 anything
- 13 Nothing
- 14 Nobody/No-one ... anybody/anyone

UNIT 79**79.1**

- 2 something
- 3 somewhere
- 4 somebody/someone

79.2

- 2a Nowhere.
- 3a Nothing.
- 4a Nobody./No-one.
- 2b I'm not going anywhere.
- 3b I don't want anything.
- 4b I'm not looking for anybody/anyone.

79.3

- 3 anything
- 4 anything
- 5 somebody/someone
- 6 something
- 7 anybody/anyone ... nobody/no-one
- 8 anything
- 9 Nobody/No-one
- 10 anybody/anyone
- 11 Nothing
- 12 anywhere
- 13 somewhere
- 14 anything
- 15 anybody/anyone

79.4

- 2 anything to eat
- 3 nothing to do
- 4 anywhere to sit
- 5 something to drink
- 6 nowhere to park
- 7 something to read
- 8 somewhere to stay

UNIT 80**80.1**

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 2 Every day | 4 Every room |
| 3 every time | 5 every word |

80.2

- 2 every day
- 3 all day
- 4 every day
- 5 all day
- 6 all day
- 7 every day

80.3

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 2 every | 6 all |
| 3 all | 7 every |
| 4 all | 8 all |
| 5 Every | 9 every |

80.4

- 2 everything
- 3 Everybody/Everyone
- 4 everything
- 5 everywhere
- 6 Everybody/Everyone
- 7 everywhere
- 8 Everything

80.5

- | | |
|---------|---------------|
| 2 is | 7 makes |
| 3 has | 8 Is ... Does |
| 4 likes | |
| 5 has | |
| 6 was | |

UNIT 81**81.1**

- 3 Some
- 4 Most of
- 5 Most
- 6 any of
- 7 all or all of
- 8 None of
- 9 any of
- 10 Most
- 11 most of
- 12 Some
- 13 All or All of
- 14 some of
- 15 most of

81.2

- 2 All of them.
- 3 Some of them.
- 4 None of them.
- 5 Most of them.
- 6 None of it.

81.3

- 3 Some people ...
- 4 Some of **the** questions ...
or Some questions ...
- 5 OK
- 6 All insects ...
- 7 OK (or ... all **of** these books)
- 8 Most of **the** students ...
or Most students ...
- 9 OK
- 10 ... most of **the** night.

UNIT 82**82.1**

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 3 Both | 9 Neither |
| 4 Neither | 10 either of |
| 5 Neither | 11 Both |
| 6 both | 12 neither of |
| 7 Either | 13 Both |
| 8 neither of | 14 either of |

82.2

- 2 Both windows are open.
- 3 Neither man is wearing a hat. or Neither of them is wearing ...
- 4 Both men have (got) beards. or Both of them have ...
- 5 Both buses go to the airport. or ... are going to the airport.
- 6 Neither answer is correct.

Key to Exercises

82.3

- 3 Both of them are students.
- 4 Neither of them has a car. / ... has got a car.
- 5 Both of them live in London.
- 6 Both of them like cooking.
- 7 Neither of them can play the piano.
- 8 Both of them eat seafood.
- 9 Neither of them is interested in sport.

UNIT 83

83.1

- | | |
|--------|-------------|
| 2 many | 8 many |
| 3 much | 9 How many |
| 4 many | 10 How much |
| 5 many | 11 How much |
| 6 much | 12 How many |
| 7 much | |

83.2

- 2 much time
- 3 many countries
- 4 many people
- 5 much luggage
- 6 many times

83.3

- 2 a lot of interesting things
- 3 a lot of accidents
- 4 a lot of fun
- 5 a lot of traffic

83.4

- 3 a lot of snow
- 4 OK
- 5 a lot of money
- 6 OK
- 7 OK
- 8 a lot

83.5

- 3 She plays tennis a lot.
- 4 He doesn't use his car much. (or ... a lot.)
- 5 He doesn't go out much. (or ... a lot.)
- 6 She travels a lot.

UNIT 84

84.1

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 2 a few | 5 a little |
| 3 a little | 6 a few |
| 4 a few | |

84.2

- 2 a little milk
- 3 A few days

- 4 a little Russian
- 5 a few friends
- 6 a few times
- 7 a few chairs
- 8 a little fresh air

84.3

- 2 very little coffee
- 3 very little rain
- 4 very few hotels
- 5 very little time
- 6 Very few people
- 7 very little work

84.4

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 2 A few | 5 few |
| 3 a little | 6 a little |
| 4 little | 7 little |

84.5

- 2 ... **a** little luck
- 3 ... **a** few things
- 4 OK
- 5 ... **a** few questions
- 6 ... **few** people
- 7 OK

UNIT 85

85.1

- 2 I like that green jacket.
- 3 Do you like classical music?
- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.
- 5 We went to a Japanese restaurant.

85.2

- 2 black clouds
- 3 long holiday
- 4 hot water
- 5 fresh air
- 6 sharp knife
- 7 dangerous job

85.3

- 2 It looks new.
- 3 I feel ill.
- 4 You look surprised.
- 5 They smell nice.
- 6 It tastes horrible.

85.4

- 2 It doesn't look new.
- 3 You don't sound American.
- 4 I don't feel cold.
- 5 They don't look heavy.
- 6 Maybe, but it doesn't taste good.

UNIT 86

86.1

- 2 badly
- 3 quietly
- 4 angrily
- 5 fast
- 6 dangerously

86.2

- 2 work hard
- 3 sleep well
- 4 win easily
- 5 Think carefully
- 6 know her very well
- 7 explain things very clearly/well
- 8 Come quickly

86.3

- 2 angry
- 3 slowly
- 4 slow
- 5 careful
- 6 hard
- 7 suddenly
- 8 quiet
- 9 badly
- 10 nice (*See Unit 85C.*)
- 11 quickly

86.4

- 2 well
- 3 good
- 4 well
- 5 well
- 6 good ... good

UNIT 87

87.1

- 2 bigger
- 3 slower
- 4 more expensive
- 5 higher
- 6 more dangerous

87.2

- 2 stronger
- 3 happier
- 4 more modern
- 5 more important
- 6 better
- 7 larger
- 8 more serious
- 9 prettier
- 10 more crowded

87.3

- 2 hotter/warmer
- 3 more expensive

- 4 worse
- 5 further
- 6 more difficult *or* harder

87.4

- 3 taller
- 4 harder
- 5 more comfortable
- 6 better
- 7 nicer
- 8 heavier
- 9 more interested
- 10 warmer
- 11 better
- 12 bigger
- 13 more beautiful
- 14 sharper
- 15 more polite
- 16 worse

UNIT 88**88.1**

- 3 Kate is taller than Ben.
- 4 Kate starts work earlier than Ben.
- 5 Ben works harder than Kate.
- 6 Ben has more money than Kate. / Ben has got more money ...
- 7 Kate is a better driver than Ben.
- 8 Ben is more patient than Kate.
- 9 Ben is a better dancer than Kate. / Ben dances better than Kate.
- 10 Kate is more intelligent than Ben.
- 11 Kate speaks French better than Ben. / Kate speaks better French than Ben. / Kate's French is better than Ben's.
- 12 Ben goes to the cinema more than Kate. / ... more often than Kate.

88.2

- 2 You're older than her. / ... than she is.
- 3 You work harder than me. / ... than I do.
- 4 You watch TV more than him. / ... than he does.
- 5 You're a better cook than me. / ... than I am. *or* You cook better than me. / ... than I do.
- 6 You know more people than us. / ... than we do.

- 7 You have more money than them. / ... than they have.
- 8 You can run faster than me. / ... than I can.
- 9 You've been here longer than her. / ... than she has.
- 10 You got up earlier than them. / ... than they did.
- 11 You were more surprised than him. / ... than he was.

88.3

- 2 Jack's mother is much younger than his father.
- 3 My camera cost a bit more than yours. / ... than your camera. *or* My camera was a bit more expensive than ...
- 4 I feel much better today than yesterday. / ... than I did yesterday. / ... than I felt yesterday.
- 5 It's a bit warmer today than yesterday. / ... than it was yesterday.
- 6 Sarah is a much better tennis player than me. / ... than I am. *or* Sarah is much better at tennis than me. / ... than I am. *or* Sarah plays tennis much better than me. / ... than I do.

UNIT 89**89.1**

- 2 A is longer than B, but not as long as C.
- 3 C is heavier than A, but not as heavy as B.
- 4 A is older than C, but not as old as B.
- 5 B has got more money than C, but not as much as A. *or* ... but less (money) than A.
- 6 C works harder than A, but not as hard as B.

89.2

- 2 Your room isn't as big as mine. / ... as my room.
- 3 I didn't get up as early as you. / ... as you did.
- 4 They didn't play as well as us. / ... as we did.
- 5 You haven't been here as long as me. / ... as I have.
- 6 He isn't as nervous as her. / ... as she is.

89.3

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 2 as | 6 than |
| 3 than | 7 as |
| 4 than | 8 than |
| 5 as | |

89.4

- 2 Julia lives in the same street as Laura.
- 3 Julia got up at the same time as Andy.
- 4 Andy's car is the same colour as Laura's.

UNIT 90**90.1**

- 2 C is longer than A.
D is the longest.
B is the shortest.
- 3 D is younger than C.
B is the youngest.
C is the oldest.
- 4 D is more expensive than A.
C is the most expensive.
A is the cheapest.
- 5 A is better than C.
A is the best.
D is the worst.

90.2

- 2 the happiest day
- 3 the best film
- 4 the most popular singer
- 5 the worst mistake
- 6 the prettiest village
- 7 the coldest day
- 8 the most boring person

90.3

- 2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- 3-6
Brazil is the largest country in South America.
Alaska is the largest state in the USA.
The Nile is the longest river in Africa. / ... in the world.
Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

UNIT 91**91.1**

- 2 enough chairs
- 3 enough paint
- 4 enough wind

Key to Exercises

91.2

- 2 The car isn't big enough.
- 3 His legs aren't long enough.
- 4 He isn't strong enough.

91.3

- 3 old enough
- 4 enough time
- 5 big enough
- 6 eat enough
- 7 enough space
- 8 tired enough
- 9 practise enough

91.4

- 2 sharp enough to cut
- 3 warm enough to go
- 4 enough bread to make
- 5 well enough to win
- 6 enough time to read

UNIT 92

92.1

- 2 too heavy
- 3 too low
- 4 too fast
- 5 too big
- 6 too crowded

92.2

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 3 enough | 8 enough |
| 4 too many | 9 too |
| 5 too | 10 too many |
| 6 enough | 11 too much |
| 7 too much | |

92.3

- 3 It's too far.
- 4 It's too expensive.
- 5 It isn't/It's not big enough.
- 6 It was too difficult.
- 7 It isn't good enough.
- 8 I'm too busy.
- 9 It was too long.

92.4

- 2 too early to go to bed
- 3 too young to get married
- 4 too dangerous to go out at night
- 5 too late to phone Sue (now)
- 6 too surprised to say anything

UNIT 93

93.1

- 3 I like this picture very much.
- 4 Tom started his new job last week.

5 OK

- 6 Jessica bought a present for her friend. *or* Jessica bought her friend a present.
- 7 I drink three cups of coffee every day.
- 8 OK
- 9 I borrowed fifty pounds from my brother.

93.2

- 2 I got a new phone last week.
- 3 Paul finished his work quickly.
- 4 Emily doesn't speak French very well.
- 5 I did a lot of shopping yesterday.
- 6 Do you know London well?
- 7 We enjoyed the party very much.
- 8 I explained the problem carefully.
- 9 We met some friends at the airport.
- 10 Did you buy that jacket in England?
- 11 We do the same thing every day.
- 12 I don't like football very much.

93.3

- 2 I arrived at the hotel early.
- 3 Julia goes to Italy every year.
- 4 We have lived here since 1998.
- 5 Sue was born in London in 1990.
- 6 Paul didn't go to work yesterday.
- 7 Helen went to a wedding last weekend.
- 8 I had my breakfast in bed this morning.
- 9 Amy is going to university in September.
- 10 I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.
- 11 My parents have been to the United States many times.
- 12 I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night.
- 13 Are you going to the cinema tomorrow evening?
- 14 I took the children to school this morning.

UNIT 94

94.1

- 2 He always gets up early.
- 3 He's/He is never late for work.
- 4 He sometimes gets angry.
- 5 He rarely goes swimming.
- 6 He's/He is usually at home in the evenings.

94.2

- 2 Susan is always polite.
- 3 I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.
- 4 Sarah has just started a new job.
- 5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
- 6 The bus isn't usually late.
- 7 I don't often eat fish.
- 8 I will never forget what you said.
- 9 Have you ever lost your passport?
- 10 Do you still work in the same place?
- 11 They always stay in the same hotel.
- 12 Jane doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
- 13 Is Tina already here?
- 14 What do you usually have for breakfast?
- 15 I can never remember his name.

94.3

- 2 Yes, and I also speak French.
- 3 Yes, and I'm also hungry.
- 4 Yes, and I've also been to Ireland.
- 5 Yes, and I also bought some books.

94.4

- 1 They both play football. They're/They are both students. They've both got cars. / They both have cars.
- 2 They're/They are all married. They were all born in England. They all live in New York.

UNIT 95

95.1

- 2 Do you still live in Clare Street?
- 3 Are you still a student?
- 4 Have you still got a motorbike? / Do you still have a motorbike?
- 5 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
- 6 Do you still want to be a teacher?

95.2

- 2 He was looking for a job. He's/He is still looking (for a job). He hasn't found a job yet.
- 3 She was asleep. She's/She is still asleep. She hasn't woken up yet. / She isn't awake yet. or She hasn't got up yet. / She isn't up yet.
- 4 They were having dinner. / They were eating. They're/They are still having dinner. / ... still eating. They haven't finished (dinner) yet. / They haven't finished eating yet.

95.3

- 2 Is Helen here yet? or Has Helen arrived/come yet?
- 3 Have you got your (exam) results yet? / Have you had your ... / Have you received your ...
- 4 Have you decided where to go yet? / Do you know where you're going yet?

95.4

- 3 She's/She has already gone/ left.
- 4 I've already got one. / I already have one.
- 5 I've/I have already paid (it).
- 6 he already knows.

UNIT 96

96.1

- 2 He gave it to Gary.
- 3 He gave them to Sarah.
- 4 He gave it to his sister.

- 5 He gave them to Robert.
- 6 He gave it to a neighbour.

96.2

- 2 I gave Joanna a plant.
- 3 I gave Richard a tie.
- 4 I gave Emma some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
- 5 I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers.
- 6 I gave Kevin a wallet.

96.3

- 2 Can you lend me an umbrella?
- 3 Can you give me your address?
- 4 Can you lend me twenty pounds?
- 5 Can you send me more information?
- 6 Can you show me the letter?

96.4

- 2 lend you some money
- 3 send the bill to me
- 4 buy you a present
- 5 pass me the sugar
- 6 give it to her
- 7 showed the policeman my identity card

UNIT 97

97.1

- 3 I went to the window and (I) looked out.
- 4 I wanted to phone you, but I didn't have your number.
- 5 I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.
- 6 I usually drive to work, but I went by bus this morning.
- 7 Do you want me to come with you, or shall I wait here?

97.2

Example answers:

- 2 because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.
- 3 but it was closed.
- 4 so he didn't eat anything. / so he didn't want anything to eat.
- 5 because there was a lot of traffic. / because the traffic was bad.
- 6 Sue said goodbye, got into her car and drove off/away.

97.3

Example answers:

- 3 I went to the cinema, **but** the film wasn't very good.
- 4 I went to a café **and** met some friends of mine.
- 5 There was a film on television, **so** I watched it.
- 6 I got up in the middle of the night **because** I couldn't sleep.

UNIT 98

98.1

- 2 When I'm tired, I like to watch TV.
- 3 When I knocked on the door, there was no answer.
- 4 When I go on holiday, I always go to the same place.
- 5 When the programme ended, I turned off the TV.
- 6 When I got to the hotel, there were no rooms.

98.2

- 2 when they heard the news
- 3 they went to live in New Zealand
- 4 while they were away
- 5 before they came here
- 6 somebody broke into the house
- 7 they didn't believe me

98.3

- 2 I finish
- 3 it's
- 4 I'll be ... she leaves
- 5 stops
- 6 We'll come ... we're
- 7 I'll bring
- 8 I'm
- 9 it gets
- 10 I'll tell ... I'm

98.4

Example answers:

- 2 you finish your work
- 3 I'm going to buy a motorbike
- 4 you get ready
- 5 I won't have much free time
- 6 I come back

UNIT 99

99.1

- 2 If you pass the exam, you'll get a certificate.
- 3 If you fail the exam, you can do it again.
- 4 If you don't want this magazine, I'll throw it away.
- 5 If you want those pictures, you can have them.
- 6 If you're busy now, we can talk later.
- 7 If you're hungry, we can have lunch now.
- 8 If you need money, I can lend you some.

99.2

- 2 I give
- 3 is
- 4 I'll call
- 5 I'll be ... get
- 6 Will you go ... they invite

99.3

Example answers:

- 3 ... you're busy.
- 4 ... you'll feel better in the morning.
- 5 ... you're not watching it.
- 6 ... she doesn't study.
- 7 ... I'll go and see Chris.
- 8 ... the weather is good.
- 9 ... it rains today.

99.4

- 2 When
- 3 If
- 4 If
- 5 if
- 6 When
- 7 if
- 8 when ... if

UNIT 100

100.1

- 3 wanted
- 4 had
- 5 were/was
- 6 didn't enjoy
- 7 could
- 8 tried
- 9 didn't have

100.2

- 3 I'd go / I would go
- 4 she knew
- 5 we had

- 6 you won
- 7 I wouldn't stay
- 8 we lived
- 9 It would be
- 10 the salary was/were
- 11 I wouldn't know
- 12 would you change

100.3

- 2 I'd watch it / I would watch it
- 3 we had some pictures on the wall
- 4 the air would be cleaner
- 5 every day was/were the same
- 6 I'd be bored / I would be bored
- 7 we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
- 8 we would/could buy a bigger house or we would/could have a bigger house

100.4

Example answers:

- 2 I'd go to Antarctica
- 3 I didn't have any friends
- 4 I'd buy a house if I had enough money.
- 5 I'd try and help
- 6 there were no guns

UNIT 101

101.1

- 2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
- 3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
- 4 A patient is a person who is ill in hospital.
- 5 A dentist is a person who takes care of your teeth.
- 6 A fool is a person who does stupid things.
- 7 A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
- 8 A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

101.2

- 2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
- 3 Most of the students who took the exam passed (it).
- 4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn't very friendly.

101.3

- 2 who
 - 3 which
 - 4 which
 - 5 who
 - 6 which
 - 7 who
 - 8 who
 - 9 which
- that** is also correct in all these sentences.

101.4

- 3 ... a machine **that/which** makes coffee.
- 4 OK (**which** is also correct)
- 5 ... people **who/that** never stop talking.
- 6 OK (**who** is also correct)
- 7 OK (**that** is also correct)
- 8 ... the sentences **that/which** are wrong.
- 9 ... a car **that/which** cost £40,000.

UNIT 102

102.1

- 2 I've lost the pen you gave me.
- 3 I like the jacket Sue is wearing.
- 4 Where are the flowers I gave you?
- 5 I didn't believe the story he told us.
- 6 How much were the oranges you bought?

102.2

- 2 The meal you cooked was excellent.
- 3 The shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.
- 4 The people we invited to dinner didn't come.

102.3

- 2 Who are the people you were talking to?
- 3 Did you find the keys you were looking for?
- 4 Where is the party you're going to?
- 5 What's the name of the film you were talking about?
- 6 What's that music you're listening to?
- 7 Did you get the job you applied for?

102.4

- 2 What's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?
- 3 How big is the village where you live?
- 4 Where exactly is the factory where you work?

UNIT 103**103.1**

- | | |
|-------|--------|
| 3 at | 11 at |
| 4 on | 12 in |
| 5 in | 13 on |
| 6 in | 14 on |
| 7 on | 15 at |
| 8 on | 16 at |
| 9 at | 17 at* |
| 10 on | 18 in |

* American speakers say 'on the weekend'.

103.2

- | | |
|-------|--------|
| 2 on | 11 at* |
| 3 at | 12 on |
| 4 in | 13 in |
| 5 in | 14 at |
| 6 in | 15 in |
| 7 on | 16 on |
| 8 on | 17 in |
| 9 in | 18 at |
| 10 at | 19 at |

* American speakers say 'on the weekend'.

103.3

- 2 on Friday
- 3 on Monday
- 4 at 4 o'clock on Thursday (afternoon) / on Thursday (afternoon) at 4 o'clock
- 5 on Saturday evening
- 6 at 2.30 on Tuesday (afternoon) / on Tuesday (afternoon) at 2.30

103.4

- 2 I'll call you in three days.
- 3 My exam is in two weeks.
- 4 Tom will be here in half an hour. / ... in 30 minutes.

103.5

- 3 in
- 4 – (already complete)
- 5 – (already complete)
- 6 in
- 7 at*
- 8 – (already complete)

- 9 – (already complete)

- 10 on

- 11 in

- 12 at

* American speakers say 'on the weekend'.

UNIT 104**104.1**

- 2 Alex lived in Canada **until** 2009.
- 3 Alex has lived in England **since** 2009.
- 4 Karen lived in France **until** 2011.
- 5 Karen has lived in Switzerland **since** 2011.
- 6 Clare worked in a restaurant **from** 2010 **to** 2012.
- 7 Clare has worked in a hotel **since** 2012.
- 8 Adam was a teacher **from** 2002 **to** 2008.
- 9 Adam has been a journalist **since** 2008.
- 11 Alex has lived in England for ... years.
- 12 Karen has lived in Switzerland for ... years.
- 13 Clare worked in a restaurant for two years.
- 14 Clare has worked in a hotel for ... years.
- 15 Adam was a teacher for six years.
- 16 Adam has been a journalist for ... years.

104.2

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 2 until | 9 since |
| 3 for | 10 until |
| 4 since | 11 for |
| 5 Until | 12 until |
| 6 for | 13 Since |
| 7 for | 14 for |
| 8 until | |

UNIT 105**105.1**

- 2 after lunch
- 3 before the end
- 4 during the course
- 5 before they went to Australia
- 6 during the night
- 7 while you're waiting
- 8 after the concert

105.2

- 3 while
- 4 for
- 5 while
- 6 during
- 7 while
- 8 for
- 9 during
- 10 while

105.3

- 2 eating
- 3 answering
- 4 having/taking
- 5 finishing/doing
- 6 going/travelling

105.4

- 2 John worked in a bookshop for two years after leaving school.
- 3 Before going to sleep, I read for a few minutes.
- 4 After walking for three hours, we were very tired.
- 5 Let's have a cup of coffee before going out.

UNIT 106**106.1**

- 2 **In** the box.
- 3 **On** the box.
- 4 **On** the wall.
- 5 **At** the bus stop.
- 6 **In** the field.
- 7 **On** the balcony.
- 8 **In** the pool.
- 9 **At** the window.
- 10 **On** the ceiling.
- 11 **On** the table.
- 12 **At** the table.

106.2

- 2 in
- 3 on
- 4 in
- 5 on
- 6 at
- 7 in
- 8 in
- 9 at
- 10 at
- 11 in
- 12 at
- 13 on
- 14 at
- 15 **on** the wall **in** the living room

Key to Exercises

UNIT 107

107.1

- 2 **At** the airport.
- 3 **In** bed.
- 4 **On** a ship.
- 5 **In** the sky.
- 6 **At** a party.
- 7 **At** the doctor's.
- 8 **On** the second floor.
- 9 **At** work.
- 10 **On** a plane.
- 11 **In** a taxi.
- 12 **At** a wedding.

107.2

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 2 in | 9 in |
| 3 in | 10 in |
| 4 at | 11 on |
| 5 at | 12 on |
| 6 in | 13 at |
| 7 at | 14 in |
| 8 at | 15 on |

UNIT 108

108.1

- | | |
|------|------|
| 2 to | 6 to |
| 3 in | 7 to |
| 4 to | 8 in |
| 5 in | |

108.2

- 3 to
- 4 to
- 5 **at** home ... **to** work
- 6 at
- 7 – (*already complete*)
- 8 to
- 9 at
- 10 **at** a restaurant ... **to** the hotel

108.3

- 2 to
- 3 to
- 4 in
- 5 to
- 6 to
- 7 at
- 8 to
- 9 to
- 10 at
- 11 at
- 12 **to** Maria's house ... **at** home
- 13 – (*already complete*)
- 14 meet **at** the party... go **to** the party

108.4

- 1 to
- 2 – (*already complete*)
- 3 at
- 4 in
- 5 to
- 6 – (*already complete*)

108.5

Example answers:

- 2 to work
- 3 at work
- 4 to Canada
- 5 to parties
- 6 at a friend's house

UNIT 109

109.1

- 2 next to / beside / by
- 3 in front of
- 4 between
- 5 next to / beside / by
- 6 in front of
- 7 behind
- 8 on the left
- 9 in the middle

109.2

- 2 behind
- 3 above
- 4 in front of
- 5 on
- 6 by / next to / beside
- 7 below / under
- 8 above
- 9 under
- 10 by / next to / beside
- 11 opposite
- 12 on

109.3

- 2 The fountain is in front of the theatre.
- 3 The bank/bookshop is opposite the theatre. *or* Paul's office is opposite the theatre. *or* The theatre is opposite ...
- 4 The bank/bookshop/supermarket is next to ...
- 5 Paul's office is above the bookshop.
- 6 The bookshop is between the bank and the supermarket.

UNIT 110

110.1

- 2 Go under the bridge.
- 3 Go up the hill.
- 4 Go down the steps.
- 5 Go along this street.
- 6 Go into the hotel.
- 7 Go past the hotel.
- 8 Go out of the hotel.
- 9 Go over the bridge.
- 10 Go through the park.

110.2

- 2 off
- 3 over
- 4 out of
- 5 across
- 6 round/around
- 7 through
- 8 on
- 9 round/around
- 10 **into** the house **through** a window

110.3

- 1 out of
- 2 round/around
- 3 in
- 4 **from** here **to** the airport
- 5 round/around
- 6 on/over
- 7 over
- 8 out of / from

UNIT 111

111.1

- 2 on time
- 3 on holiday
- 4 on the phone
- 5 on TV

111.2

- 2 by
- 3 with
- 4 about
- 5 on
- 6 by
- 7 at
- 8 on
- 9 with
- 10 **about** grammar **by** Vera P. Bull

111.3

- | | |
|-----------|--------|
| 1 with | 6 by |
| 2 without | 7 on |
| 3 by | 8 with |
| 4 about | 9 at |
| 5 at | 10 by |

- 11 about 14 with
12 by 15 by
13 on 16 by

UNIT 112**112.1**

- 2 in 5 with
3 to 6 of
4 at

112.2

- 2 at
3 to
4 about
5 of
6 of
7 from/to (*You can also say different than ...*)
8 in
9 for
10 about
11 of
12 **for/about** getting angry **with** you

112.3

- 2 interested in going
3 good at getting
4 fed up with waiting
5 sorry for/about waking
6 Thank you for waiting.

112.4

- 2 Sue walked past me without speaking.
3 Don't do anything without asking me first.
4 I went out without locking the door.

112.5

Example answers:

- 2 I'm scared of the dark.
3 I'm not very good at drawing.
4 I'm not interested in cars.
5 I'm fed up with living here.

UNIT 113**113.1**

- 2 to 5 at
3 for 6 for
4 to

113.2

- 2 to
3 to
4 – (*already complete*)
5 for
6 to

- 7 of/about
8 for
9 on
10 to
11 for
12 – (*already complete*)
13 to
14 on
15 of/about

113.3

- 1 at 4 after
2 after 5 at
3 for 6 for

113.4

Example answers:

- 3 It depends on the programme.
4 It depends (on) what it is.
5 It depends on the weather.
6 It depends (on) how much you want.

UNIT 114**114.1**

- 2 went in
3 looked up
4 rode off/away
5 turned round/around
6 got off
7 sat down
8 got out

114.2

- 2 away
3 round/around
4 going **out** ... be **back**
5 down
6 over
7 back
8 in
9 up
10 going **away** ... coming **back**

114.3

- 2 Hold on
3 slowed down
4 takes off
5 getting on
6 speak up
7 broken down
8 fall over / fall down
9 carry on
10 gave up
11 went off

UNIT 115**115.1**

- 2 She took off her hat. *or* She took her hat off.
3 He put down his bag. *or* He put his bag down.
4 She picked up the magazine. *or* She picked the magazine up.
5 He put on his sunglasses. *or* He put his sunglasses on.
6 She turned off the tap. *or* She turned the tap off.

115.2

- 2 He put his jacket on.
He put it on.
3 She took off her glasses.
She took them off.
4 I picked the phone up.
I picked it up.
5 They gave the key back.
They gave it back.
6 We turned off the lights.
We turned them off.

115.3

- 2 take it back
3 picked them up
4 switched it off
5 bring them back

115.4

- 3 knocked over
4 look it up
5 throw them away
6 tried on
7 showed me round
8 gave it up *or* gave up (*without it*)
9 fill it in
10 put your cigarette out

Key to Additional exercises

1

- 3 Kate is a doctor.
- 4 The children are asleep.
- 5 Gary isn't hungry.
- 6 The books aren't on the table.
- 7 The hotel is near the station.
- 8 The bus isn't full.

2

- 3 she's / she is
- 4 Where are
- 5 Is he
- 6 It's / It is
- 7 I'm / I am or No, I'm not.
I'm a student.
- 8 What colour is
- 9 Is it
- 10 Are you
- 11 How much are they?

3

- 3 He's/He is having a shower.
- 4 Are the children playing?
- 5 Is it raining?
- 6 They're/They are coming now.
- 7 Why are you standing here?
I'm/I am waiting for somebody.

4

- 4 Sam doesn't want
- 5 Do you want
- 6 Does Helen live
- 7 Sarah knows
- 8 I don't travel
- 9 do you usually get up
- 10 They don't go out
- 11 Tom always finishes
- 12 does Jessica do ... She works

5

- 3 She's/She is a student.
- 4 She hasn't got a car. or She doesn't have a car.
- 5 She goes out a lot.
- 6 She's got/She has got a lot of friends. or She has a lot of friends.
- 7 She doesn't like London.
- 8 She likes dancing.
- 9 She isn't/She's not interested in sport.

6

- 1 Are you married?
Where do you live?
Have you got any children?
or Do you have any children?
How old is she?
- 2 How old are you?
What do you do? / Where do you work? / What's your job?
Do you like/enjoy your job?
Have you got a car? or Do you have a car?
Do you (usually) go to work by car?
- 3 What's his name? / What's he called?
What does he do? / What's his job?
Does he live/work in London?

7

- 4 Sonia is 32 years old.
- 5 I've got two sisters. or I have two sisters.
- 6 We often watch TV in the evening.
- 7 Amy never wears a hat.
- 8 A bicycle has got two wheels.
or ... has two wheels.
- 9 These flowers are beautiful.
- 10 Emma speaks German very well.

8

- 3 are you cooking
- 4 plays
- 5 I'm going
- 6 It's raining
- 7 I don't watch
- 8 we're looking
- 9 do you pronounce

9

- 2 we go
- 3 is shining
- 4 are you going
- 5 do you go
- 6 She writes
- 7 I never read
- 8 They're watching
- 9 She's talking
- 10 do you usually have
- 11 He's visiting
- 12 I don't drink

10

- 2 went
- 3 found
- 4 was
- 5 had
- 6 told
- 7 gave
- 8 were
- 9 thought
- 10 invited/asked

11

- 3 He was good at sport.
- 4 He played football.
- 5 He didn't work hard at school.
- 6 He had a lot of friends.
- 7 He didn't have a bike.
- 8 He wasn't a quiet child.

12

- 3 How long were you there? / How long did you stay there?
- 4 Did you like/enjoy Amsterdam?
- 5 Where did you stay?
- 6 Was the weather good?
- 7 When did you get/come back?

13

- 3 I forgot
- 4 did you get
- 5 I didn't speak
- 6 Did you have
- 7 he didn't go
- 8 she arrived
- 9 did Robert live
- 10 The meal didn't cost

14

- 2 were working
- 3 opened
- 4 rang ... was cooking
- 5 heard ... looked
- 6 was looking ... happened
- 7 wasn't reading ... was watching
- 8 didn't read
- 9 finished ... paid ... left
- 10 saw ... was walking ... was waiting

15

- 3 is playing
- 4 gave
- 5 doesn't like

- 6 did your parents go
- 7 saw ... was driving
- 8 Do you watch
- 9 were you doing
- 10 goes
- 11 'm/am trying
- 12 didn't sleep

16

- 3 it's/it has just finished/ended.
- 4 I've/I have found them. or I've got them.
- 5 I haven't read it.
- 6 Have you seen her?
- 7 I've/I have had enough.
- 8 Have you (ever) been to Sweden?
- 9 We've/We have (just) been to the cinema.
- 10 They've/They have gone to a party.
- 11 He's/He has (just) woken up.
- 12 How long have you lived here? or ... have you been living here?
- 13 we've/we have known each other for a long time.
- 14 It's/It has been raining all day. or It has rained all day. or It has been horrible/bad all day.

17

- 3 's/has been
- 4 for
- 5 since
- 6 has he lived / has he been / has he been living
- 7 for
- 8 've/have been

18

Example answers:

- 3 I've just started this exercise.
- 4 I've met Sarah a few times.
- 5 I haven't had lunch yet.
- 6 I've never been to Australia.
- 7 I've lived here since I was born.
- 8 I've lived here for three years.

19

- 3 bought/got
- 4 went
- 5 've/have read or read or 've/have finished with
- 6 haven't started (it) or haven't begun (it)

- 7 was
- 8 didn't see
- 9 left
- 10 's/has been
- 11 was
- 12 've/have never made

20

- 3 He's/He has already gone.
- 4 she left at 4 o'clock.
- 5 How many times have you been there?
- 6 I haven't decided yet.
- 7 It was on the table last night.
- 8 I've eaten there a few times.
- 9 What time did they arrive?

21

- 1 When was the last time? or When did you go the last time?
- 2 How long have you had it? I bought/got it yesterday.
- 3 How long have you lived there / have you been there / have you been living there? Before that we lived in Mill Road. How long did you live in Mill Road?
- 4 How long have you worked there / have you been working there? What did you do before that? I was a taxi driver. or I worked as a taxi driver.

22

Example answers:

- 2 I didn't go out last night.
- 3 I was at work yesterday afternoon.
- 4 I went to a party a few days ago.
- 5 It was my birthday last week.
- 6 I went to America last year.

23

- | | |
|-----|------|
| 2 B | 9 C |
| 3 D | 10 D |
| 4 A | 11 A |
| 5 A | 12 C |
| 6 D | 13 B |
| 7 C | 14 C |
| 8 B | 15 A |

24

- 1 was damaged ... be knocked down
- 2 was built ... is used ... is being painted
- 3 is called ... be called ... was changed
- 4 have been made ... are produced

25

- 2 is visited
- 3 were damaged
- 4 be built
- 5 is being cleaned
- 6 be forgotten
- 7 has already been done
- 8 be kept
- 9 Have you ever been bitten
- 10 was stolen

26

- 2 My car was stolen last week.
- 3 All the bananas have been eaten.
- 4 The machine will be repaired.
- 5 We're/We are being watched.
- 6 The housework has to be done.

27

- 3 pushed
- 4 was pushed
- 5 has taken
- 6 is being repaired
- 7 invented
- 8 was the camera invented
- 9 have been washed or were washed
- 10 I've/I have washed them. or I washed them.
- 11 did they send or have they sent
- 12 be sent

28

- | | |
|-----|------|
| 2 B | 8 B |
| 3 A | 9 B |
| 4 C | 10 A |
| 5 B | 11 B |
| 6 C | 12 C |
| 7 C | |

Key to Exercises

29

- 1 I stayed
did you do
I watched
Are you going
I'm going
are you going to see
I don't know. I haven't
decided
- 2 have you been
We arrived
are you staying / are you
going to stay
do you like
we're having
- 3 I'm going ... Do you want
are you going
Have you ever eaten
I've been ... I went
- 4 I've lost ... Have you seen
You were wearing ... I came
I'm not wearing
Have you looked / Did
you look
I'll go

30

- 1 we met
- 2 we sat / we were sitting
- 3 We didn't know
- 4 we became
- 5 we liked
- 6 we spent
- 7 We left
- 8 we meet
- 9 has been
- 10 she's working
- 11 She's coming
- 12 she comes
- 13 we'll have / we're going to
have
- 14 It will be

31

- 2 we're staying
- 3 we enjoyed
- 4 We watched
- 5 slept
- 6 I don't sleep
- 7 we're not doing / we're not
going to do *or* we aren't
doing / we aren't going to do
- 8 we're going
- 9 to see
- 10 We haven't decided
- 11 wants
- 12 to go

- 13 I'll send
- 14 you're having
- 15 are working / have been
working
- 16 he had
- 17 he needs
- 18 We've been
- 19 We got
- 20 seeing
- 21 I liked
- 22 we went
- 23 we left
- 24 had
- 25 he wasn't injured
- 26 was damaged
- 27 We've changed / We changed
- 28 we're leaving
- 29 We're staying / We're going
to stay / We'll stay
- 30 flying
- 31 That will be / That's going to
be
- 32 finished
- 33 I'll let
- 34 we get
- 35 are looking
- 36 We're going
- 37 we'll send

32

- | | |
|------|------|
| 2 A | 11 B |
| 3 B | 12 A |
| 4 C | 13 C |
| 5 B | 14 B |
| 6 C | 15 C |
| 7 B | 16 A |
| 8 A | 17 C |
| 9 C | 18 B |
| 10 A | |

33

- 2 a car
- 3 the fridge
- 4 a teacher
- 5 school
- 6 the cinema
- 7 a taxi
- 8 the piano
- 9 cars
- 10 the same

34

- 4 a horse
- 5 The sky
- 6 a tourist
- 7 for lunch (-)
- 8 the first President of the
United States

- 9 a headache
- 10 remember names (-)
- 11 the next train
- 12 send emails (-)
- 13 the garden
- 14 the Majestic Hotel
- 15 ill last week (-) ... to work (-)
- 16 the highest mountain in the
world
- 17 to the radio ... having
breakfast (-)
- 18 like sport (-) ... is basketball
(-)
- 19 a doctor ... an art teacher
- 20 the second floor ... the top
of the stairs ... on the right
- 21 After dinner (-) ...
watched TV (-)
- 22 a wonderful holiday in the
south of France (-)

35

- | | |
|---------|---------------|
| 2 in | 12 at |
| 3 on | 13 at |
| 4 at | 14 in |
| 5 on | 15 at |
| 6 in | 16 on |
| 7 since | 17 by |
| 8 on | 18 for ... on |
| 9 by | 19 to ... in |
| 10 in | 20 at ... in |
| 11 for | |

Key to Study guide

Present

- 1.1 B
- 1.2 A
- 1.3 C
- 1.4 A
- 1.5 C, D
- 1.6 B
- 1.7 D
- 1.8 C
- 1.9 C
- 1.10 A
- 1.11 C
- 1.12 A
- 1.13 D
- 1.14 C
- 1.15 A
- 1.16 D
- 1.17 C, D
- 1.18 A, D

Past

- 2.1 B
- 2.2 E
- 2.3 D
- 2.4 B
- 2.5 A
- 2.6 D
- 2.7 A
- 2.8 C
- 2.9 C

Present perfect

- 3.1 B, E
- 3.2 D
- 3.3 B
- 3.4 D
- 3.5 E
- 3.6 B
- 3.7 A
- 3.8 C
- 3.9 D
- 3.10 E

Passive

- 4.1 D
- 4.2 C
- 4.3 E
- 4.4 A
- 4.5 A

Verb forms

- 5.1 D
- 5.2 B

Future

- 6.1 A
- 6.2 A
- 6.3 C
- 6.4 A, B
- 6.5 B
- 6.6 C
- 6.7 D
- 6.8 C
- 6.9 B

Modals, imperative etc.

- 7.1 C, D
- 7.2 A, C
- 7.3 A
- 7.4 D
- 7.5 B
- 7.6 E
- 7.7 B, D
- 7.8 D
- 7.9 C
- 7.10 C
- 7.11 A
- 7.12 E

There and it

- 8.1 B
- 8.2 E
- 8.3 A
- 8.4 A
- 8.5 B

Auxiliary verbs

- 9.1 C
- 9.2 A
- 9.3 C
- 9.4 B
- 9.5 B
- 9.6 C
- 9.7 D

Questions

- 10.1 D
- 10.2 D
- 10.3 A
- 10.4 A
- 10.5 B
- 10.6 D
- 10.7 B
- 10.8 A
- 10.9 C, E
- 10.10 C
- 10.11 A
- 10.12 A, C

Reported speech

- 11.1 E
- 11.2 A, B, D

-ing and to ...

- 12.1 B
- 12.2 D
- 12.3 B
- 12.4 C
- 12.5 B, C
- 12.6 C
- 12.7 A
- 12.8 D

Go, get, do, make and have

- 13.1 A, D
- 13.2 C
- 13.3 C, D
- 13.4 A, D
- 13.5 B
- 13.6 D

Pronouns and possessives

- 14.1 A
- 14.2 C
- 14.3 D
- 14.4 B
- 14.5 B, C
- 14.6 A
- 14.7 E
- 14.8 A
- 14.9 D
- 14.10 C

A and the

- 15.1 C
- 15.2 B
- 15.3 A, C
- 15.4 B
- 15.5 B
- 15.6 A
- 15.7 D
- 15.8 C
- 15.9 B
- 15.10 B
- 15.11 E
- 15.12 D
- 15.13 B
- 15.14 A

Determiners and pronouns

- 16.1 C
- 16.2 C
- 16.3 B
- 16.4 B
- 16.5 C
- 16.6 A, C
- 16.7 D
- 16.8 B, D
- 16.9 A
- 16.10 B
- 16.11 E
- 16.12 B, D
- 16.13 A
- 16.14 A, B
- 16.15 D
- 16.16 A, C
- 16.17 D
- 16.18 B
- 16.19 A

Adjectives and adverbs

- 17.1 A
- 17.2 C
- 17.3 C
- 17.4 D
- 17.5 B
- 17.6 B
- 17.7 A, C
- 17.8 E
- 17.9 A
- 17.10 B
- 17.11 D
- 17.12 A
- 17.13 D
- 17.14 C

Word order

- 18.1 B
- 18.2 C
- 18.3 B
- 18.4 A
- 18.5 A, D

Conjunctions and clauses

- 19.1 C
- 19.2 A
- 19.3 D
- 19.4 E
- 19.5 B, C
- 19.6 A, B
- 19.7 B, D
- 19.8 A

Prepositions

- 20.1 D
- 20.2 E
- 20.3 C, D
- 20.4 B
- 20.5 A, D
- 20.6 A
- 20.7 B
- 20.8 C
- 20.9 B
- 20.10 D
- 20.11 D
- 20.12 A
- 20.13 C
- 20.14 D
- 20.15 A
- 20.16 E
- 20.17 C
- 20.18 B
- 20.19 D
- 20.20 D

Phrasal verbs

- 21.1 C
- 21.2 A, B
- 21.3 B

Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

a/an 65

a and *some* 67–68

a/an and *the* 69

about 111E

above 109E

active and **passive** Appendix 1

across 110

adjectives 85

adjectives and adverbs (*quick/quickly*) 86

comparatives (*older / more expensive*) 87–89

superlatives (*the oldest / the most expensive*) 90

get + adjective (*get tired* etc.) 56B

possessive adjectives (*my/your/her* etc.) 60, 62

something/anybody etc. + adjective 79C

adjectives + preposition (*afraid of* etc.) 112A

adverbs 86

word order (*always/usually/often* etc.) 94

advise (*advise somebody to ...*) 53B

afraid (**of**) 112A

after 98, 105

ago 19B

all

all and *every* etc. 80

all (*of*) 81

word order 94

along 110

already 95C

already + present perfect 16B

word order 94

also (word order) 94

always

always + present simple 5C

word order 94

am/is/are 1–2

am/is/are -ing (present continuous)

3–4, 23A, 25, 51C

there is / there are 37

an see **a**

and 97

angry (**with/about**) 112A

another 65B

any

any and *some* 76

not + *any* 77

any and *no* 77

any (*of*) 81

anybody/anyone/anything 76D, 78–79

anywhere 79

apostrophe (*I'm, it's* etc.)

Appendix 4

apostrophe 's (*my brother's car*) 64

are see **am/is/are**

around 110, 114–115, Appendix 7

arrive 108C

articles (*a/an/the*) 65–73

a/an 65, 67–68

a/an and *the* 69

the 70–73

as (*not as ... as*) 89

ask

ask somebody to ... 53B

ask somebody for ... 113A

at

at 8 o'clock / at night etc. 103

at the bus stop / at work etc.

106–107

at and *to* 108

at the age of ... 111B

auxiliary verbs 23, 40–42

away

run away / throw away etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7

back

come back / give back etc. (phrasal

verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7

be (infinitive of *am/is/are*)

am/is/are 1–2

am/is/are -ing (present

continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C

was/were 10

was/were -ing (past continuous)

13, 23A, 51C

have/has been (present perfect)

15–18

passive 21–22, Appendix 1

will be 27

because 97

been

have/has been (present perfect)

15–18

been and *gone* 17C

there has/have been 38B

before 98, 105

begin (*begin to ...* or *begin -ing*) 52C

behind 109A

belong (**to**) 113A

below 109E

beside 109A

best 90B

better 87D

between 109A

bit (*a bit older/bigger* etc.) 88D

born 21C

both 82

word order 94

but 97

by 111C

by after the passive (*I was bitten by a dog.*) 21D

by myself / by yourself etc. 63C

by (= *beside*) 109C

can/can't 30

comparative (*older / more expensive* etc.) 87–89

conditional (*if ...*)

if I do ... 99

if I did ... 100

conjunctions 97–100

and/but/or/so/because 97

when/before/while/after/until 98

if 99–100

continue (*continue to ...* or *continue -ing*) 52C

contractions (short forms – *I'm, it's, you've* etc.) Appendix 4

could/couldn't 30C–D

countable and **uncountable** nouns 67–68

depend (**on**) 113C

did

didn't in negatives 12, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A

did in questions 12, 23D, 40C, 44B, 51A

different (**from**) 112A

direct speech and **reported speech** 50

do and **make** 57

don't/doesn't in negatives 6, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A

do/does in questions 7, 23D, 40C, 44B, 51A

don't go / don't fall etc.

(imperative) 35B

down 110

sit down / put down etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7

during 105

each other 63D

either

either and too 42A

either (of) 82

embedded questions (*Do you know what ... ? etc.*) 49

end (*at the end of*) 103B, 106B

enjoy

enjoy -ing 52B

enjoy myself/yourself etc. 63A

enough 91

enough and too 92D

ever

Have you ever ... ? 17

superlative + ever 90E

word order 94

every 80

everybody/everyone/

everything/everywhere 80C

expect 52A, 53B

far

How far is it? 39A, 47D

far → further 87B

fast 86C

fed up (with) 112A

few / a few 84

finish (*finish -ing*) 52B

for

for ten minutes / for three years etc.
19, 104D

for and to ... 54B

go for a walk etc. 55C

for and during 105C

from 104A, 110

front (*in front of*) 109A–B

full (of) 112A

further 87B

future 25–28

I'm working tomorrow. (present
continuous) 25

The concert starts at 7.30. (present
simple) 25C

(I'm) going to (do something) 26
will 27–28

shall 27D, 28C

future after when/before/while etc.
98B

future after if 99B

geographical names with and
without *the* 73

gerund see **-ing**

get 56

get to (a place) 56C, 108C

get on / get up etc. (phrasal verbs)
114, Appendix 6

give

*give something to somebody / give
somebody something* 96

give up / give back etc. (phrasal
verbs) 115, Appendix 6–7

go 55

go -ing (go swimming etc.) 55D

*go home / go to work / go to the
cinema* 71

go in / go back etc. (phrasal verbs)
114

going to (*I'm going to do something*)
26

gone and been 17C

good

good and well 86D

good at 112A

got

past of get 11C, 56

have/has got 9, 58A

had

past of have 11C

had to 33B

He said he had (done something)
50, Appendix 1.1

happen (to) 113A

hard 86C

has see **have**

hate 52C–D

have 9, 58

have got / has got 9, 58A

have done / have been etc. (present
perfect) 15–18, 23C

have to 33

have a nice time / have fun etc.
35A

there has/have been 38B

have breakfast / have a shower etc.
58B

her 59–60, 62

hers 61–62

herself 63

him 59, 62

himself 63

his 60–62

holiday (*on holiday*) 55B, 111A

home 55A, 71A, 108B

get home 56C, 108C

how 47

How long have you ... ? (present
perfect) 18

how big? / how old? / how far? etc.
47D

How long does it take? 48

how much? / how many? 83A

I/you/he/she etc. (personal
pronouns) 59, 62

if 99–100

if we go / If you see etc. 99

if and when 99C

if I had / if we went 100

Do you know if ... ? 49C

imperative (*do this / don't do that
etc.*) 35

in

in April / in summer etc. 103

in a room / in hospital etc. 106–
107

in five minutes / in three years etc.
103E

in and to 108

put something in 110

go in / fill in etc. (phrasal verbs)
114–115, Appendix 7

infinitive (*do/see/play etc.*)

*infinitive (do/see etc.) and to +
infinitive (to do / to see etc.)* 51,
53

can/will/should etc. + infinitive
51A

*verbs + to + infinitive (I want to go
etc.)* 51B, 52–53

infinitive and -ing (do/doing etc.)
51–52

I went to the shop to buy ...
(infinitive for purpose) 54

infinitive and for ... 54B

*adjective + infinitive (it's easy to
...)* 39B

*something to eat / nowhere to go
etc.* 79D

-ing (*doing/playing/going etc.*)

am/is/are + -ing (present
continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
was/were + -ing (past continuous)
13, 23A, 51C

-ing and infinitive (do/doing etc.)
51–52

verbs + -ing (enjoy -ing etc.)
52B–C

go -ing (go swimming etc.) 55D
prepositions + -ing 105D, 112B

interested (in) 112A

into 110

irregular verbs 11C, 24B, Appendix
2–3

is see **am/is/are**

it 39, 59B

it is and there is 37B, 39A

it's and its 60C

its 60

just

just + present perfect 16A
word order 94

- kind** (*kind to somebody / kind of somebody*) 112A
- know** (*Do you know where ... ?*) 49
- learn** (*learn to ...*) 52A
- left** (*on the left*) 109A
- lend** (*lend something to somebody*) 96
- less** 88C
- let** 53D
- let's** (*let's go / let's dance etc.*) 35C, 53D
- like** (*What is it like?*) 46B
- like** (verb)
 would like 34, 52D, 53A
 do you like? and would you like? 34C
 like to ... or like -ing 52C
- listen (to)** 113A
- little / a little** 84
- look**
 look + adjective (look tired etc.) 85C
 look at/for/after 113B
- lot (a lot of ...)** 83
- love** 52C–D
- make** 57
 make somebody do something 53D
 make and do 57
- many**
 many and much 83
 not as many (as) 89B
 too many 92C
- married**
 married to 112A
 get married 56B
- may** 29D
- me/you/him etc.** (personal pronouns) 59, 62
- middle** (*in the middle of*) 107A, 109A
- might** 29
- mind** (*I don't mind -ing*) 52B
- mine/yours/hers etc.** (possessive pronouns) 61–62
- modal verbs** (*will/can/might etc.*) 27–34, 51A
- more** 87C, 88
- most**
 most (of) 81
 the most expensive / the most difficult etc. 90
- much**
 much and many 83
 much bigger / much more expensive 88D
 not as much (as) 89B
 too much 92C
- must** 31
- mustn't** 31C
 must and should 32E
 must and have to 33D
- my/your/his etc.** (possessive adjectives) 60, 62
- myself/yourself etc.** (reflexive pronouns) 63
- need**
 don't need to ... 31D
 need to ... 52A
- negatives** 43
 negative questions 44C
 no and none 77
 not + any 77–78
- neither**
 Neither am I / Neither do I etc. 42B
 neither (of) 82
- never**
 never + present simple 5C
 never + present perfect 17B
 word order 94
- next to** 109A
- nice** (*nice to somebody / nice of somebody*) 112A
- no** (*no money / no friends etc.*) 77A–B, 81B
- nobody/no-one/nothing** 78–79
 no-one and none 77C
- none** 77B–C, 81B–C
- nor** (*Nor am I / Nor do I etc.*) 42B
- nouns** (countable and uncountable) 67–68
- nowhere** 79
- of**
 the roof of the building etc. 64C
 the ... of ... 73E
- off** 110
 get off / turn off etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6
- offer** (*to do something*) 52A
- often**
 often + present simple 5C
 word order 94
- on**
 on Monday / on 25 April etc. 103
 on the table / on the wall 106–107
 on the left/right 109A
 on holiday / on television etc. 111A
 go on (holiday/ a trip etc.) 55B
 get on / put on etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
- one/ones** 75
- opposite** 109B
- or** 97A–B
- ought to** 32F
- our** 60, 62
- ours** 61–62
- ourselves** 63
- out**
 out of 110
 go out / put out etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
- over** 110
 climb over / knock over (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
- pair** (*a pair of ...*) 66B
- passive** 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
 present simple (*is done*) and past simple (*was done*) 21
 present continuous (*is being done*) and present perfect (*has been done*) 22
 will/can/must (etc.) be done Appendix 1.2
- past** (*Go past the cinema ...*) 110
- past continuous** (*was/were + -ing*) 13–14, 23A, 51C
 past continuous (*I was doing*) and past simple (*I did*) 14
 past continuous passive Appendix 1.1
- past participle** (*cleaned/done/seen etc.*) 24A
 present perfect (*I have cleaned*) 15, 23C
 passive (*the room was cleaned*) 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
 regular (*cleaned*) and irregular (*seen*) 24B, Appendix 2–3
- past perfect**
 He said he had (done something) 50
 active and passive Appendix 1.1
- past simple** (*did/cleaned/saw etc.*) 11–12
 negative (*didn't ...*) 12, 43B
 questions (*did ... ?*) 12, 44B
 was/were 10
 regular (*cleaned*) and irregular verbs (*saw*) 11B–C, Appendix 2–3
 past simple + *ago* 19B
 past simple (*I did*) and present perfect (*I have done*) 20
 past simple (*I did*) and past continuous (*I was doing*) 14
 past simple passive (*the room was cleaned*) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
 if + past simple (if I had / if we went) 100
- people** 66C–D
- personal pronouns** (*I/me/you etc.*) 59, 62
- persuade** (*persuade somebody to ...*) 53B

phrasal verbs (*get up / put on* etc.)

114–115, Appendix 6–7

plural (*cup* → *cups* / *man* → *men* etc.) 66

police (plural) 66D

possessive adjectives

(*my/your/his* etc.) 60, 62

possessive pronouns

(*mine/yours/his* etc.) 61–62

prefer 52C–D

prepositions 103–113

at/on/in (time) 103

for/since 19, 104

until 104A–B

before/after/during/while 105

in/at/on (places) 106–107

to/in/at (places) 108

on 103, 106–107, 109A, 111A

at 103, 106–108, 111B

under/behind/opposite etc.

(position) 109

up/over/through etc. (movement) 110

by 109C, 111C

with/without 111D, 112B

about 111E

prepositions + *-ing* (*in -ing / without -ing* etc.) 105D, 112B

adjective + prepositions (*afraid of* etc.) 112A

verb + preposition (*listen to / wait for* etc.) 113

prepositions at the end (*Who is she talking to?*) 46

prepositions in relative clauses (*the man she is talking to*) 102B

present continuous (*am/is/are + -ing*) 3–4, 23A, 51C

negative (*I'm not -ing*) 3

questions (*are you -ing?*) 4

present continuous (*I am doing*) and present simple (*I do*) 8

present continuous passive 22A, Appendix 1.1

present continuous for the future (*What are you doing tomorrow?*) 25

present perfect (*I have done*)

15–20, 23C

present perfect + *just* 16A

present perfect + *already* 16B

present perfect + *yet* 16C, 95B

Have you ever ... ? 17

gone and been 17C

How long have you ... ? 18

present perfect + *for/since* 18–19

present perfect continuous (*I have been -ing*) 18B

present perfect (*I have done*) and

past simple (*I did*) 20

present perfect passive 22B, Appendix 1.1

regular and irregular verbs 15B, 24, Appendix 2–3

present simple (*I work / she works* etc.) 5–7, 23D

negative (*don't/doesn't*) 6, 43B

questions (*do/does ... ?*) 7, 44B

present simple + *always/usually/never* etc. 5C

present simple (*I do*) and present continuous (*I am doing*) 8

present simple passive (*the room is cleaned*) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1

present simple for the future (*The concert starts at 7.30.*) 25C

present simple after *when/while* etc. 98B

present simple after *if* 99B

promise (*promise to ...*) 52A

pronouns

personal pronouns (*I/me/you* etc.) 59, 62

possessive pronouns (*mine/yours* etc.) 61–62

reflexive pronouns (*myself/yourself* etc.) 63

one/ones 75

relative pronouns (*who/which/that*) 101–102

put

put something in ... 110

put on / put out etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 7

questions 44–47

am/is/are ... ? 2

do/does ... ? (present simple) 7, 44B

did ... ? (past simple) 12, 44B

Why don't ... ? / Why isn't ... ? etc. 44C

Who saw you? / Who did you see? 45

preposition at the end (*Who is she talking to?*) 46

What / Which / How ... ? 47

How long does it take? 48

Do you know where ... ? (embedded questions) 49

reply questions (*Have you? / Are you? etc.*) 41A

question tags (*... do you? / ... isn't it?* etc.) 41B

reflexive pronouns (*myself/yourself* etc.) 63

regular and irregular verbs 11, 24, Appendix 2–3

relative clauses 101–102

relative pronouns (*who/which/that*) 101–102

reply questions (*Have you? / Are you?*) 41A

reported speech

He said that ... / He told me that ... 50

He told me to ... 53B–C

right (*on the right*) 109A

round 110

turn round / show round (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7

's (apostrophe 's) 64, Appendix 4.5

same 70B, 89E

say/said

He said that ... (reported speech) 50

say and tell 50B

scared (*of*) 112A

shall 27D, 28C

short forms (*I'm / it's / you've* etc.) Appendix 4

should 32

simple past see **past simple**

simple present see **present simple**

since 19A, 104C

singular and plural (*flower* → *flowers*) 66

so

so am I / so do I etc. 42B

I was tired, so I went to bed. 97

some

some and a/an 67–68

some and any 76

some (of) 81

somebody/someone/

something/somewhere 76, 79

sometimes

sometimes + present simple 5C

word order 94

sorry (*sorry about* and *sorry for*) 112A

speak (*to*) 113A

spelling Appendix 5

start (*start to ...* and *start -ing*) 52C

still 95

word order 94

stop (*stop -ing*) 52B

suggest (*suggest -ing*) 52B

superlative (*the biggest / the most expensive* etc.) 90

- tags** (question tags) 41B
- take** (*How long does it take?*) 48
- talk (to)** 113A
- tell/told**
He told me that ... 50
tell and say 50B
Can you tell me where ...? 49A
He told me to ... 53B–C
- tenses**
 active and passive Appendix 1.1
 present continuous (*I am doing*) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
 present simple (*I do*) 5–7, 23D, 25C
 past simple (*I did*) 11–12, 14, 20, 23D
 past continuous (*I was doing*) 13–14, 23A, 51C
 present perfect (*I have done*) 15–20, 23C
be/have/do in present and past tenses 23
- than** 88–89
- that** 74
He said that ... (reported speech) 50C
that and this 74
a thing that ... (relative clauses) 101
- the** 69–73
the and a/an 69
the same 70B
the sun / the sky etc. 70C
the cinema / the theatre / the bank etc. 71B
flowers / the flowers 72
the in names of places 73
the biggest / the most expensive etc. 90
- their** 60, 62
- theirs** 61, 62
- them** 59, 62
- themselves** 63
- there**
there is/are 37
there was/were 38A
there has/have been 38B
there will be 38C
there is and it is 37B
- these** 74
- think** (*think about / think of*) 113A
- this** 74
- those** 74
- through** 110
- till** (= *until*) 104B
- to**
 time 104A
 places 108, 110
go to ... 55A, 108A
get to ... 56C, 108C
- to + infinitive** (*to go / to be etc.*)
 see **infinitive**
- too** 92
too and either 42A
- turn** (*turn round / turn on etc.*)
 (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
- uncountable nouns**
 (*salt/water/music etc.*) 67–68
- under** 109D, 110
- until** 98B, 104A–B
- up** 110
get up / pick up etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
- us** 59, 62
- used** (*I used to ...*) 36
- usually**
usually + present simple 5C
 word order 94
- verbs**
 present tenses 1–9, 23, 25
 past tenses 10–14, 20, 23
 present perfect 15–20, 23
 passive 21–22, Appendix 1
 regular and irregular verbs 24, Appendix 2–3
 future 25–28
 modal verbs (*will/can/should etc.*) 27–34, 51A
 negatives 43
 questions 44–47
 reported speech 50
 verbs + *-ing* 51–52
 verbs + *to ...* (infinitive) 51–53
 verbs + preposition (*look at / speak to etc.*) 113
 phrasal verbs (*get up / put on etc.*) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
- wait (for)** 54C, 113A
- want**
want to ... 52A
want somebody to ... 53A
- was/were** 10
was/were + -ing (past continuous) 13, 23A, 51C
was/were done (passive) 21, 23B
there was/were 38A
if I was/were ... 100B
- well** 86D
- were** see **was**
- what**
What ...? and *Who ...?* 45C
What ... like? 46B
What ...? 47
What ...? and *Which ...?* 47C
- when** 98
when and if 99C
- whether** 49C
- which**
Which ...? 47
Which ...? and *What ...?* 47C
Which one/ones? 75B
a thing which ... (relative clauses) 101
- while** 98, 105
- who**
Who ...? 45
a person who ... (relative clauses) 101
- whose** (*Whose is this?*) 61D
- will** 27–28
will and shall 27D, 28C
won't 27A
there will be 38C
- with/without** 111D
with/without + -ing 112B
- won't** (= *will not*) 27A
- word order**
 questions 44–46
 present continuous questions 4B
 present simple questions 7B
 past simple questions 12D
 passive 21–22
Do you know where ...? (embedded questions) 49
 verb + object 93A
 place and time 93B
always/usually/often etc. 94
after give/lend/send etc. 96
- worse** 87D
- worst** 90B
- would**
I'd like / would you like? 34
would like/love etc. 52D
He would buy a car if he had the money. 100
- yet** 95B
yet + present perfect 16C
- you** 59, 62
- your** 60, 62
- yours** 61–62
- yourself/yourselfs** 63



Essential Grammar in Use

With answers • Fourth Edition

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary learners of English

Clear examples and easy-to-follow exercises make *Essential Grammar in Use* perfect for independent study. Used by millions of learners around the world, it covers all the grammar you will need at this level.

- Easy-to-use format of two-page units with clear explanations on the left and exercises on the right
- A study guide to help you find the units you need to study
- Additional exercises for extra practice

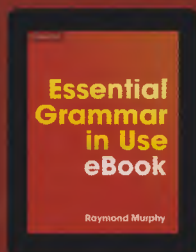
Want more grammar practice? The *Essential Grammar in Use Extra Activities* app and *Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises* book are also available.

CEFR Levels A1, A2, B1

Also available: Essential Grammar in Use Fourth Edition eBook

English Grammar in Use Fourth Edition with answers

Essential Grammar in Use Extra Activities app



ISBN 978 1 107 48060 5



ISBN 978 0 521 18939 2

